US005912982A

United States Patent [19]

Munro et al.

[11] Patent Number: 5,912,982

[45] Date of Patent: Jun. 15, 1999

[54] **METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DISCRIMINATING AND COUNTING DOCUMENTS**

[75] Inventors: **Mark C. Munro**, Park Ridge; **John E. Jones**, Winnetka; **Bradford T. Graves**, Arlington Heights; **William J. Jones**, Kenilworth; **Douglas U. Mennie**, Barrington; **Richard A. Mazur**, Naperville, all of Ill.

[73] Assignee: **Cummins-Allison Corp.**, Mt. Prospect, Ill.

[21] Appl. No.: **08/755,541**

[22] Filed: **Nov. 21, 1996**

Related U.S. Application Data

[60] Division of application No. 08/573,392, Dec. 15, 1995, Pat. No. 5,790,697, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/394,752, Feb. 27, 1995, Pat. No. 5,724,438, application No. 08/362,848, Dec. 22, 1994, application No. 08/317,349, Oct. 4, 1994, Pat. No. 5,640,463, application No. 08/287,882, Aug. 9, 1994, Pat. No. 5,652,802, application No. 08/243,807, May 16, 1994, Pat. No. 5,633,949, and application No. 08/226,660, Apr. 12, 1994, said application No. 08/394,752, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/340,031, Nov. 14, 1994, Pat. No. 5,815,592, and application No. 08/127,334, Sep. 27, 1993, Pat. No. 5,467,405, said application No. 08/362,848, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/340,031, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/243,807, and application No. 08/207,592, Mar. 8, 1994, Pat. No. 5,467,406, said application No. 08/287,882, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/207,592, application No. 08/219,093, Mar. 29, 1994, abandoned, and application No. 08/127,334, said application No. 08/243,807, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/219,093, and application No. 08/127,334, said application No. 08/226,660, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/127,334, said application No. 08/219,093, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/127,334, said application No. 08/207,592, is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/127,334, which is a continuation of application No. 07/885,648, May 19, 1992, Pat. No. 5,295,196, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 07/475,111, Feb. 5, 1990, abandoned.

[51] **Int. Cl.**[6] **G06K 9/00**

[52] **U.S. Cl.** **382/135**

[58] **Field of Search** 382/135, 137, 382/138, 139, 140, 311, 312; 345/173; 194/206, 207; 209/534; 902/7, 11, 20, 21

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

D. 369,984	5/1996	Larsen	D10/97
3,246,295	4/1966	De Claris et al.	382/56

(List continued on next page.)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

A0077464	4/1983	European Pat. Off. .
A101115	2/1984	European Pat. Off. .

(List continued on next page.)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

AFB Currency Recognition System (1982).

Brochure "DeLa Rue Systems, The processing of money and documents;" date: copyr. 1987 (See e.g. 3120 Currency Sorting Machine, p.3).

Brochure by Toyocom, "New Currency Counter with Denomination Recognition, Toyocom NS" (Sep. 26, 1994) (1 page).

(List continued on next page.)

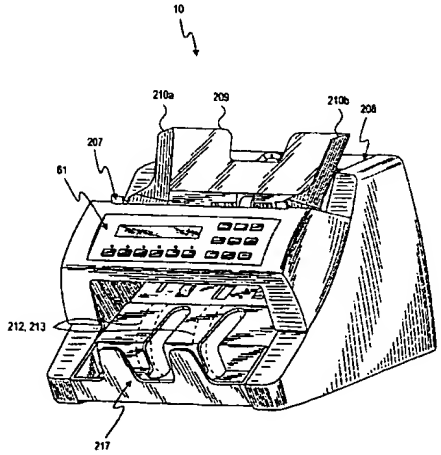
Primary Examiner—Phucc Tran

Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Arnold White & Durkee

[57] **ABSTRACT**

A currency counting and discrimination device comprises an input receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated, a discriminating unit for discriminating the denomination of the currency bills, and one or more output receptacles for receiving the currency bills after being discriminated by the discriminating unit. The device further comprises a transport mechanism for transporting the currency bills, one at a time, from the input receptacle past a sensor of the discriminating unit and to the one or more output receptacles.

38 Claims, 81 Drawing Sheets



U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,280,974	10/1966	Riddle et al.	209/111.8
3,480,785	11/1969	Aufderheide	250/219
3,496,370	2/1970	Haville et al.	250/219
3,509,535	4/1970	Berube	340/149
3,612,835	10/1971	Andrews et al.	235/61.11 D
3,618,765	11/1971	Cooper et al.	209/534
3,679,314	7/1972	Mustert	356/71
3,778,628	12/1973	Novak et al.	250/556
3,842,281	10/1974	Goodrich	250/461
3,870,629	3/1975	Carter et al.	209/111.8
3,906,449	9/1975	Marchak	340/149 R
3,976,198	8/1976	Carnes et al.	209/111.7 T
4,041,456	8/1977	Ott et al.	346/146.3
4,096,991	6/1978	Iguchi	235/419
4,114,804	9/1978	Jones et al.	235/476
4,147,430	4/1979	Gorgone et al.	356/51
4,179,685	12/1979	O'Maley	340/146.3 H
4,250,806	2/1981	Boyson et al.	101/2
4,255,651	3/1981	Phillips	235/92
4,277,774	7/1981	Fujii et al.	340/146.3
4,283,708	8/1981	Lee	340/146.3 Z
4,288,781	9/1981	Sellner et al.	340/146.3 Q
4,302,781	11/1981	Ikeda et al.	358/486
4,311,914	1/1982	Huber	250/556
4,348,656	9/1982	Gorgone et al.	340/146.3 R
4,349,111	9/1982	Shah et al.	209/534
4,352,988	10/1982	Ishida	250/559
4,355,300	10/1982	Weber	340/146.3 C
4,356,473	10/1982	Freudenthal	340/146.3 H
4,365,700	12/1982	Arimato et al.	194/2
4,381,447	4/1983	Horvath et al.	250/223
4,386,432	5/1983	Nakamura et al. .	
4,442,541	4/1984	Finkel et al.	382/7
4,461,028	7/1984	Okubo	382/15
4,464,786	8/1984	Nishito et al.	382/7
4,464,787	8/1984	Fish et al.	382/7
4,480,177	10/1984	Allen	235/379
4,487,306	12/1984	Nao et al.	382/135
4,490,846	12/1984	Ishida et al.	382/7
4,513,439	4/1985	Gorgone et al.	382/7
4,539,702	9/1985	Oka	382/7
4,542,829	9/1985	Emery et al.	209/534
4,547,896	10/1985	Ohtombe et al.	382/318
4,553,846	11/1985	Hilton et al.	356/429
4,556,140	12/1985	Okada	194/4
4,558,224	12/1985	Gober	250/460.1
4,559,451	12/1985	Curl	250/560
4,563,771	1/1986	Gorgone et al.	382/7
4,567,370	1/1986	Falls	250/461.1
4,587,412	5/1986	Apisdorf	235/449
4,587,434	5/1986	Roes et al.	250/556
4,592,090	5/1986	Curl et al.	382/7
4,611,345	9/1986	Ohniski et al.	382/7
4,625,870	12/1986	Nao et al.	209/534
4,628,194	12/1986	Dobbins et al.	235/379
4,645,936	2/1987	Gorgone	250/556
4,653,647	3/1987	Hashimoto	209/534
4,677,682	6/1987	Miyagawa et al.	382/7
4,681,229	7/1987	Uesaka et al.	209/534
4,697,071	9/1987	Hiraoka et al.	235/379
4,700,368	10/1987	Munn et al.	377/8
4,733,308	3/1988	Nakamura et al.	358/496
4,747,492	5/1988	Saito et al.	209/534
4,820,909	4/1989	Kawauchi et al.	235/379
4,823,393	4/1989	Kawakami	382/7
4,827,531	5/1989	Milford	382/7
4,881,268	11/1989	Uchida et al.	382/7
4,908,516	3/1990	West	250/556
4,973,851	11/1990	Lee	250/556
4,984,280	1/1991	Abe	382/7
4,992,860	2/1991	Hamaguchi et al.	358/75
4,996,604	2/1991	Ogawa et al.	358/486
5,020,787	6/1991	Arikawa	271/3
5,027,415	6/1991	Hara et al.	382/135
5,047,871	9/1991	Meyer et al.	358/486
5,054,621	10/1991	Murphy et al.	209/534
5,068,519	11/1991	Bryce	235/449
5,122,754	6/1992	Gotaas	324/676
5,163,672	11/1992	Mennie	271/187
5,167,313	12/1992	Dobbins et al.	194/317
5,172,907	12/1992	Kalisiak	271/227
5,199,543	4/1993	Kamagami et al.	194/207
5,201,395	4/1993	Takezawa et al.	194/206
5,207,788	5/1993	Geib et al.	271/122
5,220,395	6/1993	Yamashita et al.	355/313
5,236,072	8/1993	Cargill	194/207
5,240,116	8/1993	Stevens et al.	209/534
5,261,518	11/1993	Bryce	194/206
5,295,196	3/1994	Raterman et al.	382/135
5,304,813	4/1994	De Man	250/556
5,308,992	5/1994	Crane et al.	250/556
5,309,515	5/1994	Troung et al.	382/7
5,341,408	8/1994	Melcher et al.	377/8
5,363,949	11/1994	Matsubayashi	194/206
5,367,577	11/1994	Gotaas	382/135
5,397,003	3/1995	Stevens et al.	209/534
5,430,664	7/1995	Cargill et al.	364/550
5,437,357	8/1995	Ota et al.	382/135
5,465,821	11/1995	Akioka	194/207
5,467,405	11/1995	Raterman et al.	382/135
5,467,406	11/1995	Graves et al.	382/135
5,478,992	12/1995	Hamada et al.	235/379
5,602,933	2/1997	Blackwell et al.	382/116
5,607,040	3/1997	Mathurin, Sr.	194/207
5,633,949	5/1997	Graves et al.	382/135
5,652,802	7/1997	Graves et al.	382/135
5,663,547	9/1997	Ziarno	235/380

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

A0338123	10/1989	European Pat. Off. .
A0342647	11/1989	European Pat. Off. .
2190996	12/1987	United Kingdom .
2204166	11/1988	United Kingdom .
2217086	10/1989	United Kingdom .
2272762	11/1993	United Kingdom .
2270904	3/1994	United Kingdom .
WO 90 07165	6/1990	WIPO .
WO 91/11778	8/1991	WIPO .
WO 92/17394	10/1992	WIPO .
WO 93/23824	11/1993	WIPO .
WO 94/16412	7/1994	WIPO .
WO 95/24691	9/1995	WIPO .
WO 96/10800	9/1995	WIPO .

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Brochure of Mosler Model CS 6600 Optical Currency Counter/Sorter, 4 pages, copyr. 1992.

Currency System Intl'l, Mr. W. Kranister in Conversation With Richard Haycock; pp. 1–5, dated: estimated 1994.

Currency Systems International, CPS 1200; 4 pages; date: copyr. 1992.

Currency Systems International, Medium Speed Currency Sorting Family, CPS 600 and CPS 900; 4 pages; date: copyr. 1994.

Currency Systems International/Currency Processing Systems, CPS 300; 4 pages; date: copyr. 1992.

Description of Currency Systems International's CPS 600 and CPS 900 devices; date: estimated 1994.

Description of Toshiba–Mosler CF–420 Device; estimated 1989.
Glory GFB–200/210/220/230, Desk–Top Bank Note Counter; 2 pages; date: estimated before Aug. 9, 1994.
Glory GSA–500 Sortmaster brochure; 2 pages; date: Jan. 14, 1994.
Glory GSA–500 Sortmaster brochure; 4 pages; dated: estimated 1994.
Glory Instruction Manual for GFR–100 Currency Reader Couner (Aug. 15, 1995).
Glory UF–1D brochure; 2 pages; date:estimated before Aug. 9, 1994.
JetScan Currency Scanner/Counter, Model 4060, Operator's Manual by Cummins–Allison (Aug. 1991).
JetScan Currency Scanner/Counter, Model 4061, Operating Instructions by Cummins–Allison (Apr. 20, 1993).
JetScan Curreny Scanner/Counter, Model 4062, Operating Instructions by Cummins–Allison (Nov. 28, 1994).
Mosler Inc. brochure "The Mosler/Toshiba CF–420", 1989.
News Product News by Toyocom, "Toyocom Currency Counter Now Reads Denominations" (Sep. 26, 1994) (1 page).
Sale of JetScan Currency Scanner/Counter, Model 4060 (Aug. 1991).
Sale of JetScan Currency Scanner/Counter, Model 4061 (Apr. 20, 1993).
Sale of JetScan Currency Scanner/Counter, Model 4062 (Nov. 28, 1994).
Toshiba–Mosler Operator's Manual for CF–420 Cash Settlement System; pp. 1 to C–3; copyr. 1989 (See eg. pp. 3–10; 4–10; and 5–7).
Toyocom Currency Counter, Model NS–100, "Operation Guide (Preliminary)" (Jun. 13, 1995).

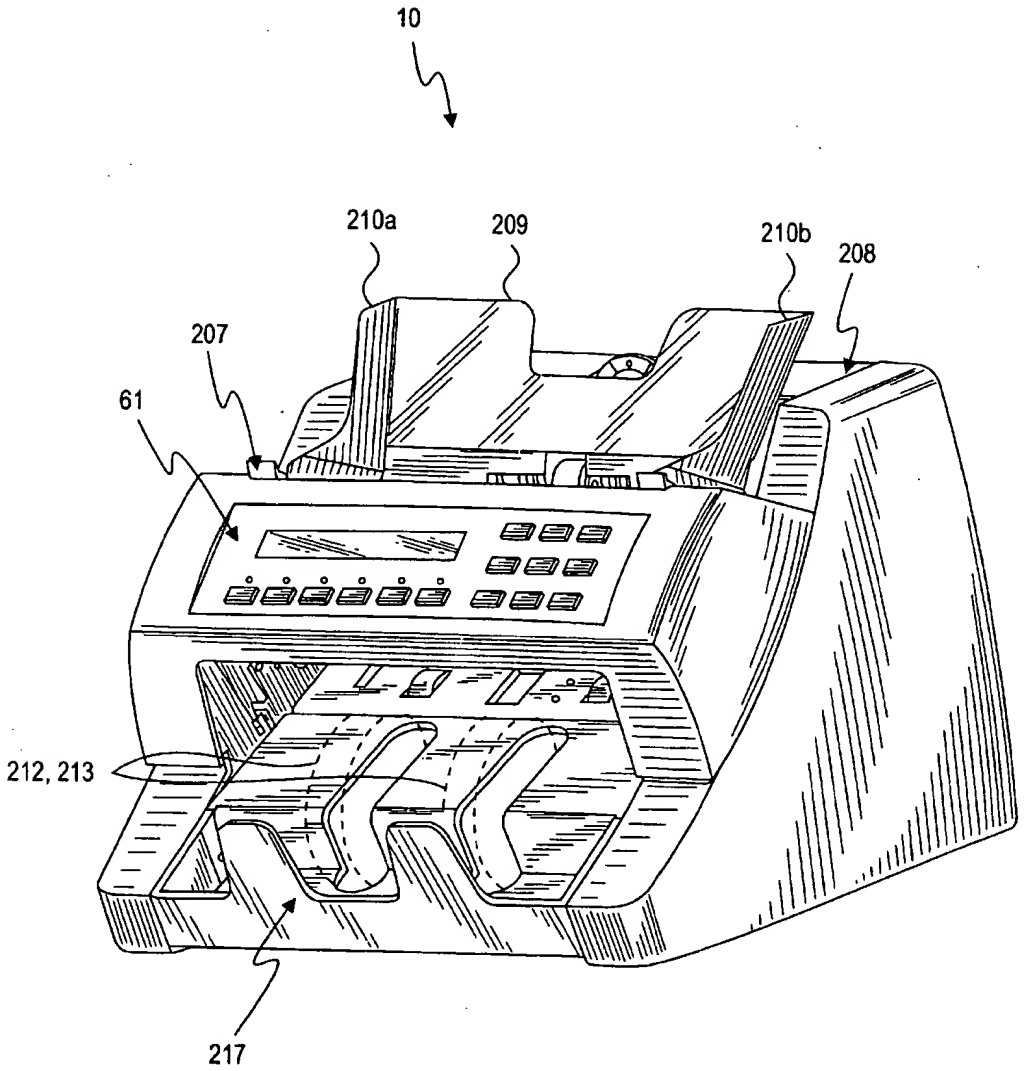


FIG. 1

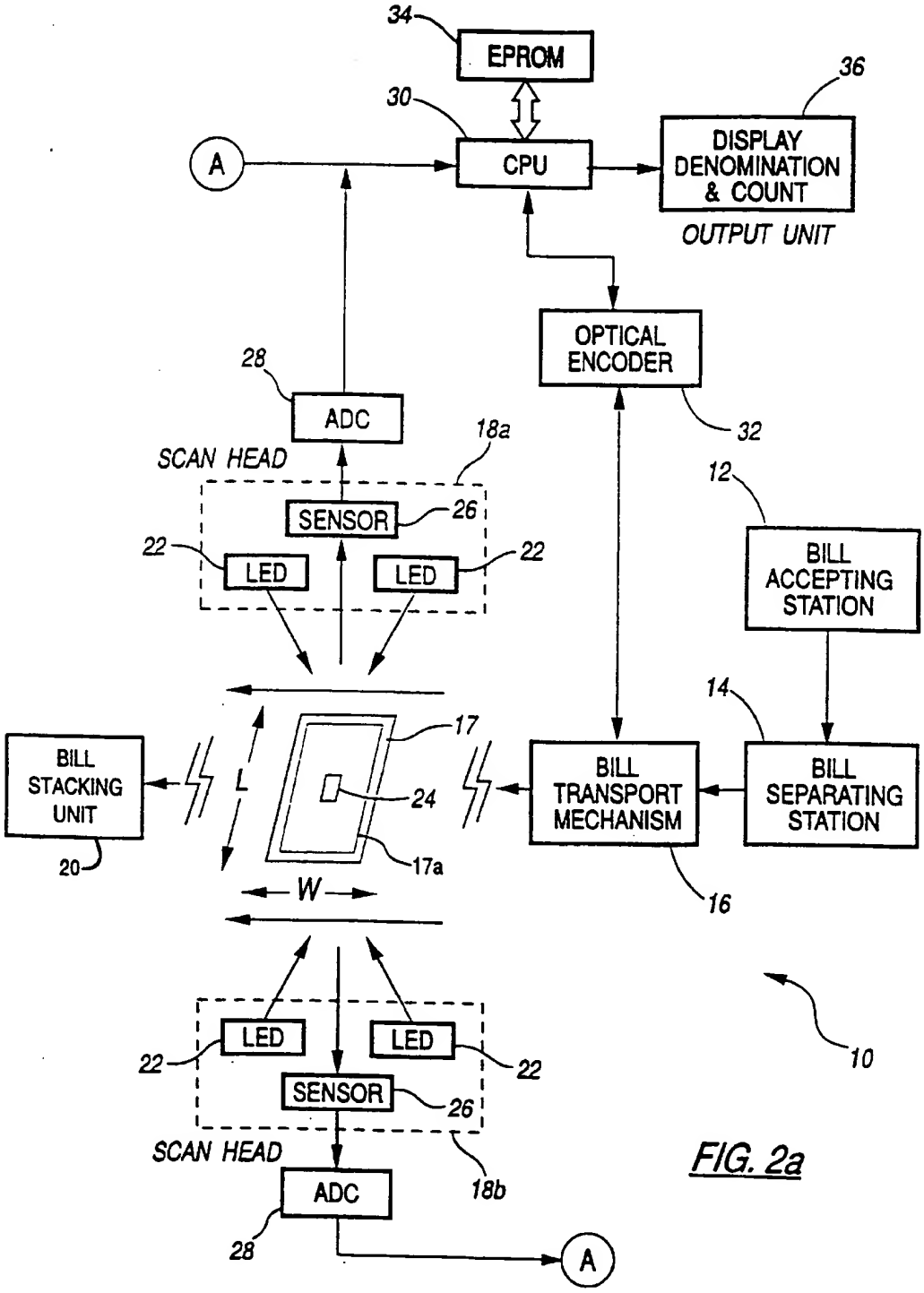

34
EPROM
30
36
CPU
DISPLAY DENOMINATION & COUNT
OUTPUT UNIT
A
OPTICAL ENCODER
32
28
ADC
18a
SCAN HEAD
12
SENSOR
26
22
LED
LED
22
BILL ACCEPTING STATION
14
17
BILL STACKING UNIT
L
24
BILL TRANSPORT MECHANISM
BILL SEPARATING STATION
20
17a
W
16
10
LED
LED
22
22
SENSOR
26
SCAN HEAD
18b
ADC
28
A

FIG. 2a

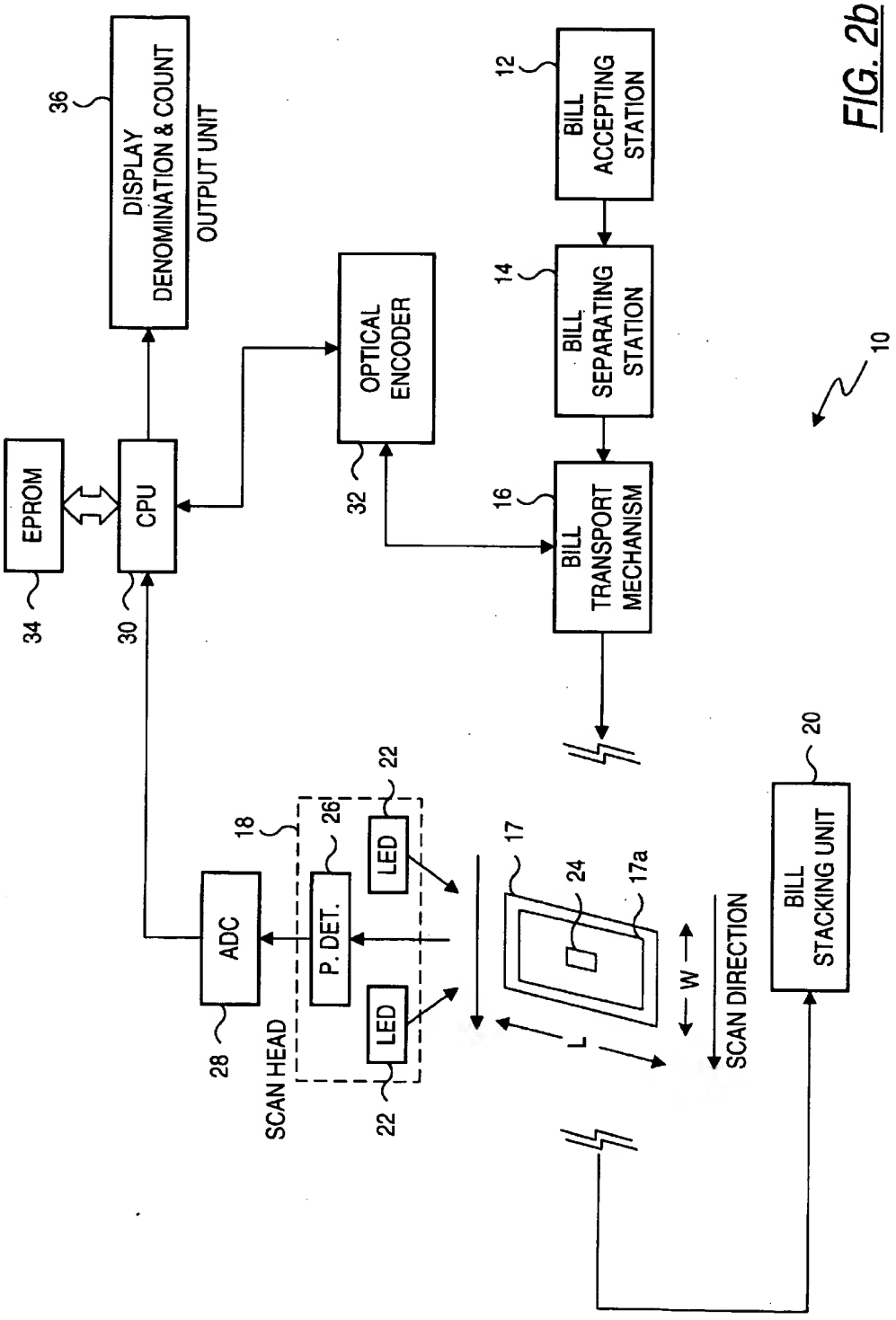

36
DISPLAY DENOMINATION & COUNT OUTPUT UNIT
12
BILL ACCEPTING STATION
14
BILL SEPARATING STATION
10
OPTICAL ENCODER
32
EPROM
34
CPU
30
16
BILL TRANSPORT MECHANISM
22
18
26
LED
17
24
17a
ADC
P. DET.
LED
W
L
SCAN DIRECTION
20
BILL STACKING UNIT
28
SCAN HEAD
22

FIG. 2b

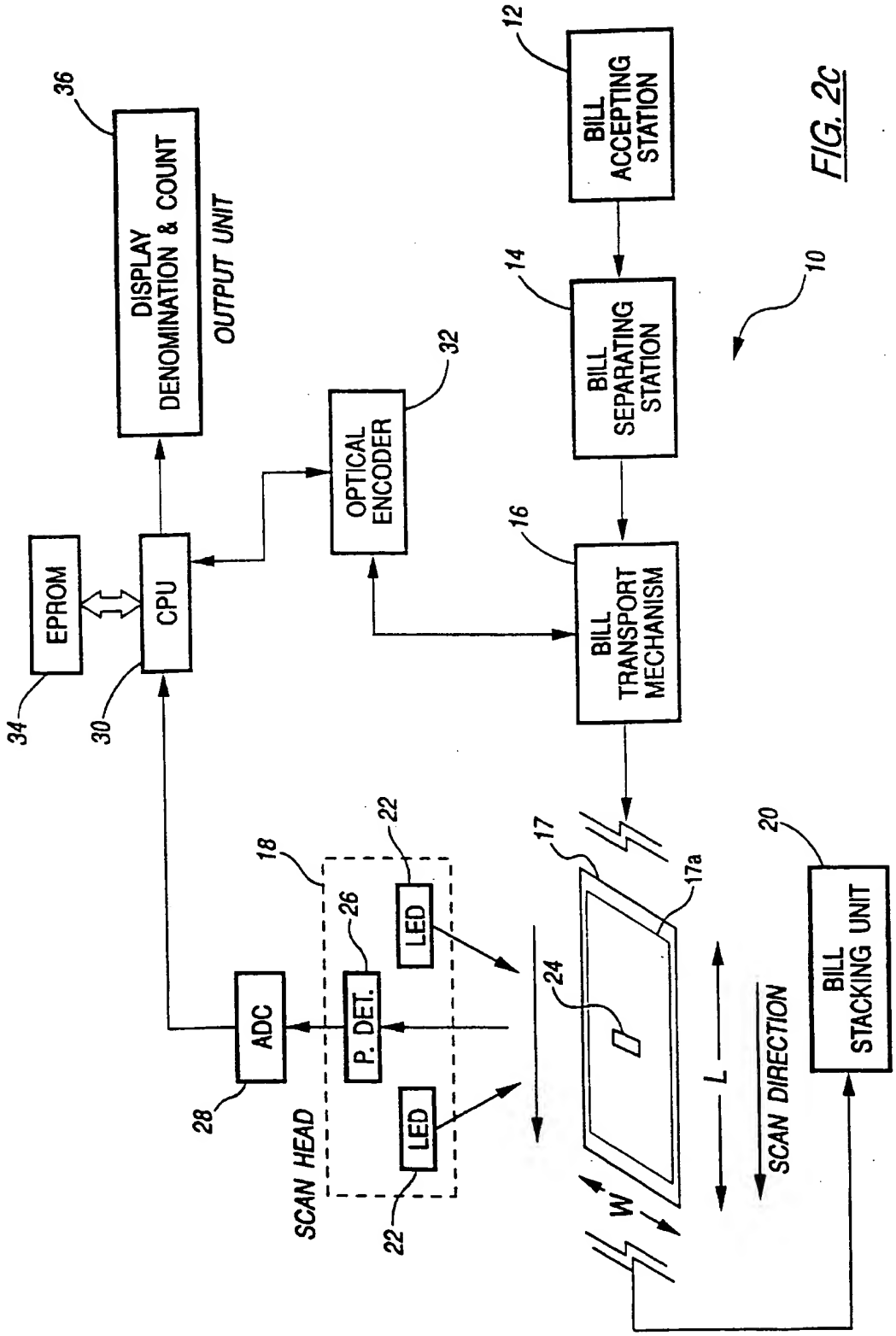

12
BILL ACCEPTING STATION
14
BILL SEPARATING STATION
10
16
BILL TRANSPORT MECHANISM
32
OPTICAL ENCODER
36
DISPLAY DENOMINATION & COUNT
OUTPUT UNIT
EPROM
CPU
34
30
18
22
LED
26
P. DET.
ADC
28
LED
22
SCAN HEAD
17
17a
24
W
L
SCAN DIRECTION
20
BILL STACKING UNIT

FIG. 2c

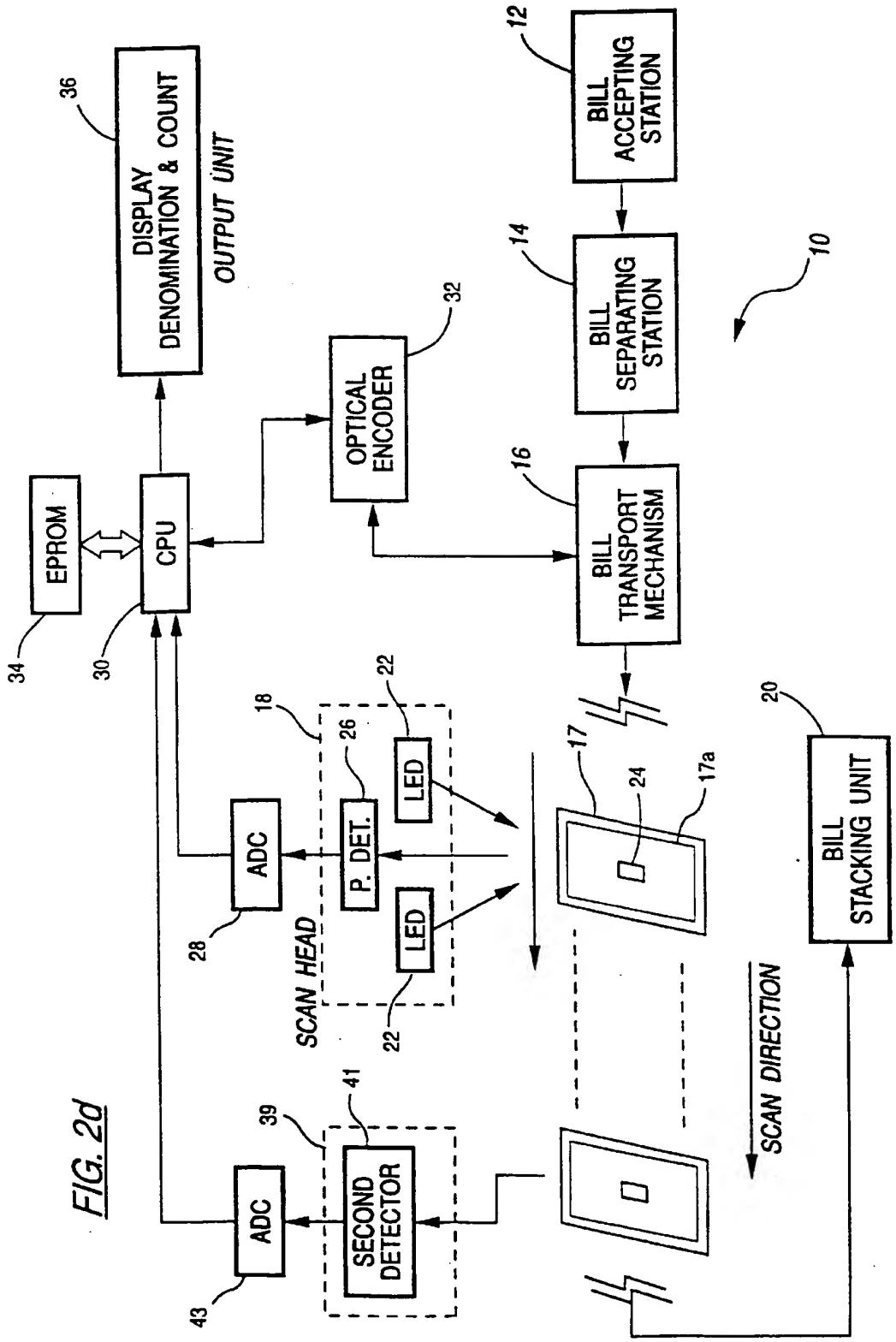

BILL ACCEPTING STATION
12
BILL SEPARATING STATION
14
10
BILL TRANSPORT MECHANISM
16
OPTICAL ENCODER
32
DISPLAY DENOMINATION & COUNT
36
OUTPUT UNIT
EPROM
34
CPU
30
ADC
28
P. DET.
26
LED
22
SCAN HEAD
18
LED
22
17
24
17a
BILL STACKING UNIT
20
SCAN DIRECTION
ADC
43
SECOND DETECTOR
39
41

FIG. 2d

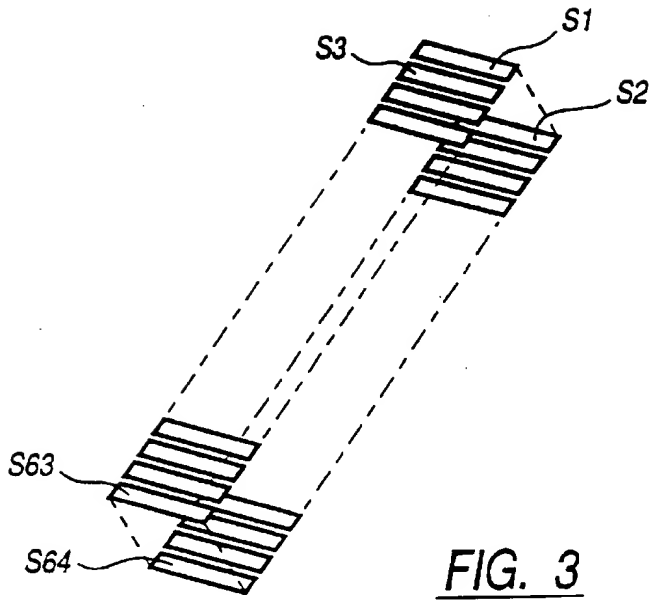


FIG. 3

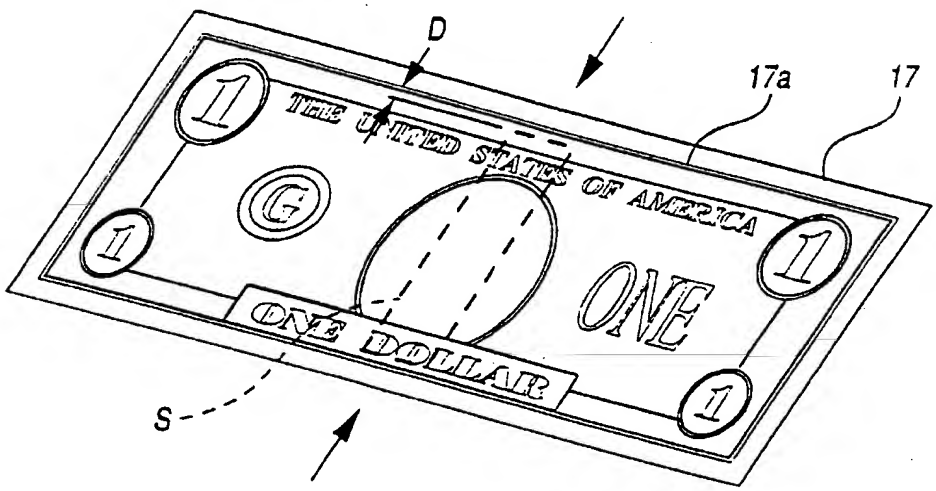


FIG. 4a

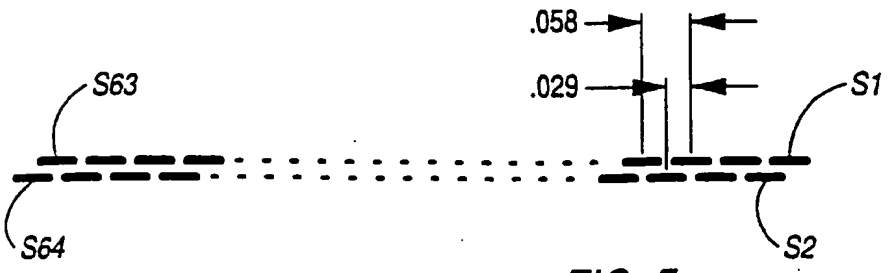


FIG. 5a

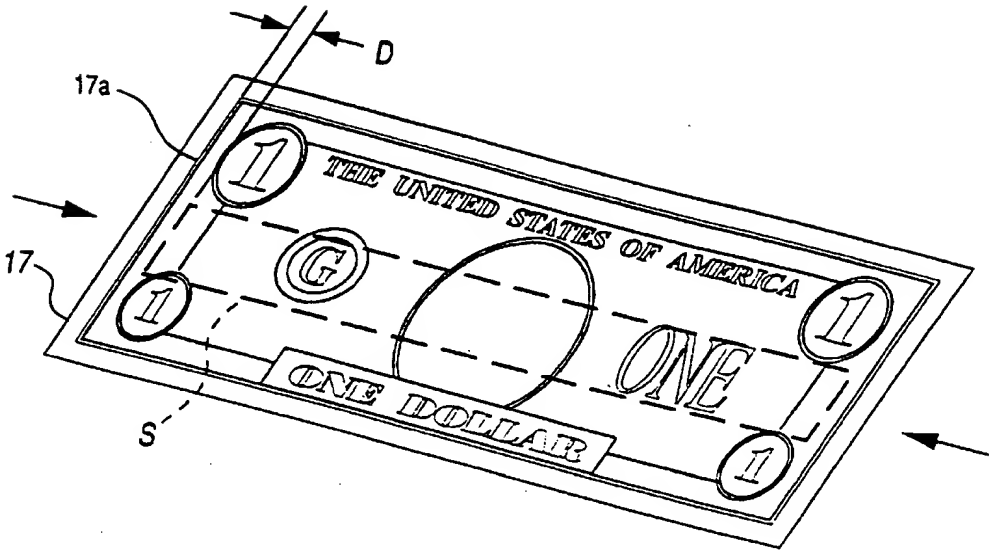

D
17a
17
S
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
ONE
ONE DOLLAR

FIG. 4b

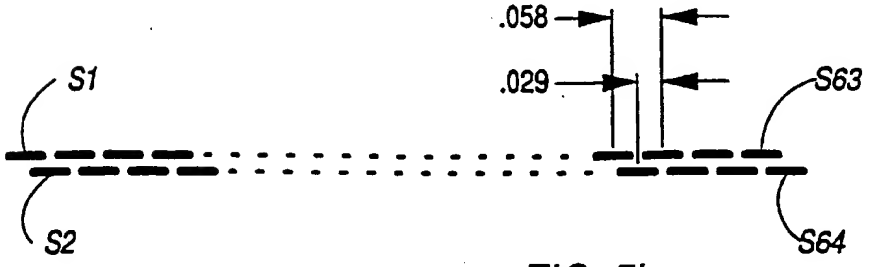

.058
.029
S1
S2
S63
S64

FIG. 5b

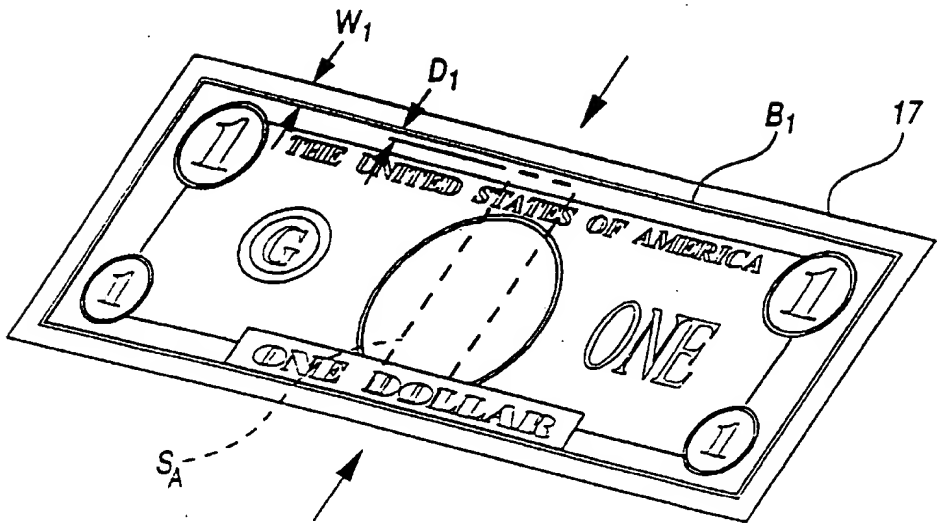

W1
D1
B1
17
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
ONE
ONE DOLLAR
SA

FIG. 6a

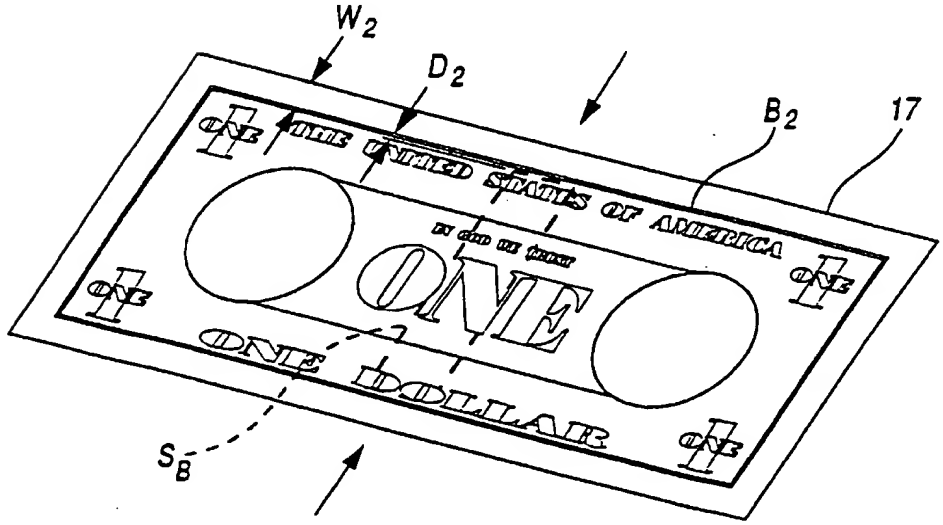

W2
D2
B2
17
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
ONE
ONE DOLLAR
SB

FIG. 6b

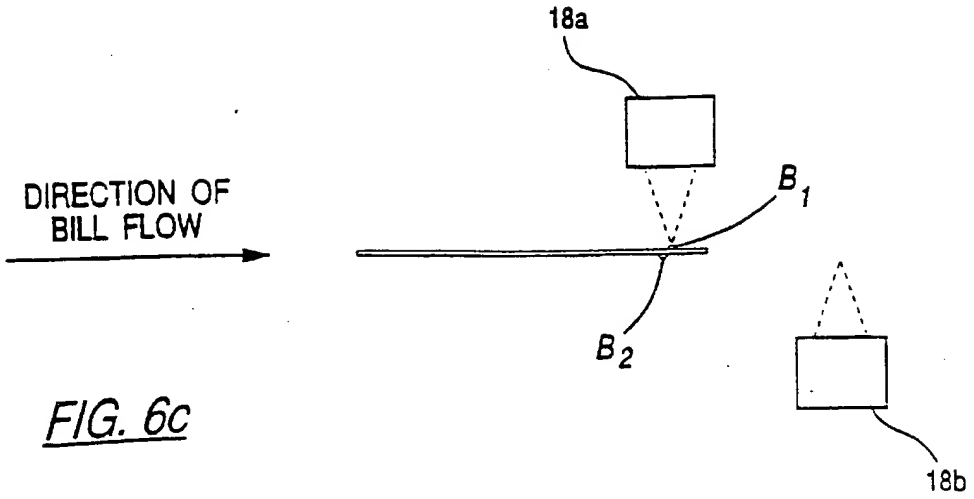

18a
DIRECTION OF BILL FLOW
B_1
B_2
18b

FIG. 6c

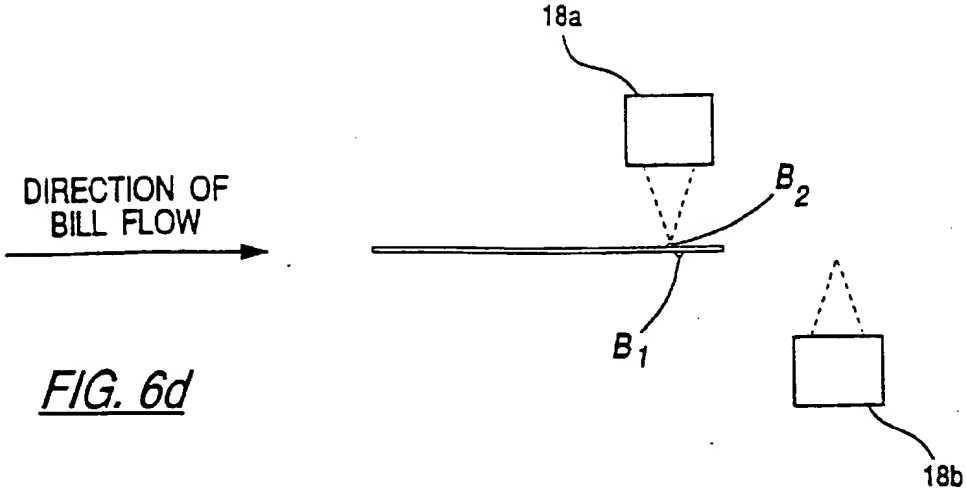

18a
DIRECTION OF BILL FLOW
B_2
B_1
18b

FIG. 6d

FIG. 7a

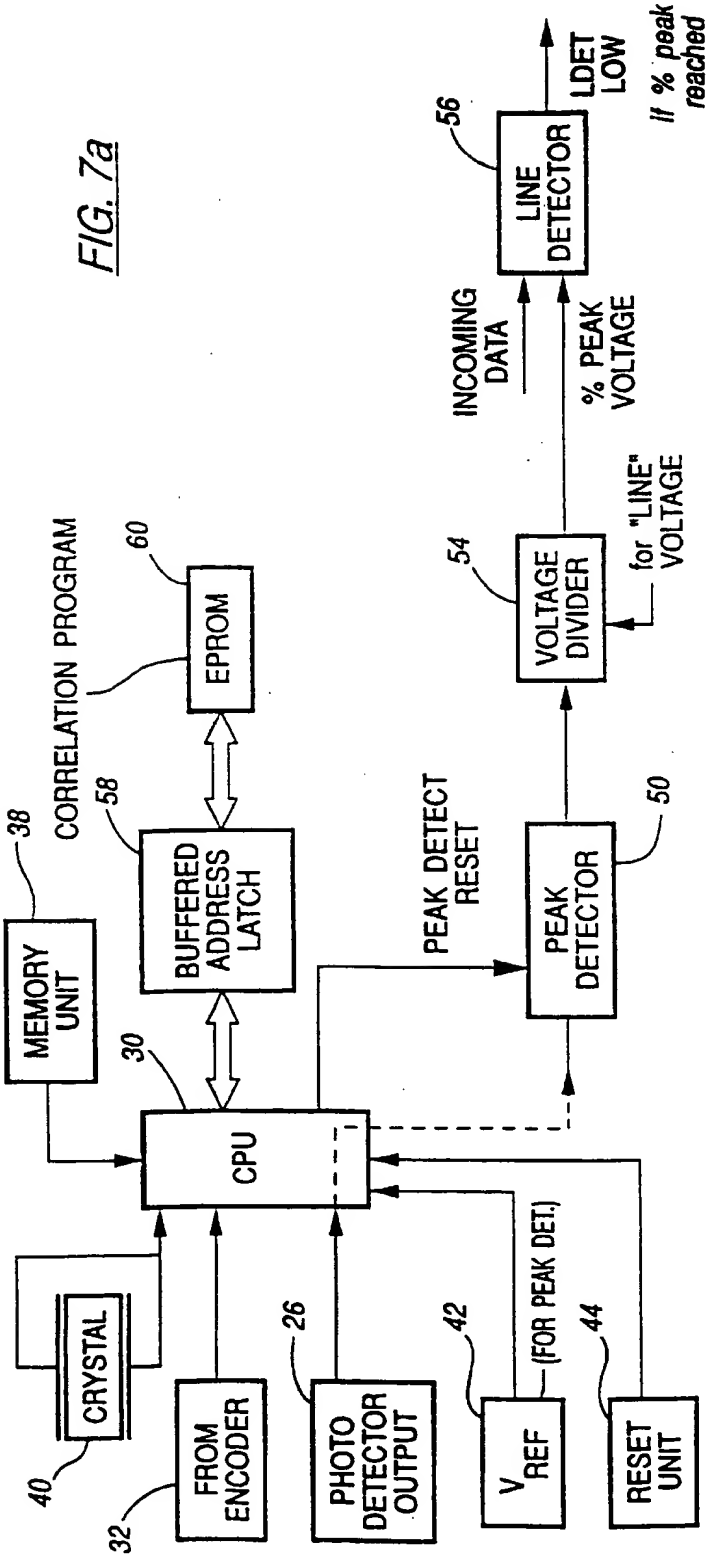

LINE DETECTOR
56
LDET LOW
If % peak reached
INCOMING DATA
% PEAK VOLTAGE
VOLTAGE DIVIDER
54
for "LINE" VOLTAGE
EPROM
60
CORRELATION PROGRAM
BUFFERED ADDRESS LATCH
58
MEMORY UNIT
38
PEAK DETECT RESET
PEAK DETECTOR
50
CPU
30
CRYSTAL
40
FROM ENCODER
32
PHOTO DETECTOR OUTPUT
26
V_{REF}
42
(FOR PEAK DET.)
RESET UNIT
44

FIG. 7b

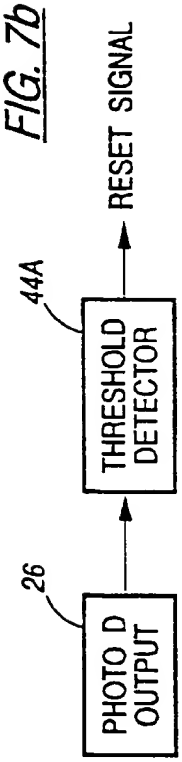


PHOTO D OUTPUT
26
THRESHOLD DETECTOR
44A
RESET SIGNAL

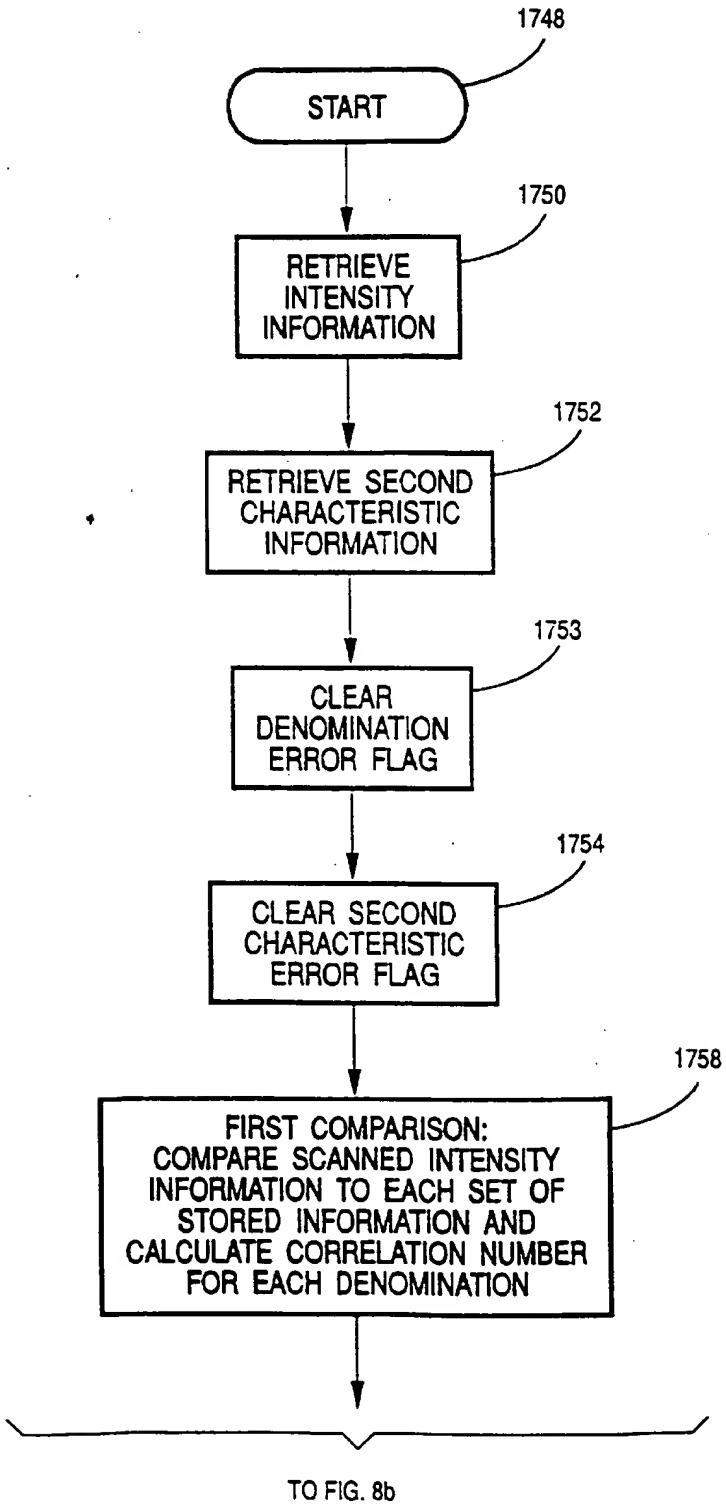

1748
START
1750
RETRIEVE INTENSITY INFORMATION
1752
RETRIEVE SECOND CHARACTERISTIC INFORMATION
1753
CLEAR DENOMINATION ERROR FLAG
1754
CLEAR SECOND CHARACTERISTIC ERROR FLAG
1758
FIRST COMPARISON: COMPARE SCANNED INTENSITY INFORMATION TO EACH SET OF STORED INFORMATION AND CALCULATE CORRELATION NUMBER FOR EACH DENOMINATION
TO FIG. 8b

FIG. 8a

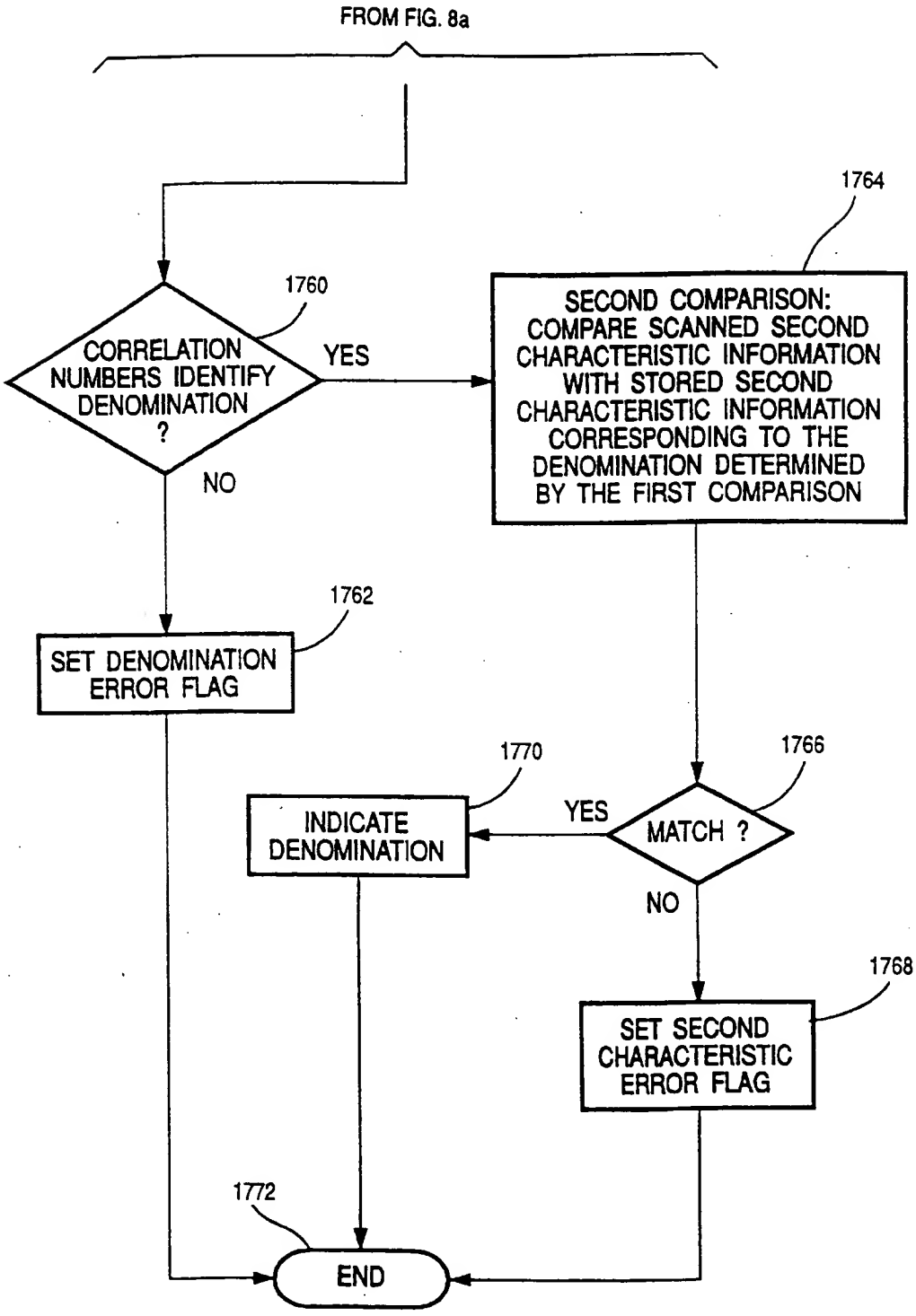

FROM FIG. 8a
1764
1760
CORRELATION NUMBERS IDENTIFY DENOMINATION ?
YES
SECOND COMPARISON: COMPARE SCANNED SECOND CHARACTERISTIC INFORMATION WITH STORED SECOND CHARACTERISTIC INFORMATION CORRESPONDING TO THE DENOMINATION DETERMINED BY THE FIRST COMPARISON
NO
1762
SET DENOMINATION ERROR FLAG
1770
1766
INDICATE DENOMINATION
YES
MATCH ?
NO
1768
SET SECOND CHARACTERISTIC ERROR FLAG
1772
END

FIG. 8b

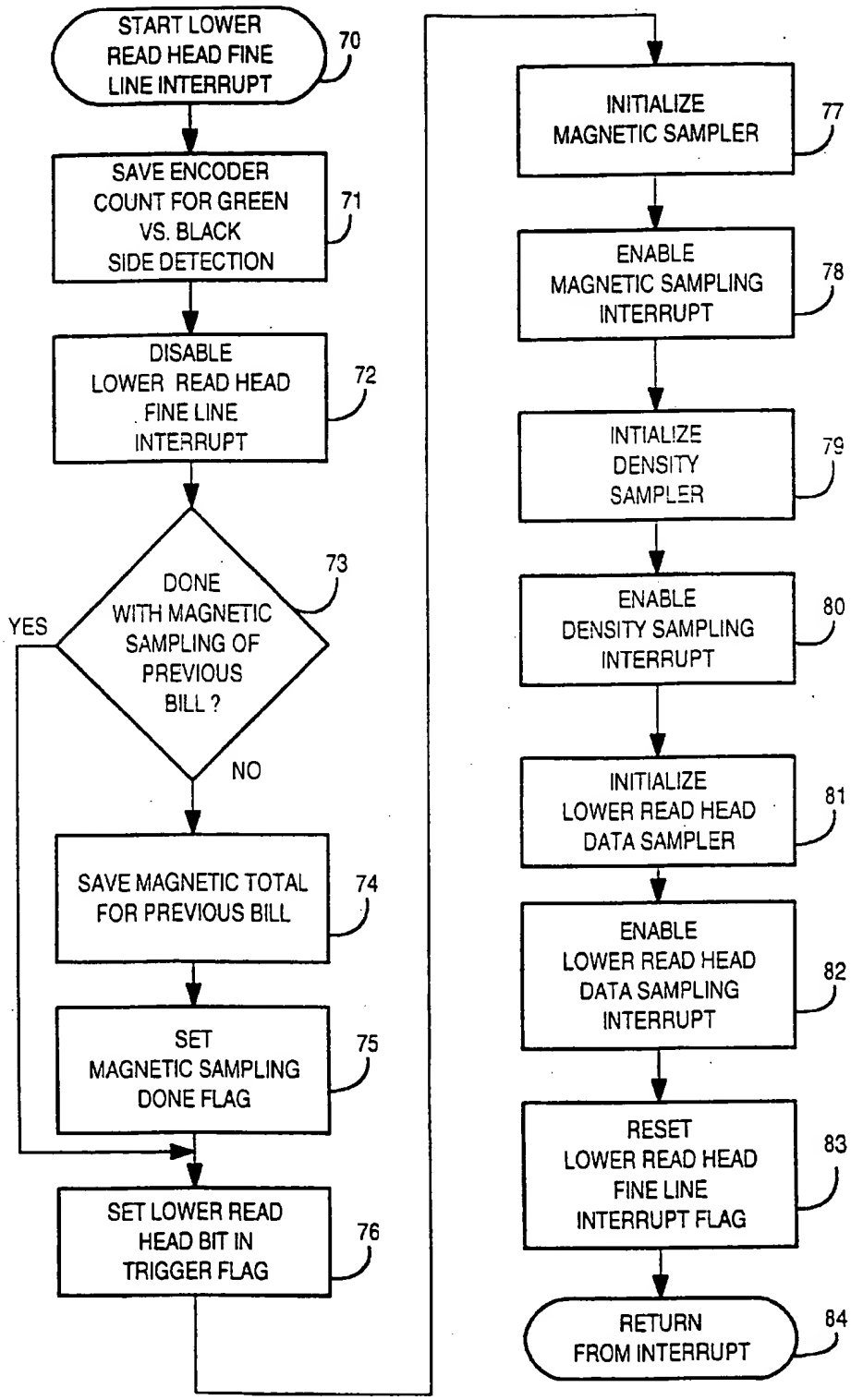

START LOWER READ HEAD FINE LINE INTERRUPT
70
SAVE ENCODER COUNT FOR GREEN VS. BLACK SIDE DETECTION
71
DISABLE LOWER READ HEAD FINE LINE INTERRUPT
72
DONE WITH MAGNETIC SAMPLING OF PREVIOUS BILL ?
73
YES
NO
SAVE MAGNETIC TOTAL FOR PREVIOUS BILL
74
SET MAGNETIC SAMPLING DONE FLAG
75
SET LOWER READ HEAD BIT IN TRIGGER FLAG
76
INITIALIZE MAGNETIC SAMPLER
77
ENABLE MAGNETIC SAMPLING INTERRUPT
78
INTIALIZE DENSITY SAMPLER
79
ENABLE DENSITY SAMPLING INTERRUPT
80
INITIALIZE LOWER READ HEAD DATA SAMPLER
81
ENABLE LOWER READ HEAD DATA SAMPLING INTERRUPT
82
RESET LOWER READ HEAD FINE LINE INTERRUPT FLAG
83
RETURN FROM INTERRUPT
84

FIG. 9

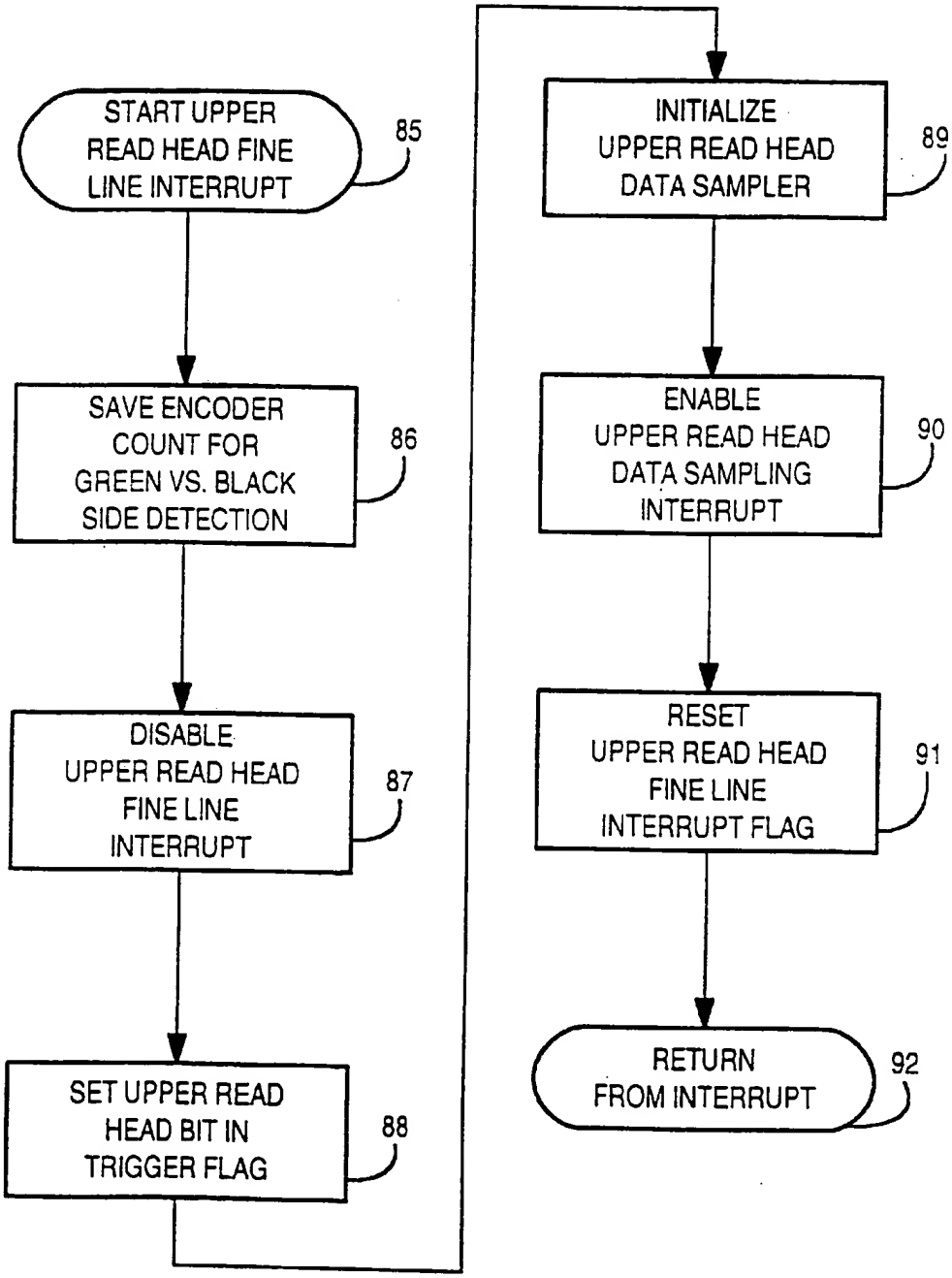

START UPPER READ HEAD FINE LINE INTERRUPT
85
SAVE ENCODER COUNT FOR GREEN VS. BLACK SIDE DETECTION
86
DISABLE UPPER READ HEAD FINE LINE INTERRUPT
87
SET UPPER READ HEAD BIT IN TRIGGER FLAG
88
INITIALIZE UPPER READ HEAD DATA SAMPLER
89
ENABLE UPPER READ HEAD DATA SAMPLING INTERRUPT
90
RESET UPPER READ HEAD FINE LINE INTERRUPT FLAG
91
RETURN FROM INTERRUPT
92

FIG. 10

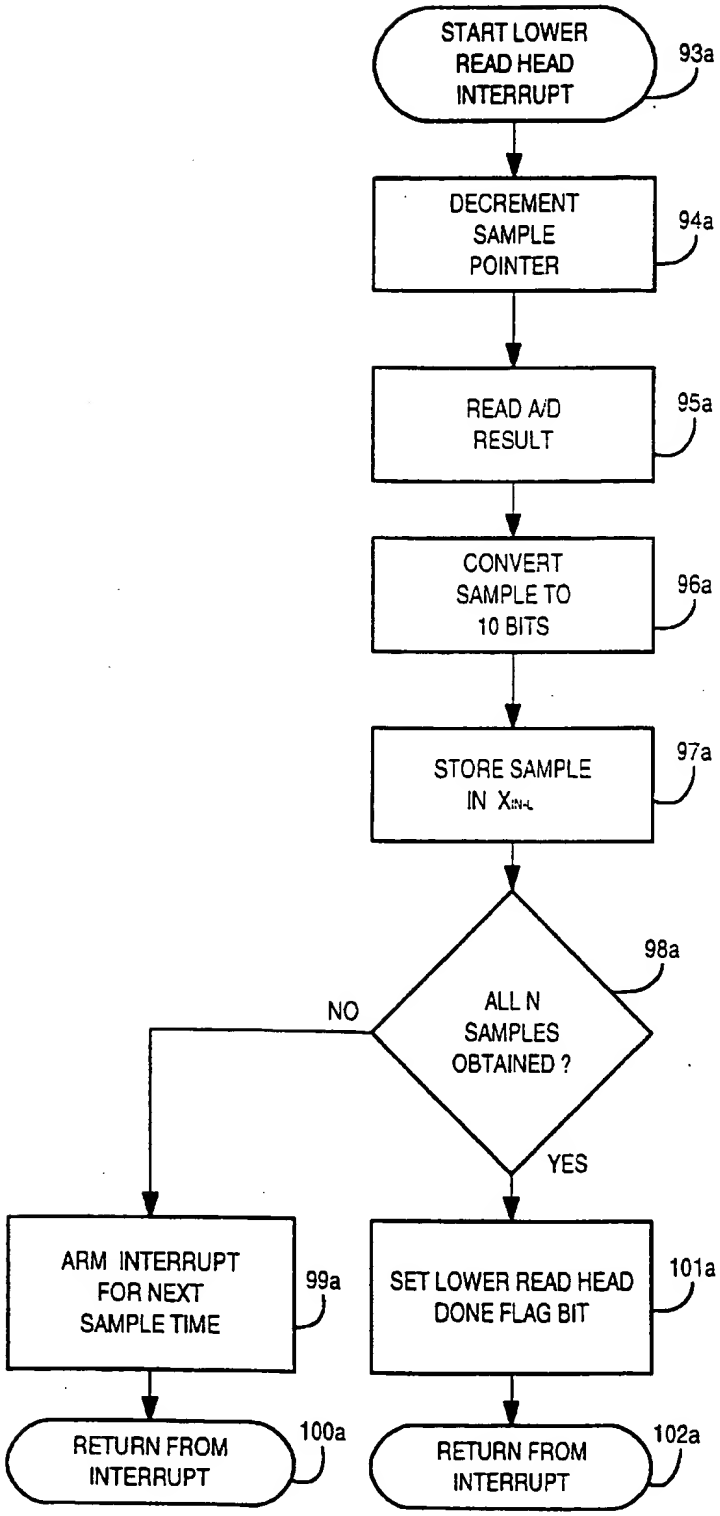

START LOWER READ HEAD INTERRUPT
93a
DECREMENT SAMPLE POINTER
94a
READ A/D RESULT
95a
CONVERT SAMPLE TO 10 BITS
96a
STORE SAMPLE IN XIN-L
97a
ALL N SAMPLES OBTAINED ?
98a
NO
YES
ARM INTERRUPT FOR NEXT SAMPLE TIME
99a
RETURN FROM INTERRUPT
100a
SET LOWER READ HEAD DONE FLAG BIT
101a
RETURN FROM INTERRUPT
102a

FIG. 11a

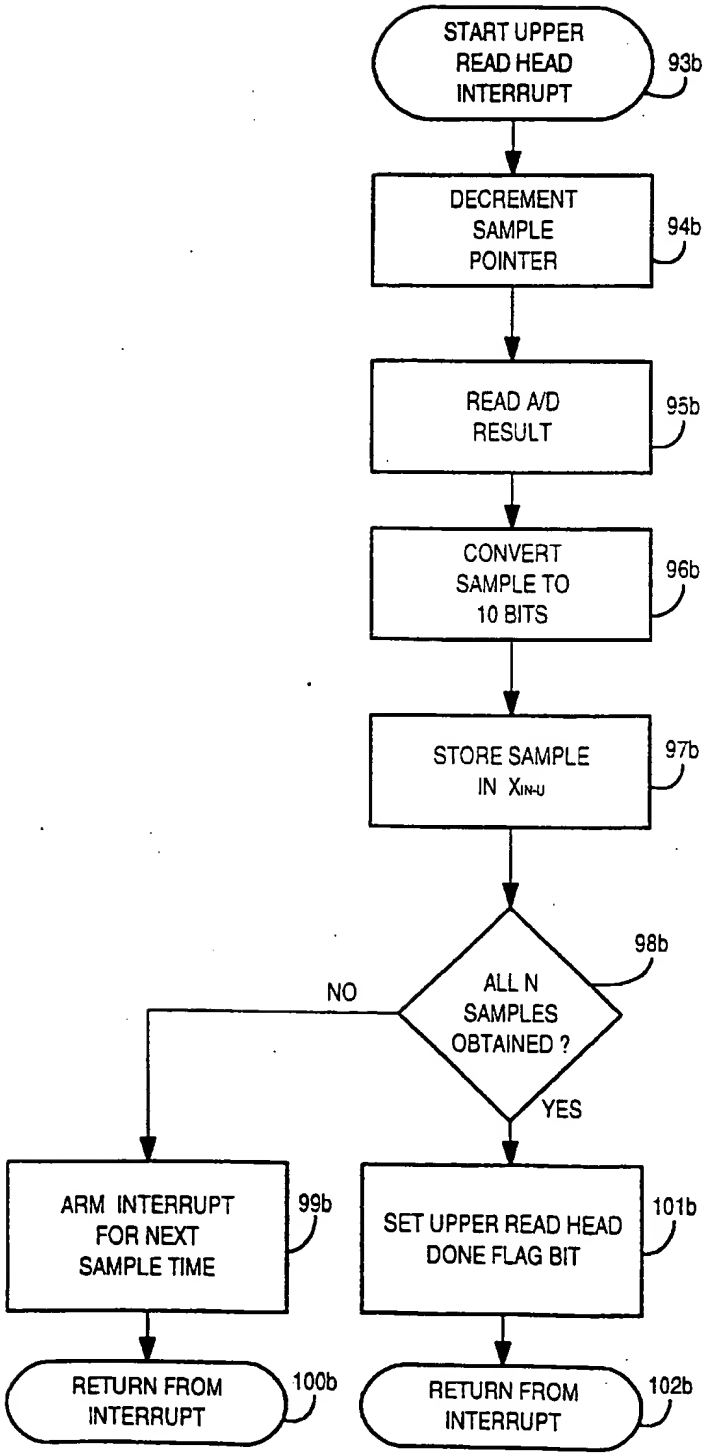

START UPPER READ HEAD INTERRUPT
93b
DECREMENT SAMPLE POINTER
94b
READ A/D RESULT
95b
CONVERT SAMPLE TO 10 BITS
96b
STORE SAMPLE IN X_{IN-U}
97b
ALL N SAMPLES OBTAINED ?
98b
NO
YES
ARM INTERRUPT FOR NEXT SAMPLE TIME
99b
RETURN FROM INTERRUPT
100b
SET UPPER READ HEAD DONE FLAG BIT
101b
RETURN FROM INTERRUPT
102b

FIG. 11b

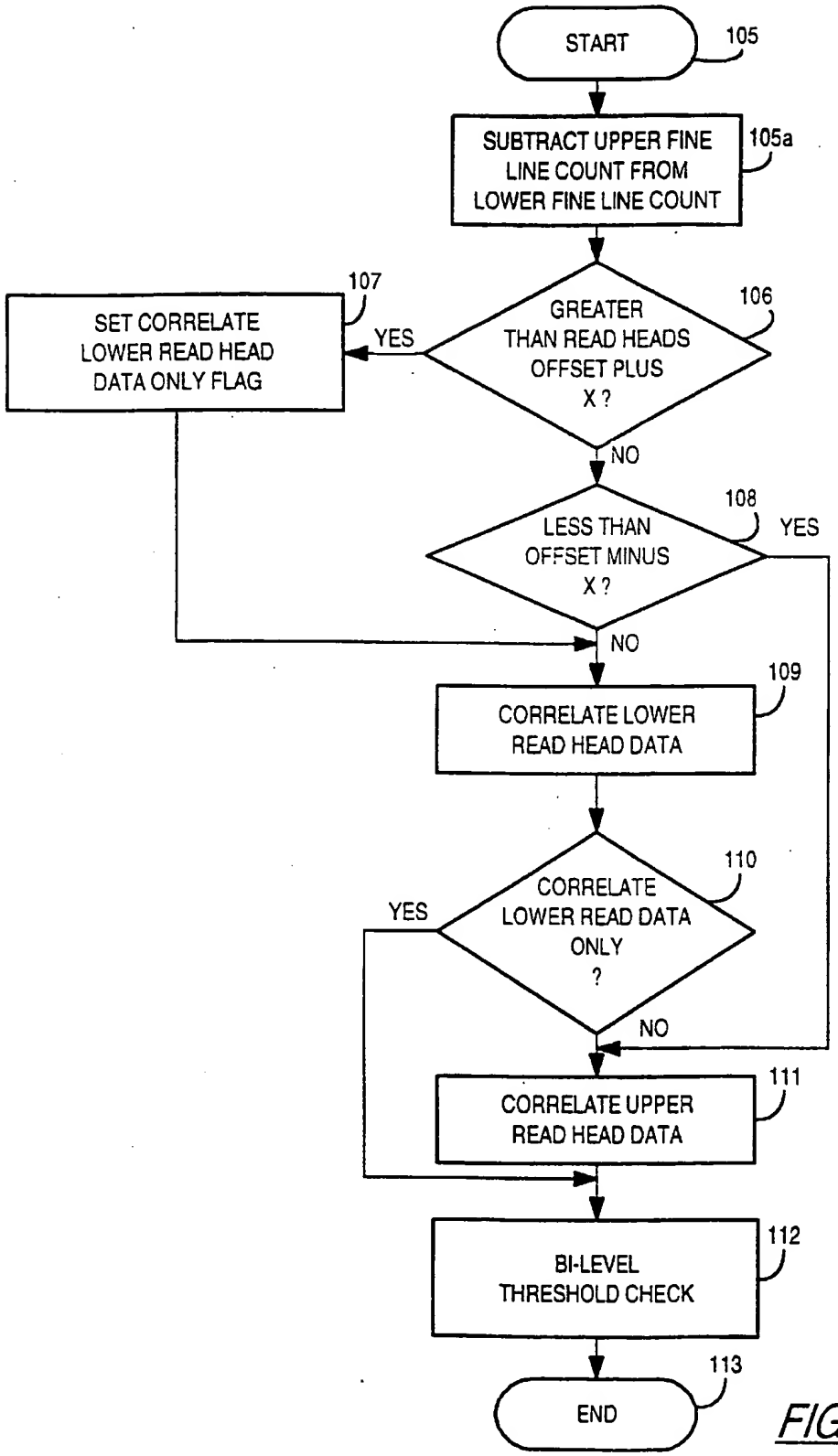

START
105
SUBTRACT UPPER FINE LINE COUNT FROM LOWER FINE LINE COUNT
105a
GREATER THAN READ HEADS OFFSET PLUS X ?
106
YES
SET CORRELATE LOWER READ HEAD DATA ONLY FLAG
107
NO
LESS THAN OFFSET MINUS X ?
108
YES
NO
CORRELATE LOWER READ HEAD DATA
109
CORRELATE LOWER READ DATA ONLY ?
110
YES
NO
CORRELATE UPPER READ HEAD DATA
111
BI-LEVEL THRESHOLD CHECK
112
END
113

FIG. 12

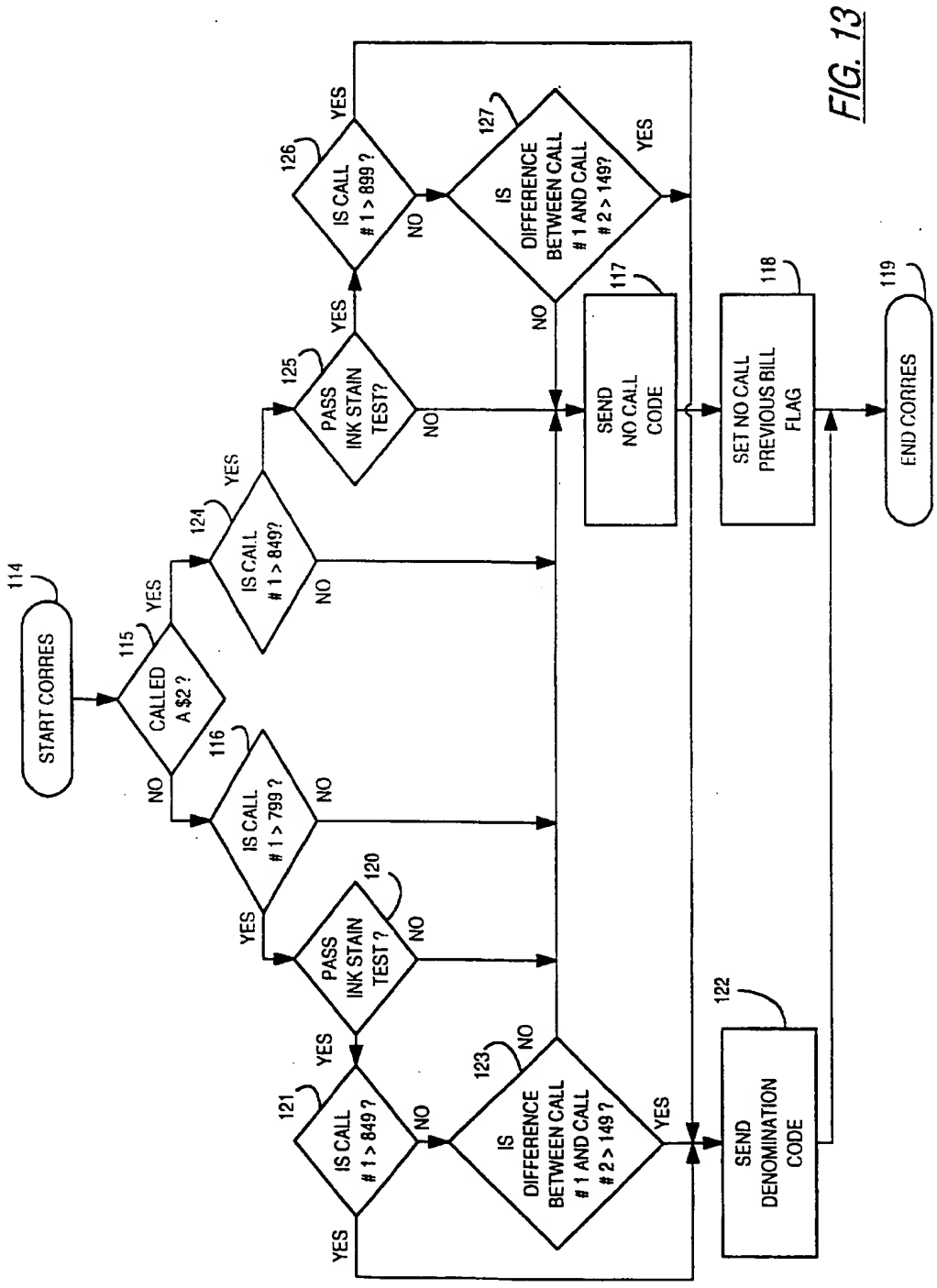

114
START CORRES
115
CALLED A $2 ?
YES
NO
116
IS CALL # 1 > 799 ?
YES
NO
120
PASS INK STAIN TEST ?
YES
NO
121
IS CALL # 1 > 849 ?
YES
NO
123
IS DIFFERENCE BETWEEN CALL # 1 AND CALL # 2 > 149 ?
YES
NO
122
SEND DENOMINATION CODE
124
IS CALL # 1 > 849?
YES
NO
125
PASS INK STAIN TEST?
YES
NO
126
IS CALL # 1 > 899 ?
YES
NO
127
IS DIFFERENCE BETWEEN CALL # 1 AND CALL # 2 > 149?
YES
NO
117
SEND NO CALL CODE
118
SET NO CALL PREVIOUS BILL FLAG
119
END CORRES

FIG. 13

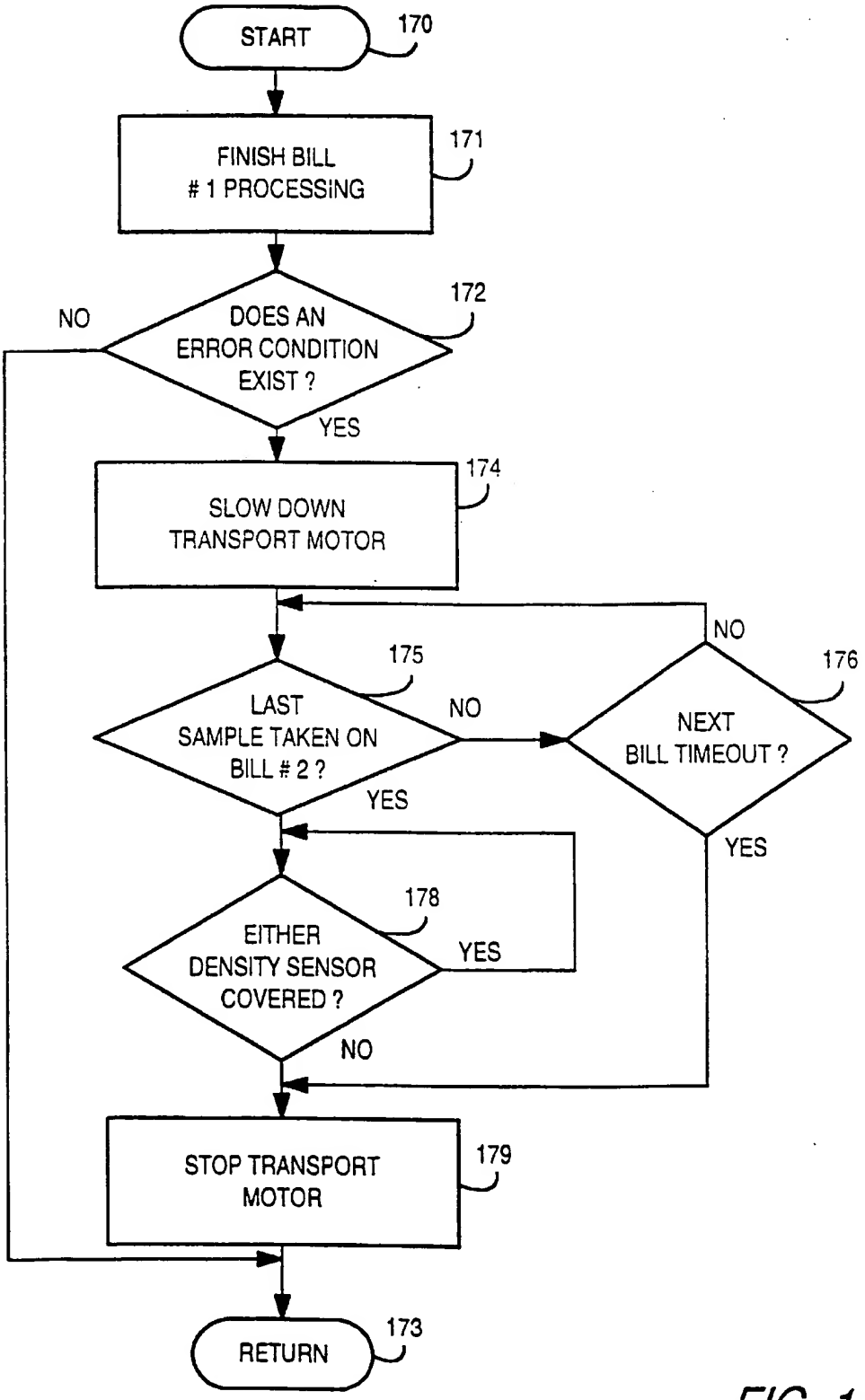

START
170
FINISH BILL
1 PROCESSING
171
DOES AN
ERROR CONDITION
EXIST ?
172
NO
YES
SLOW DOWN
TRANSPORT MOTOR
174
LAST
SAMPLE TAKEN ON
BILL # 2 ?
175
NO
YES
NEXT
BILL TIMEOUT ?
176
NO
YES
EITHER
DENSITY SENSOR
COVERED ?
178
YES
NO
STOP TRANSPORT
MOTOR
179
RETURN
173

FIG. 14

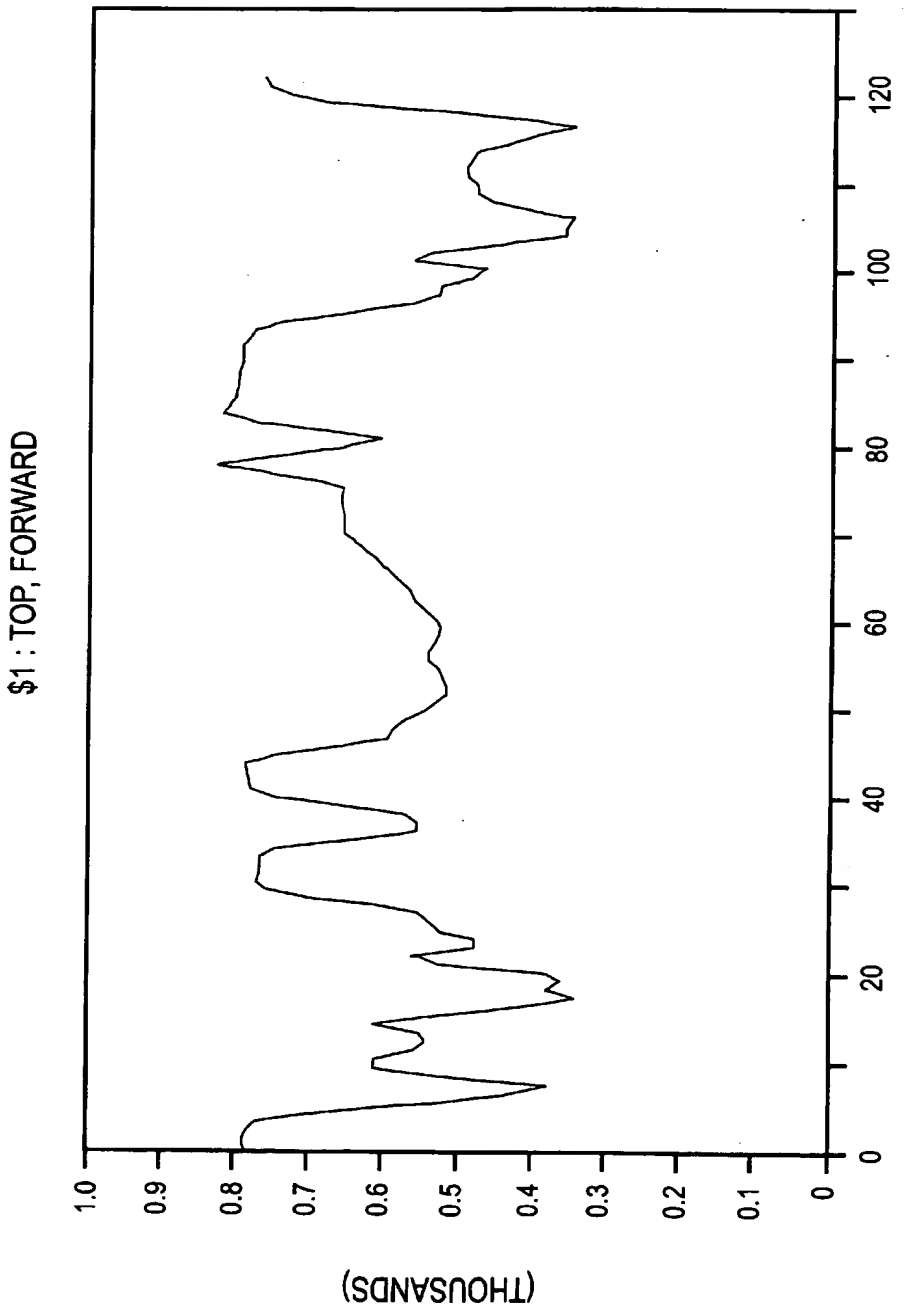

$1 : TOP, FORWARD
SAMPLES
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
(THOUSANDS)
0
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.5
0.6
0.7
0.8
0.9
1.0

FIG. 15a

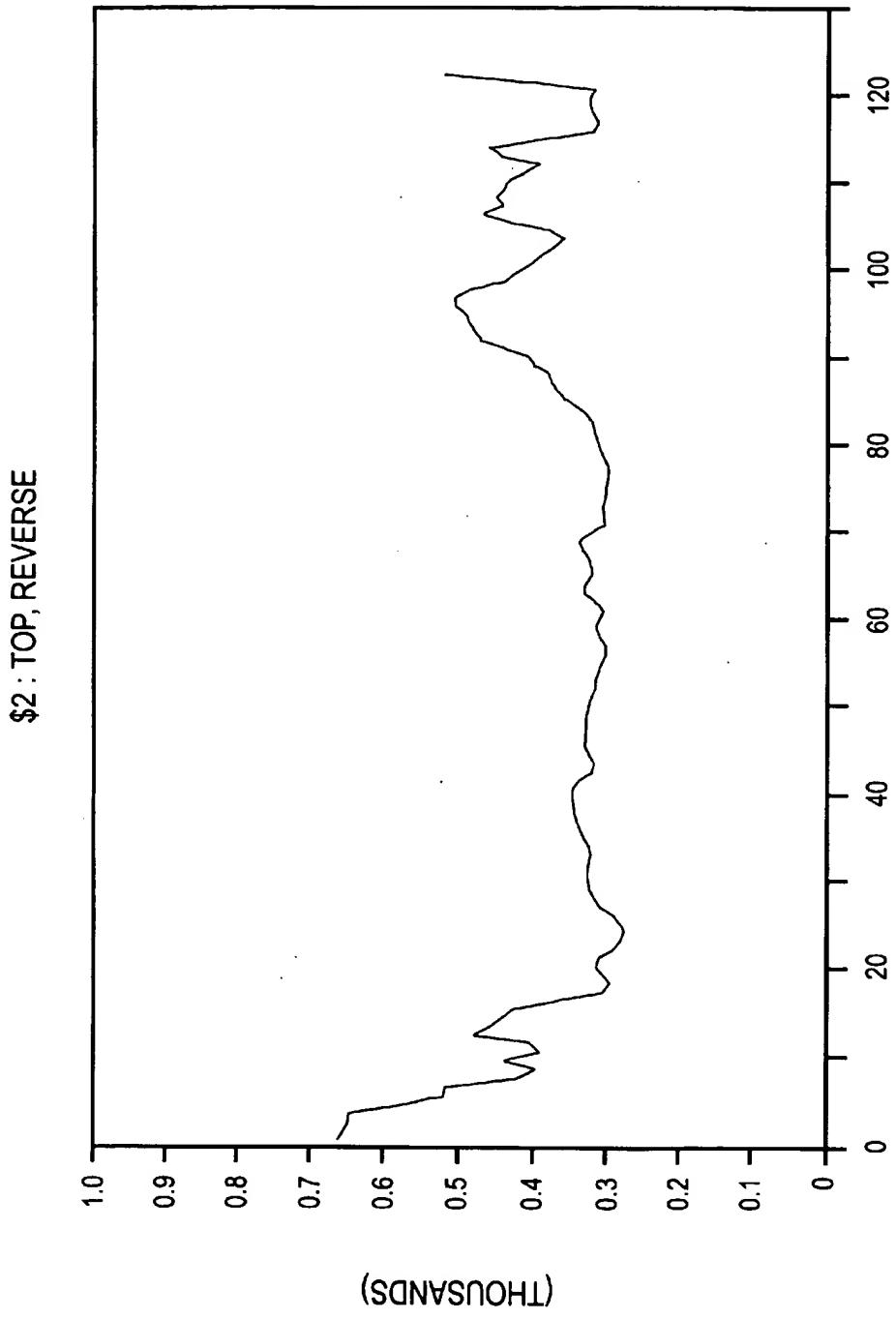

$2 : TOP, REVERSE
SAMPLES
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
(THOUSANDS)
0
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.5
0.6
0.7
0.8
0.9
1.0

FIG. 15b

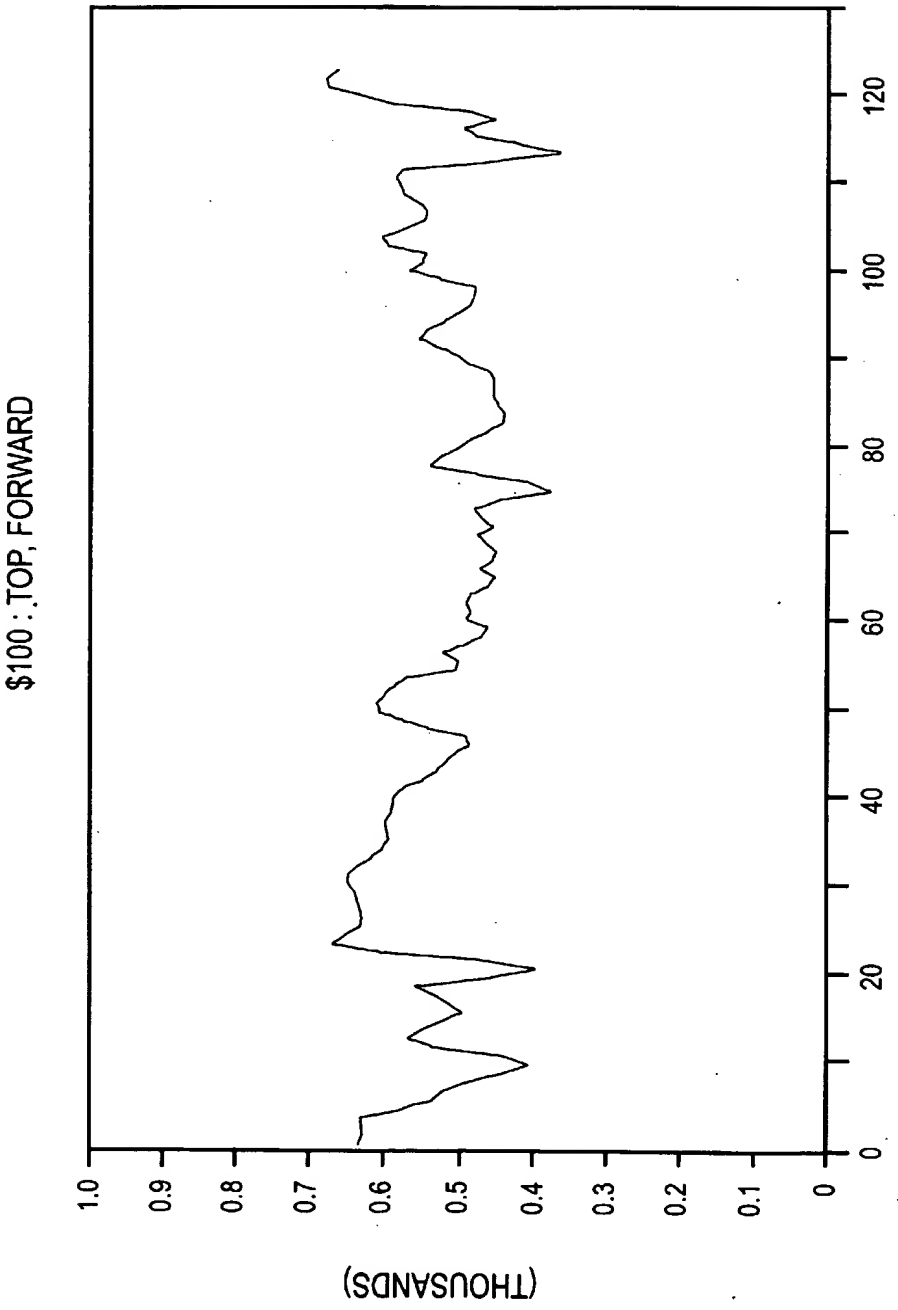

$100 : TOP, FORWARD
(THOUSANDS)
1.0
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0.1
0
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
SAMPLES

FIG. 15c

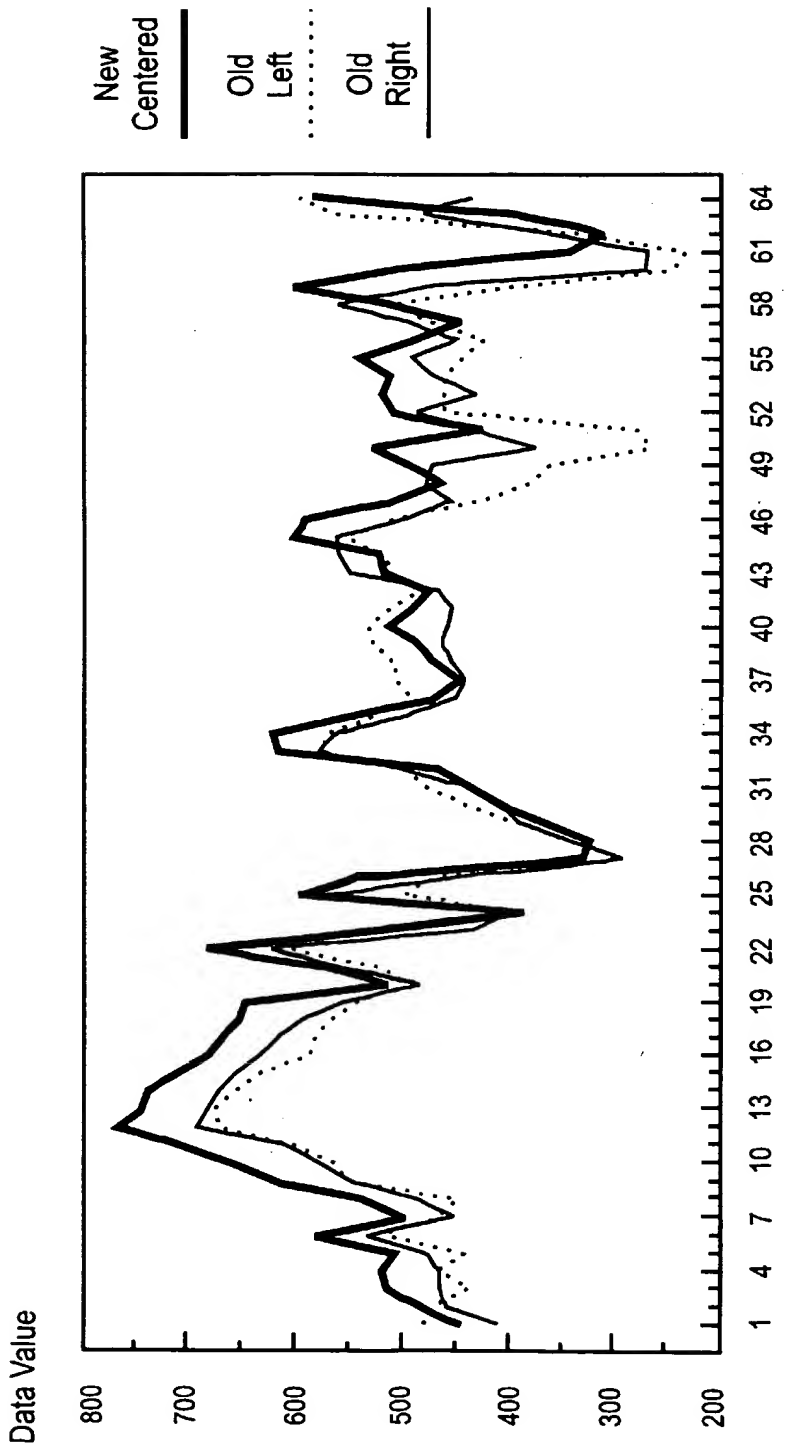

20 Dollar Bill
New Centered
Old Left
Old Right
Data Value
800
700
600
500
400
300
200
1 4 7 10 13 16 19 22 25 28 31 34 37 40 43 46 49 52 55 58 61 64
Sample Number

FIG. 15d

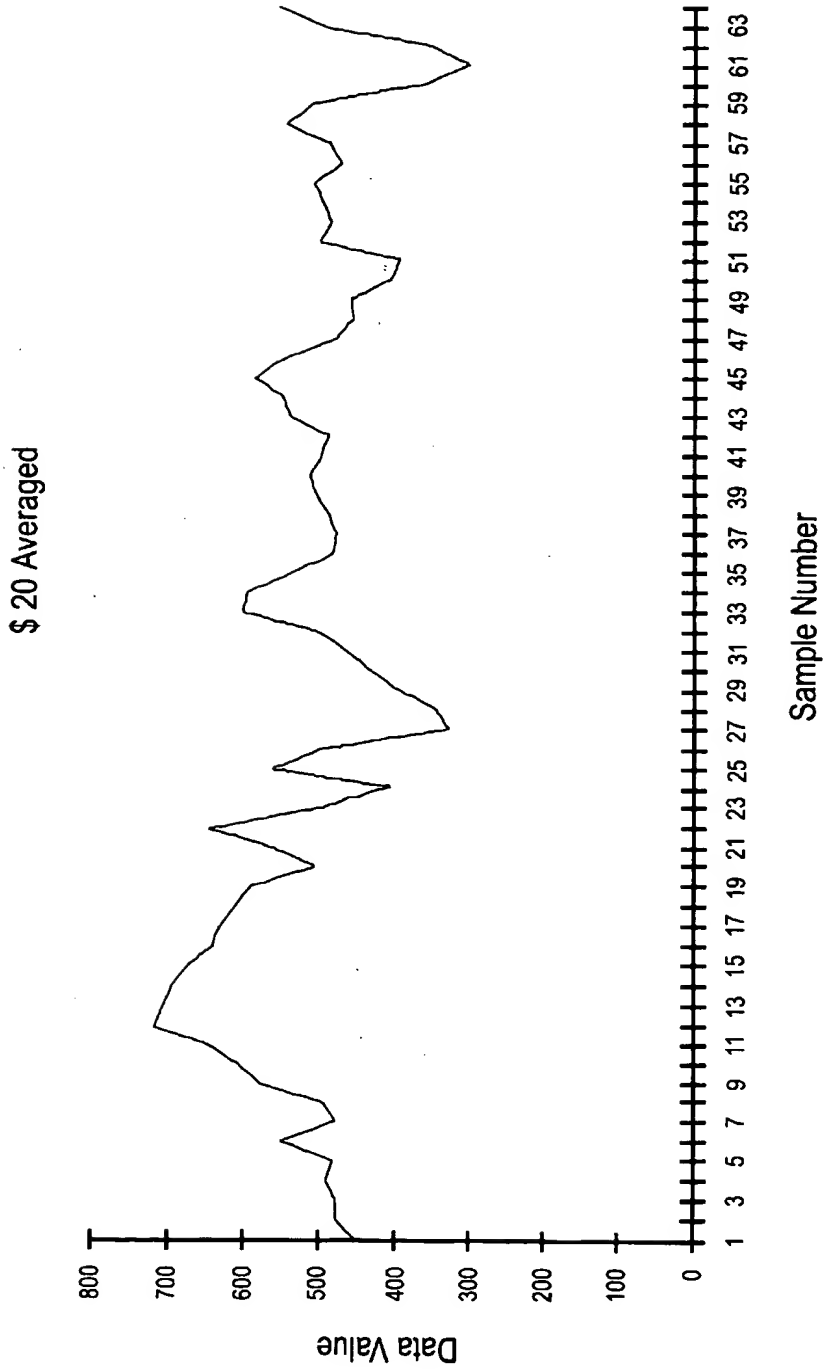

$ 20 Averaged
Data Value
800
700
600
500
400
300
200
100
0
1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 17 19 21 23 25 27 29 31 33 35 37 39 41 43 45 47 49 51 53 55 57 59 61 63
Sample Number

FIG. 15e

FIG. 16a

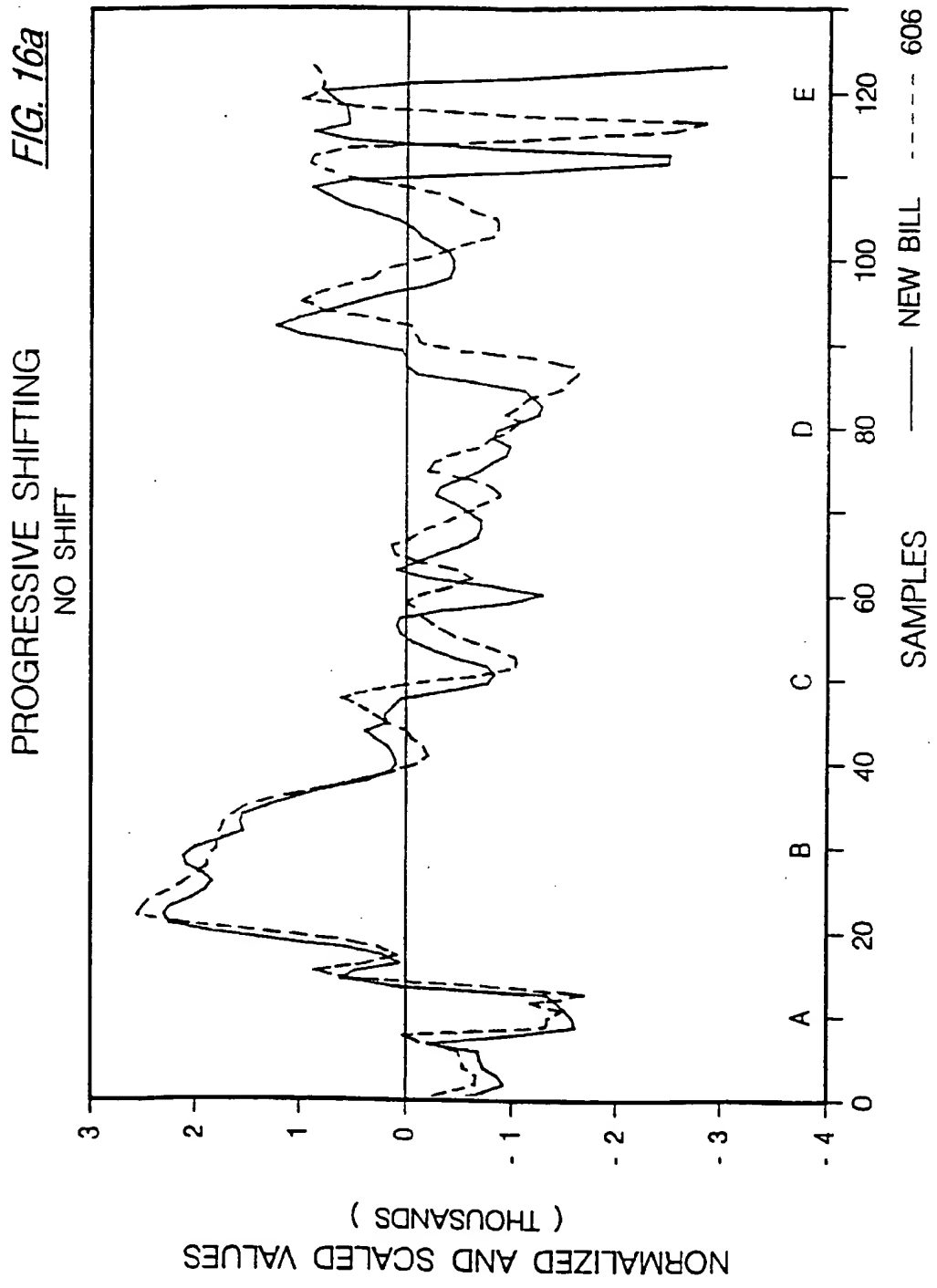

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING
NO SHIFT
NORMALIZED AND SCALED VALUES
(THOUSANDS)
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
A
B
C
D
E
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
SAMPLES
NEW BILL
606

FIG. 16b

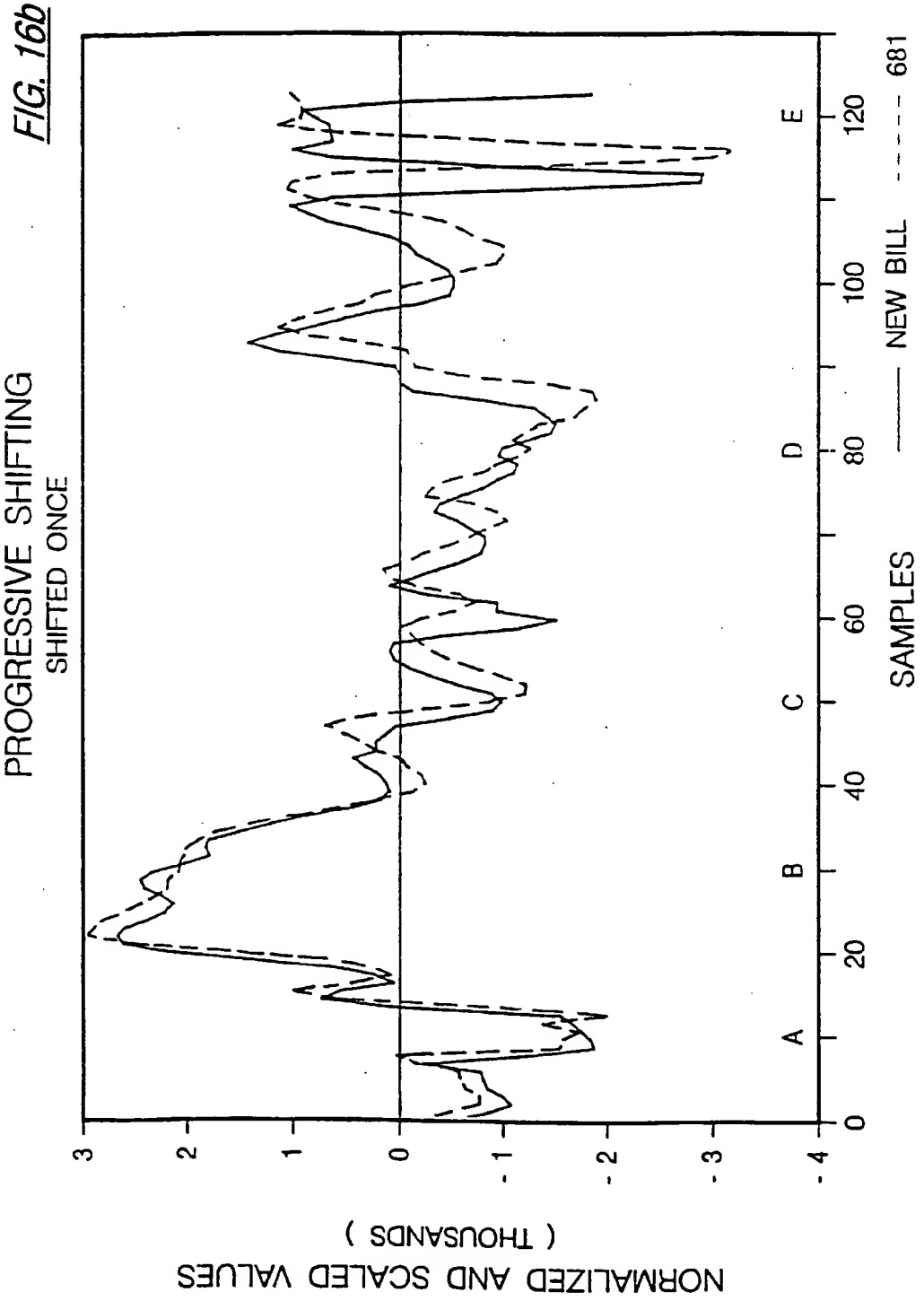

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING
SHIFTED ONCE
NORMALIZED AND SCALED VALUES
(THOUSANDS)
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
A
B
C
D
E
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
SAMPLES
NEW BILL
681

FIG. 16c

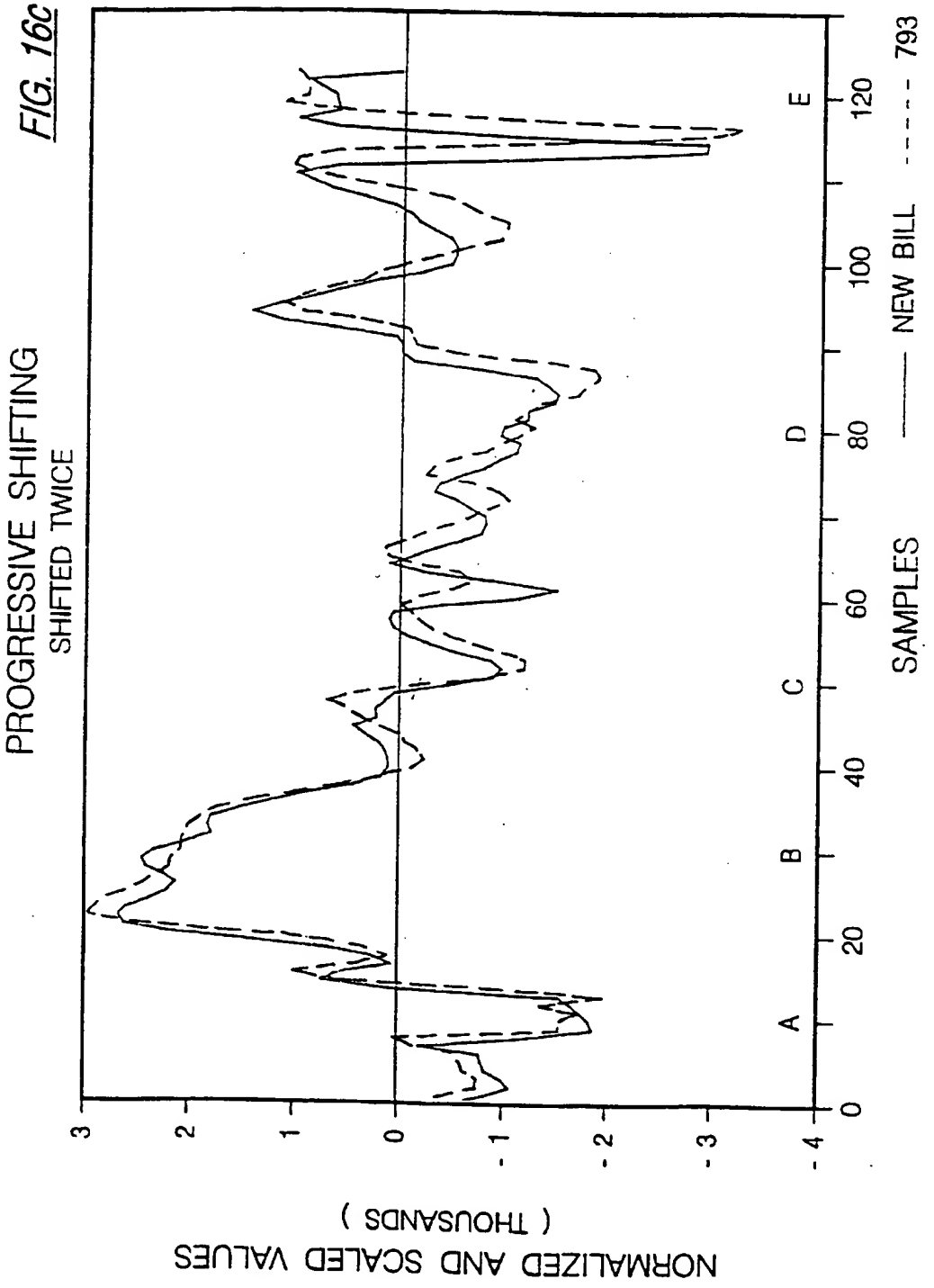

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING
SHIFTED TWICE
NORMALIZED AND SCALED VALUES
(THOUSANDS)
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
A
B
C
D
E
SAMPLES
NEW BILL
793

FIG. 16d

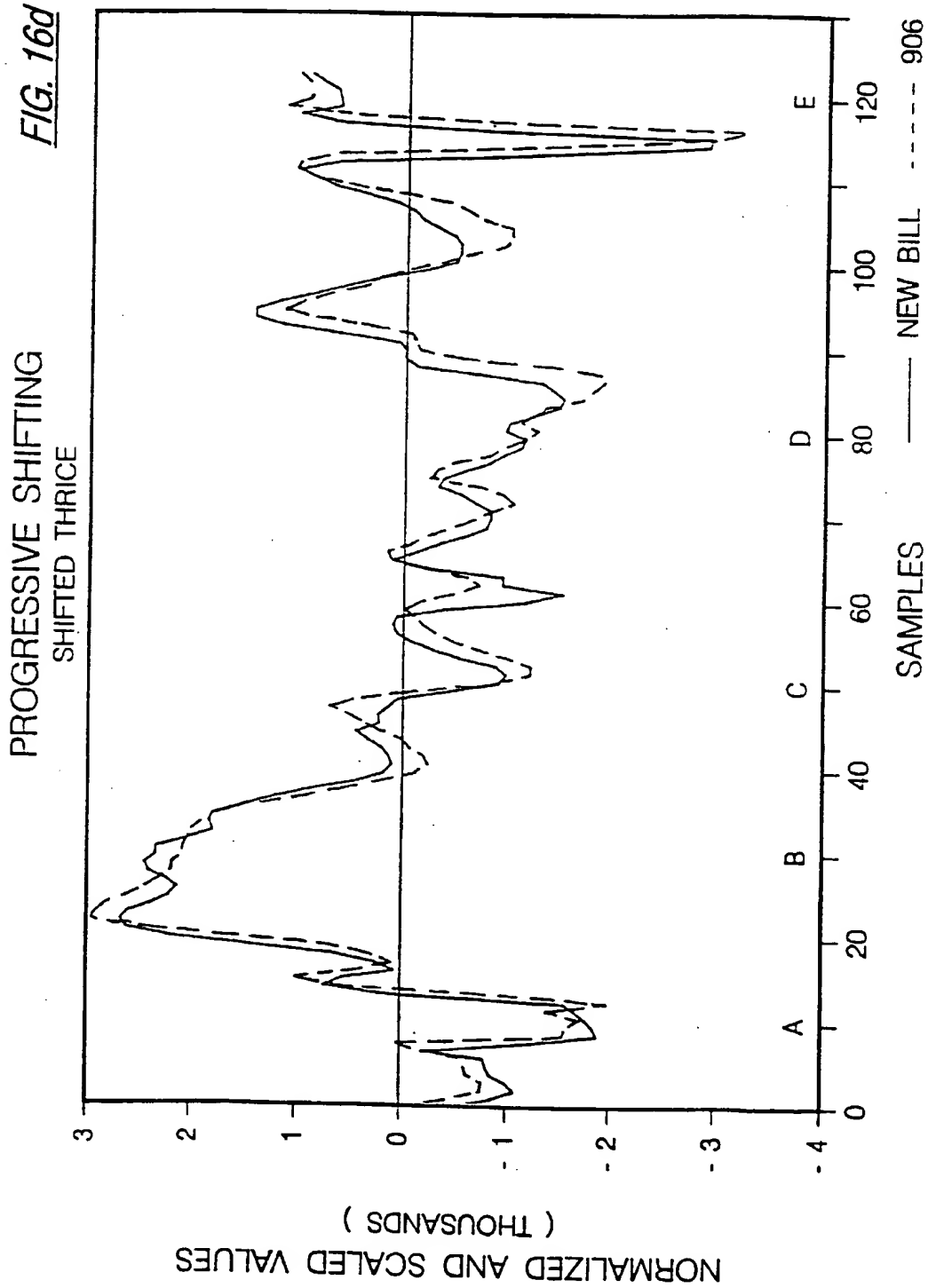
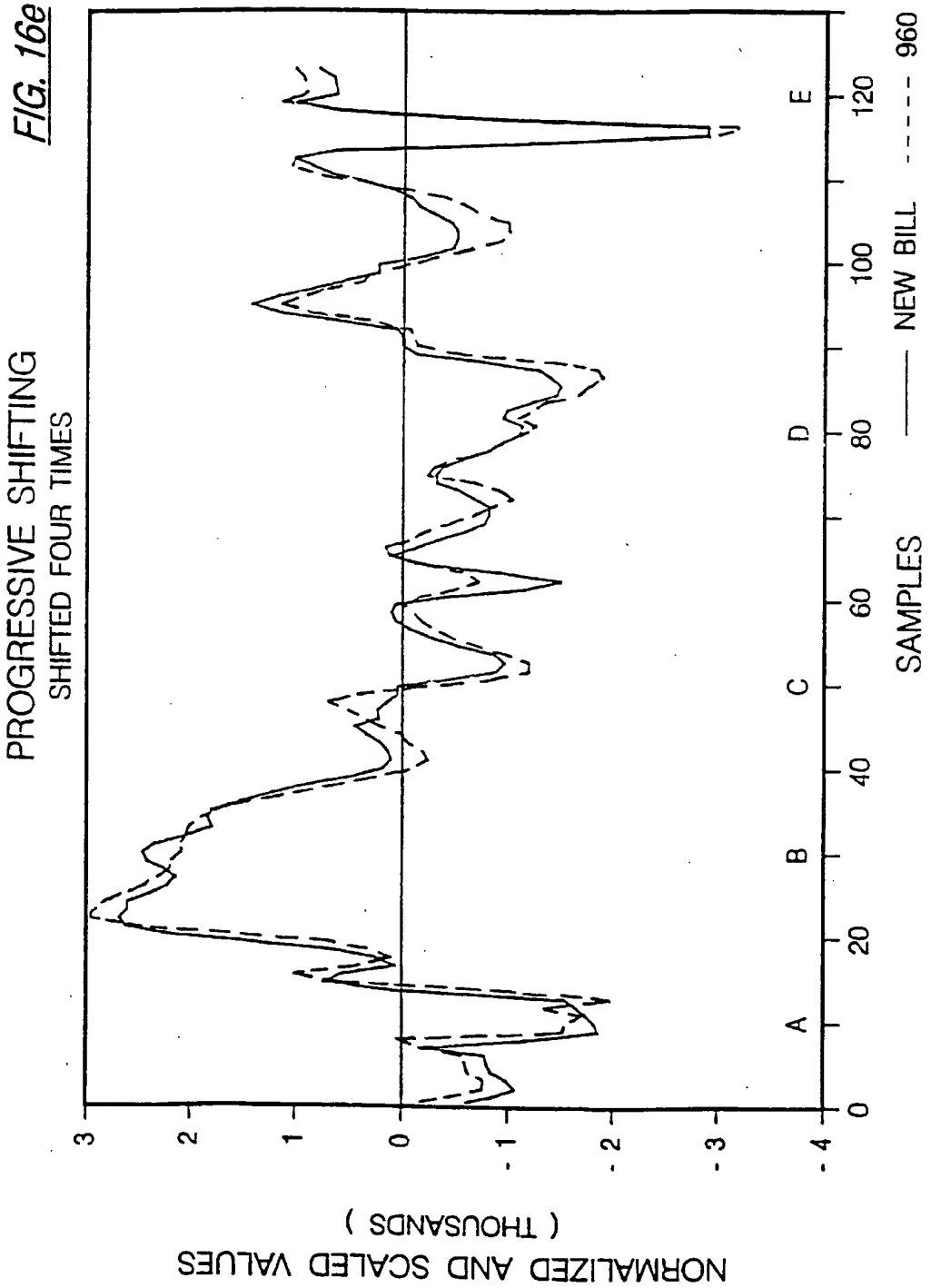

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING
SHIFTED THRICE
NORMALIZED AND SCALED VALUES
(THOUSANDS)
SAMPLES
NEW BILL
906
A
B
C
D
E
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4

FIG. 16e


PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING
SHIFTED FOUR TIMES
NORMALIZED AND SCALED VALUES
(THOUSANDS)
3
2
1
0
-1
-2
-3
-4
A
B
C
D
E
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
SAMPLES
NEW BILL
960

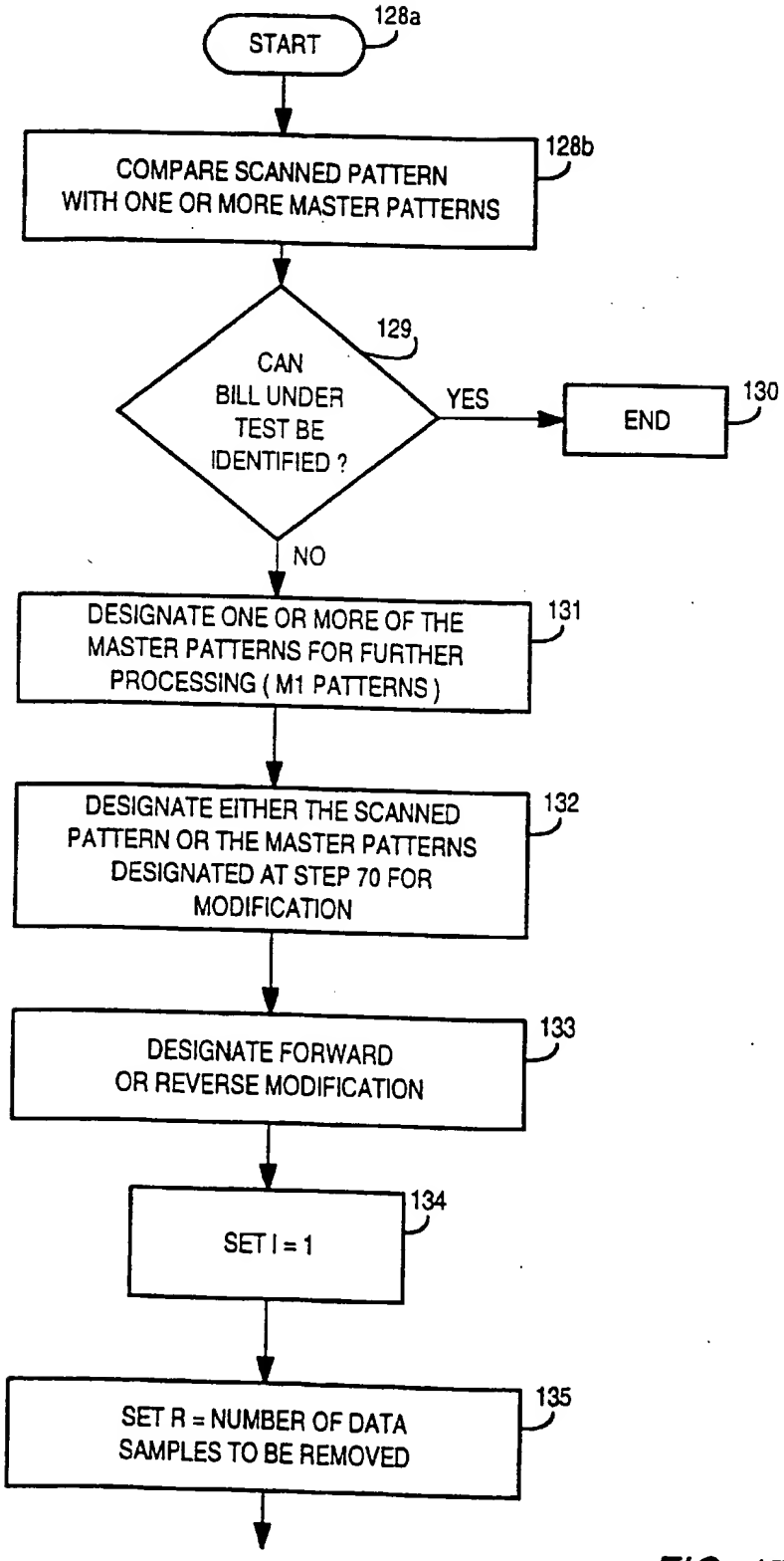

START
128a
COMPARE SCANNED PATTERN WITH ONE OR MORE MASTER PATTERNS
128b
CAN BILL UNDER TEST BE IDENTIFIED ?
129
YES
END
130
NO
DESIGNATE ONE OR MORE OF THE MASTER PATTERNS FOR FURTHER PROCESSING (M1 PATTERNS)
131
DESIGNATE EITHER THE SCANNED PATTERN OR THE MASTER PATTERNS DESIGNATED AT STEP 70 FOR MODIFICATION
132
DESIGNATE FORWARD OR REVERSE MODIFICATION
133
SET I = 1
134
SET R = NUMBER OF DATA SAMPLES TO BE REMOVED
135

FIG. 17a

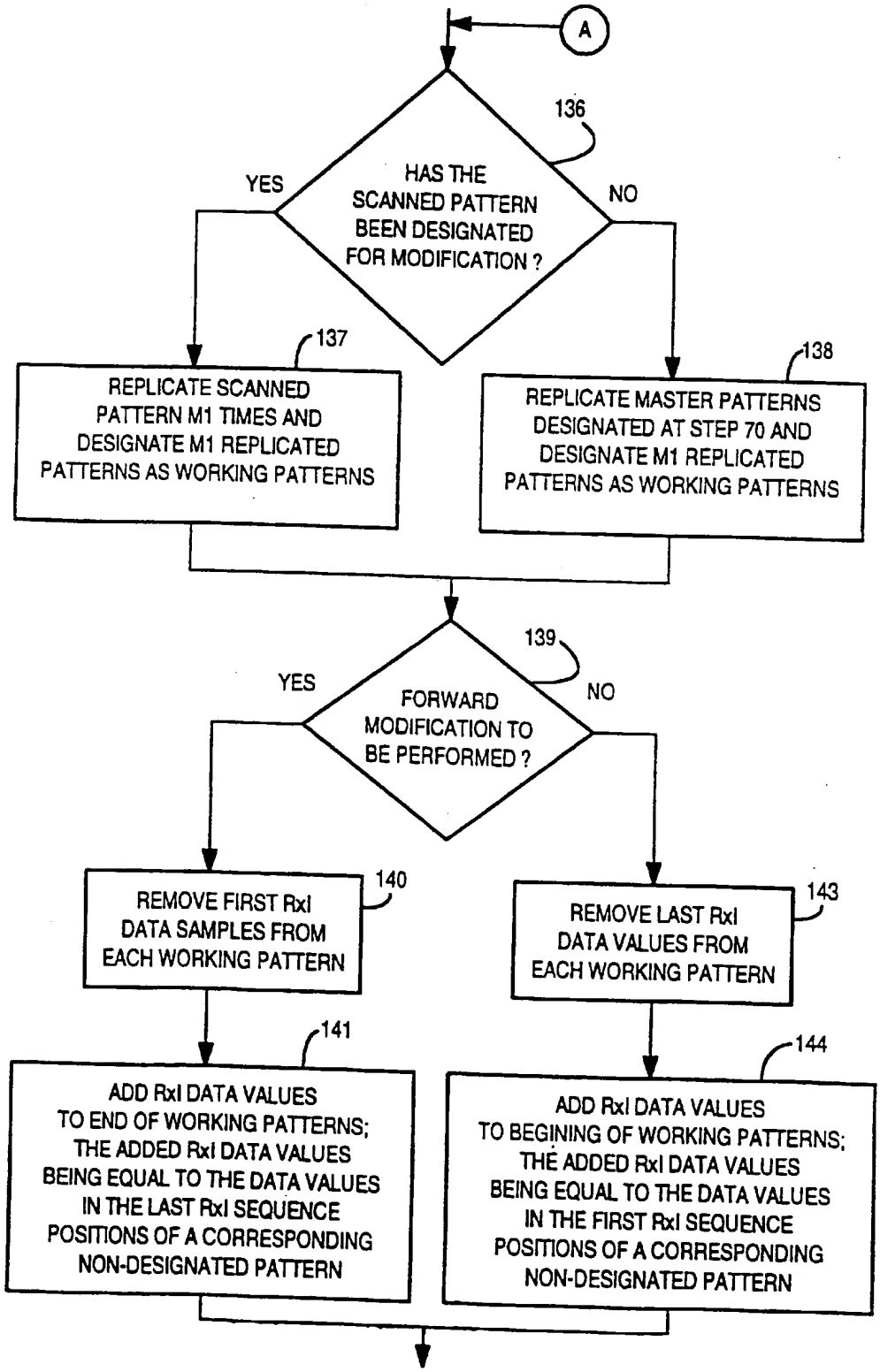

A
136
HAS THE SCANNED PATTERN BEEN DESIGNATED FOR MODIFICATION ?
YES
NO
137
REPLICATE SCANNED PATTERN M1 TIMES AND DESIGNATE M1 REPLICATED PATTERNS AS WORKING PATTERNS
138
REPLICATE MASTER PATTERNS DESIGNATED AT STEP 70 AND DESIGNATE M1 REPLICATED PATTERNS AS WORKING PATTERNS
139
FORWARD MODIFICATION TO BE PERFORMED ?
YES
NO
140
REMOVE FIRST RxI DATA SAMPLES FROM EACH WORKING PATTERN
143
REMOVE LAST RxI DATA VALUES FROM EACH WORKING PATTERN
141
ADD RxI DATA VALUES TO END OF WORKING PATTERNS; THE ADDED RxI DATA VALUES BEING EQUAL TO THE DATA VALUES IN THE LAST RxI SEQUENCE POSITIONS OF A CORRESPONDING NON-DESIGNATED PATTERN
144
ADD RxI DATA VALUES TO BEGINING OF WORKING PATTERNS; THE ADDED RxI DATA VALUES BEING EQUAL TO THE DATA VALUES IN THE FIRST RxI SEQUENCE POSITIONS OF A CORRESPONDING NON-DESIGNATED PATTERN

FIG. 17b

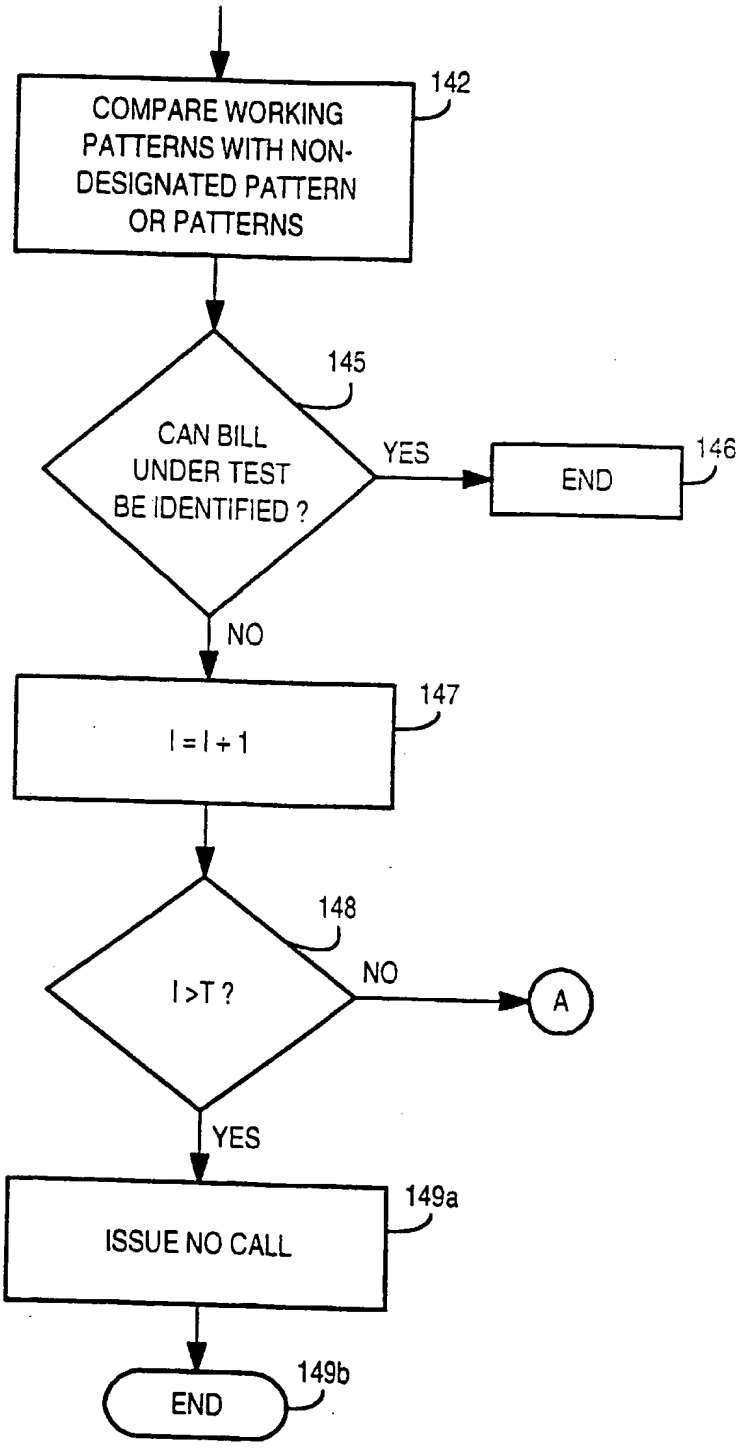

COMPARE WORKING PATTERNS WITH NON-DESIGNATED PATTERN OR PATTERNS
142
CAN BILL UNDER TEST BE IDENTIFIED ?
145
YES
END
146
NO
I = I + 1
147
I >T ?
148
NO
A
YES
ISSUE NO CALL
149a
END
149b

FIG. 17c

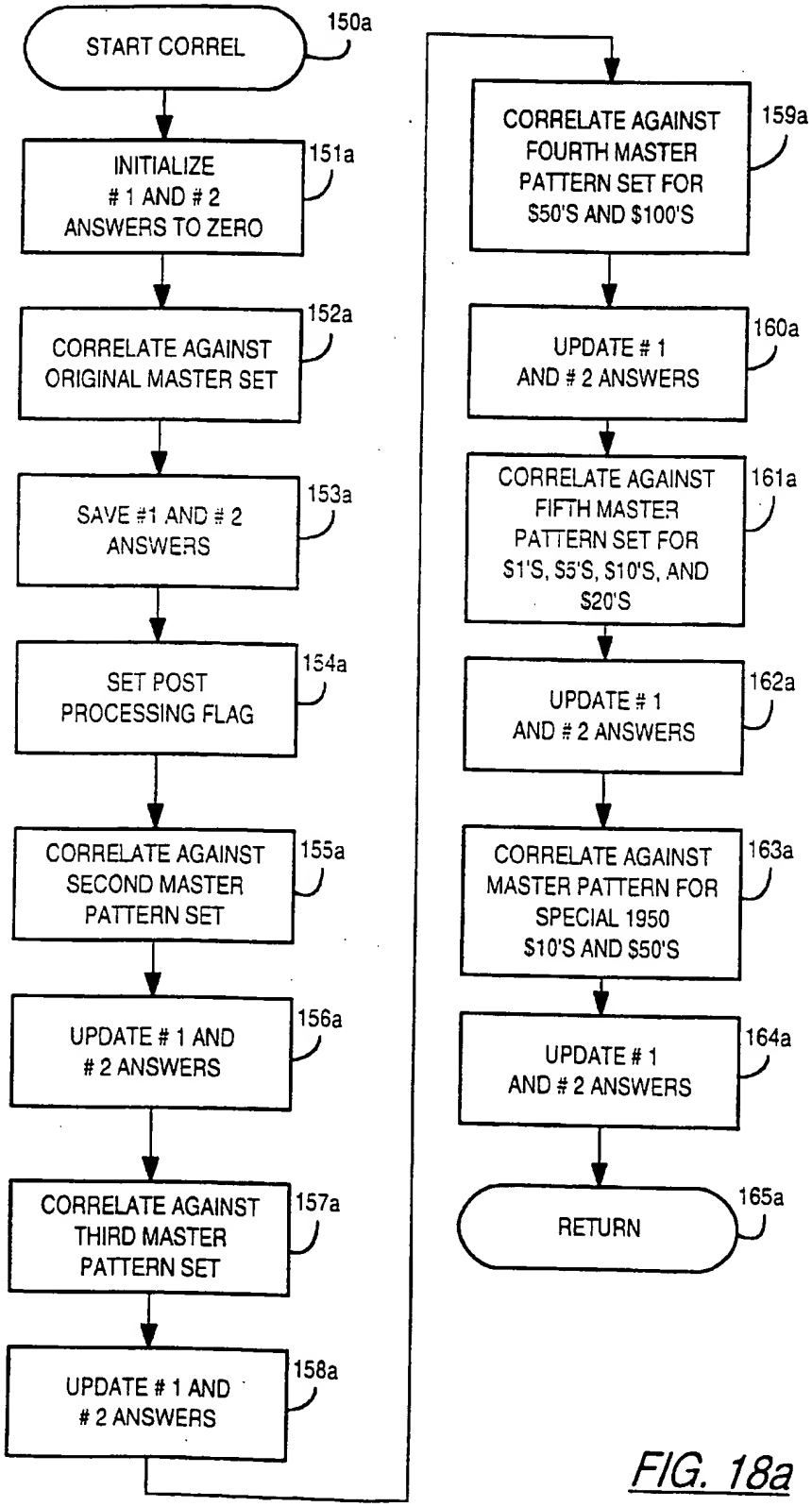

START CORREL
150a
INITIALIZE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS TO ZERO
151a
CORRELATE AGAINST ORIGINAL MASTER SET
152a
SAVE #1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
153a
SET POST PROCESSING FLAG
154a
CORRELATE AGAINST SECOND MASTER PATTERN SET
155a
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
156a
CORRELATE AGAINST THIRD MASTER PATTERN SET
157a
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
158a
CORRELATE AGAINST FOURTH MASTER PATTERN SET FOR $50'S AND $100'S
159a
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
160a
CORRELATE AGAINST FIFTH MASTER PATTERN SET FOR $1'S, $5'S, $10'S, AND $20'S
161a
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
162a
CORRELATE AGAINST MASTER PATTERN FOR SPECIAL 1950 $10'S AND $50'S
163a
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
164a
RETURN
165a

FIG. 18a

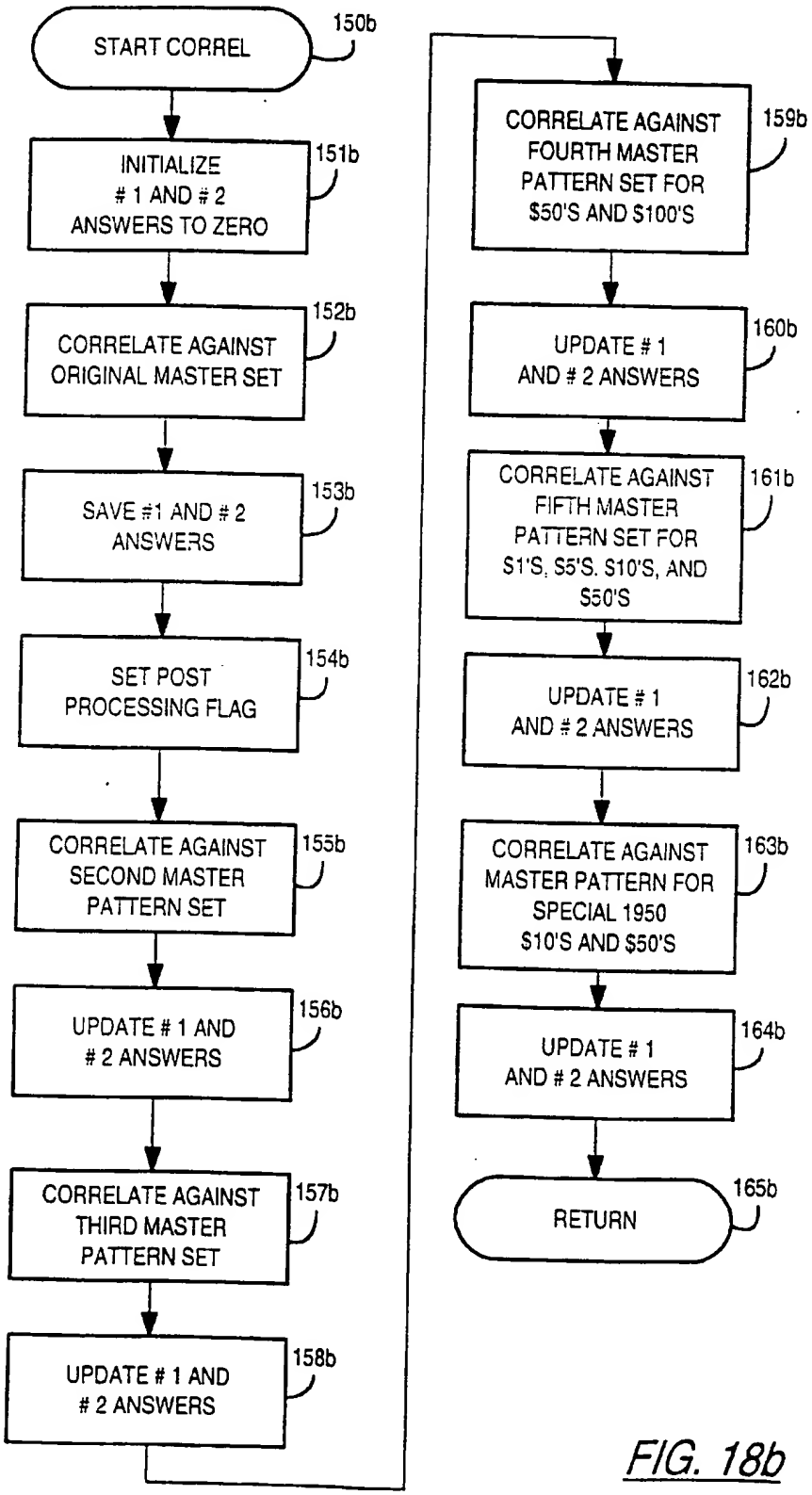

START CORREL
150b
INITIALIZE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS TO ZERO
151b
CORRELATE AGAINST ORIGINAL MASTER SET
152b
SAVE #1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
153b
SET POST PROCESSING FLAG
154b
CORRELATE AGAINST SECOND MASTER PATTERN SET
155b
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
156b
CORRELATE AGAINST THIRD MASTER PATTERN SET
157b
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
158b
CORRELATE AGAINST FOURTH MASTER PATTERN SET FOR $50'S AND $100'S
159b
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
160b
CORRELATE AGAINST FIFTH MASTER PATTERN SET FOR $1'S, $5'S, $10'S, AND $50'S
161b
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
162b
CORRELATE AGAINST MASTER PATTERN FOR SPECIAL 1950 $10'S AND $50'S
163b
UPDATE # 1 AND # 2 ANSWERS
164b
RETURN
165b

FIG. 18b

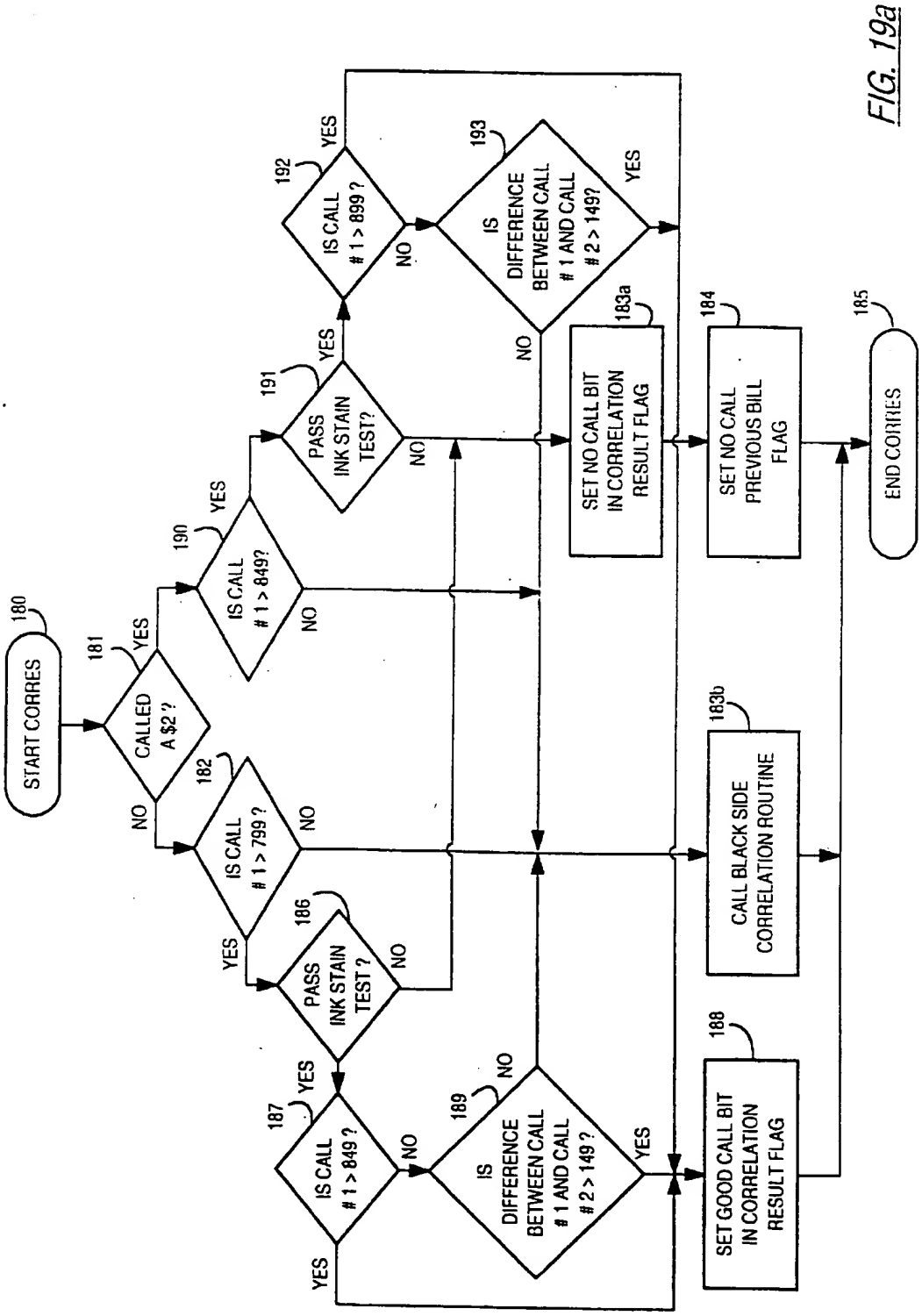

START CORRES
180
CALLED A $2 ?
181
YES
NO
IS CALL # 1 > 849?
190
YES
NO
PASS INK STAIN TEST?
191
YES
NO
IS CALL # 1 > 899 ?
192
YES
NO
IS DIFFERENCE BETWEEN CALL # 1 AND CALL # 2 > 149?
193
YES
NO
SET NO CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
183a
SET NO CALL PREVIOUS BILL FLAG
184
END CORRES
185
IS CALL # 1 > 799 ?
182
YES
NO
PASS INK STAIN TEST ?
186
YES
NO
CALL BLACK SIDE CORRELATION ROUTINE
183b
IS CALL # 1 > 849 ?
187
YES
NO
IS DIFFERENCE BETWEEN CALL # 1 AND CALL # 2 > 149 ?
189
YES
NO
SET GOOD CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
188

FIG. 19a

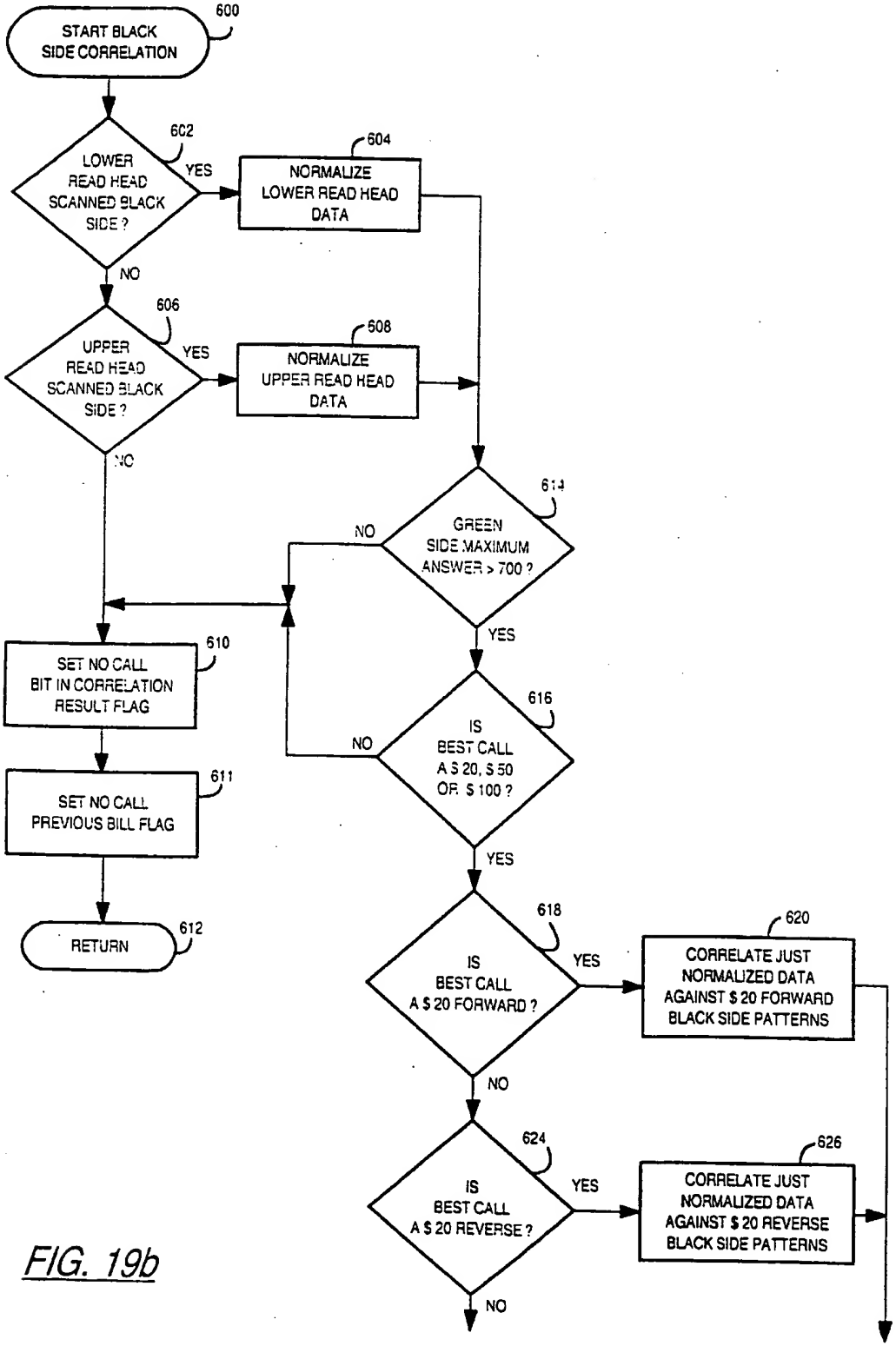

600
START BLACK SIDE CORRELATION
602
LOWER READ HEAD SCANNED BLACK SIDE ?
YES
604
NORMALIZE LOWER READ HEAD DATA
NO
606
UPPER READ HEAD SCANNED BLACK SIDE ?
YES
608
NORMALIZE UPPER READ HEAD DATA
NO
614
GREEN SIDE MAXIMUM ANSWER > 700 ?
NO
YES
610
SET NO CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
611
SET NO CALL PREVIOUS BILL FLAG
612
RETURN
616
IS BEST CALL A $ 20, $ 50 OR $ 100 ?
NO
YES
618
IS BEST CALL A $ 20 FORWARD ?
YES
620
CORRELATE JUST NORMALIZED DATA AGAINST $ 20 FORWARD BLACK SIDE PATTERNS
NO
624
IS BEST CALL A $ 20 REVERSE ?
YES
626
CORRELATE JUST NORMALIZED DATA AGAINST $ 20 REVERSE BLACK SIDE PATTERNS
NO

FIG. 19b

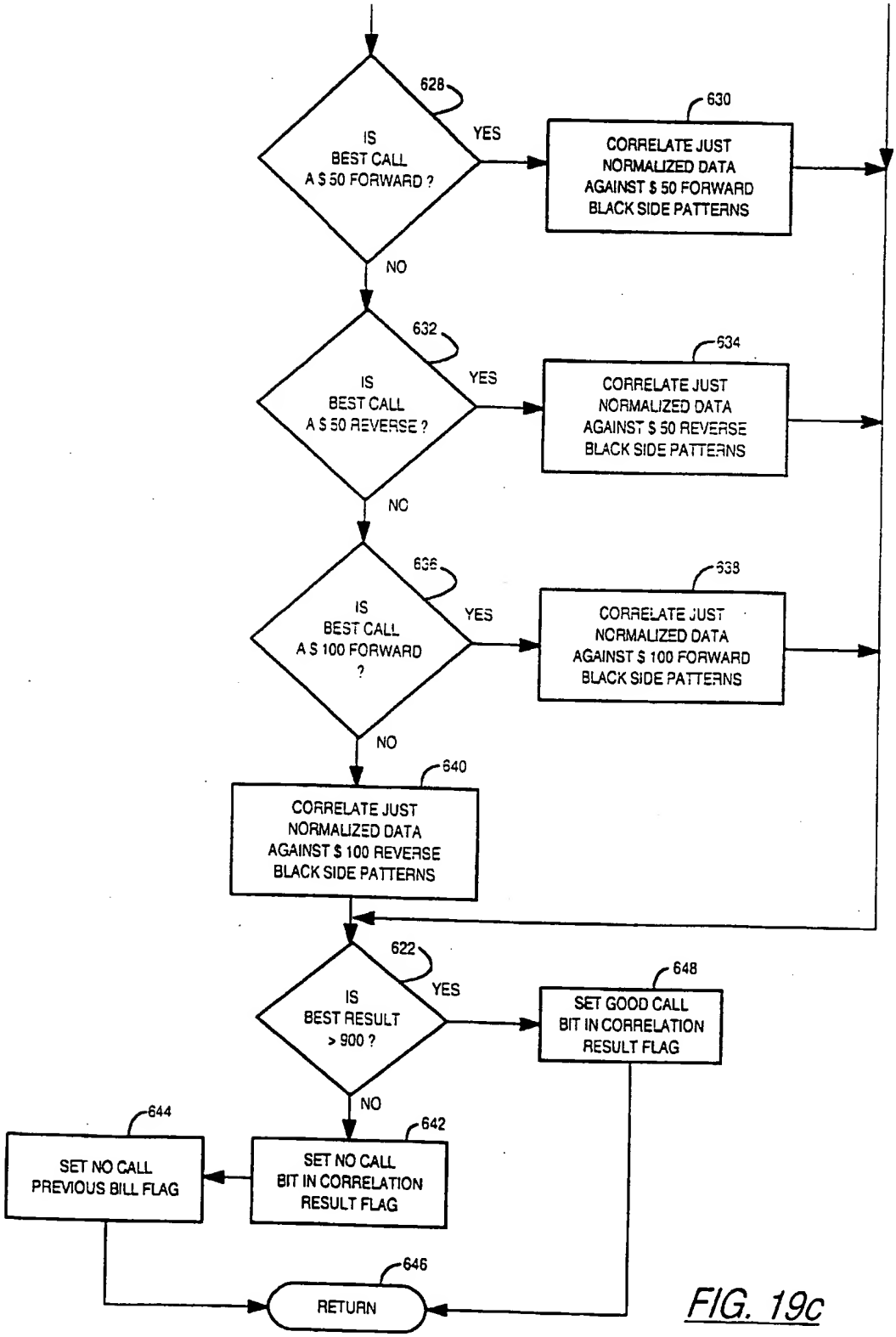
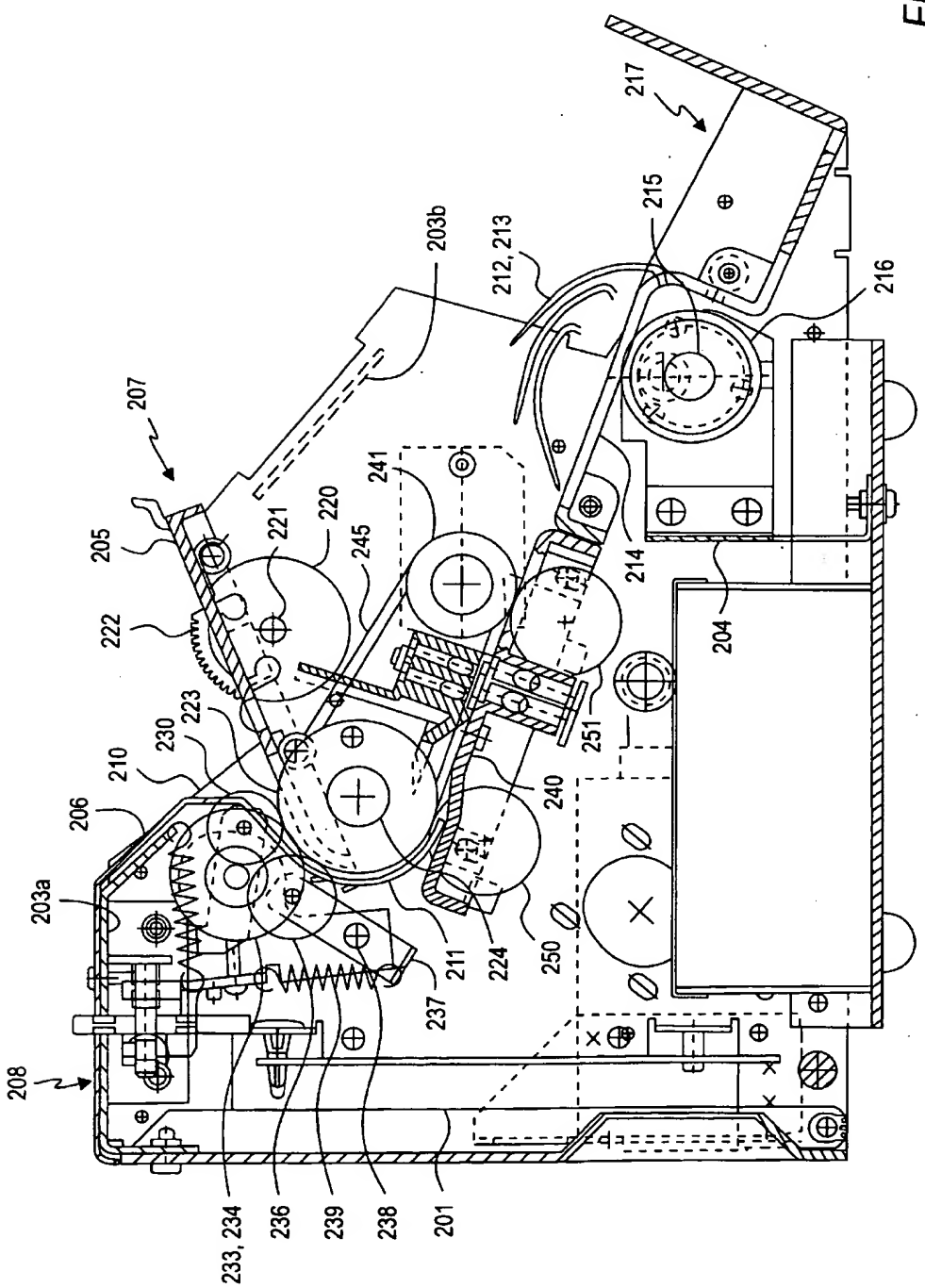

628
IS BEST CALL A $ 50 FORWARD ?
YES
630
CORRELATE JUST NORMALIZED DATA AGAINST $ 50 FORWARD BLACK SIDE PATTERNS
NO
632
IS BEST CALL A $ 50 REVERSE ?
YES
634
CORRELATE JUST NORMALIZED DATA AGAINST $ 50 REVERSE BLACK SIDE PATTERNS
NO
636
IS BEST CALL A $ 100 FORWARD ?
YES
638
CORRELATE JUST NORMALIZED DATA AGAINST $ 100 FORWARD BLACK SIDE PATTERNS
NO
640
CORRELATE JUST NORMALIZED DATA AGAINST $ 100 REVERSE BLACK SIDE PATTERNS
622
IS BEST RESULT > 900 ?
YES
648
SET GOOD CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
NO
642
SET NO CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
644
SET NO CALL PREVIOUS BILL FLAG
646
RETURN

FIG. 19c

FIG. 20a


217
215
203b
212, 213
216
207
241
205
221
220
245
214
222
204
223
230
251
210
240
206
203a
211
224
250
237
208
233, 234
236
239
238
201

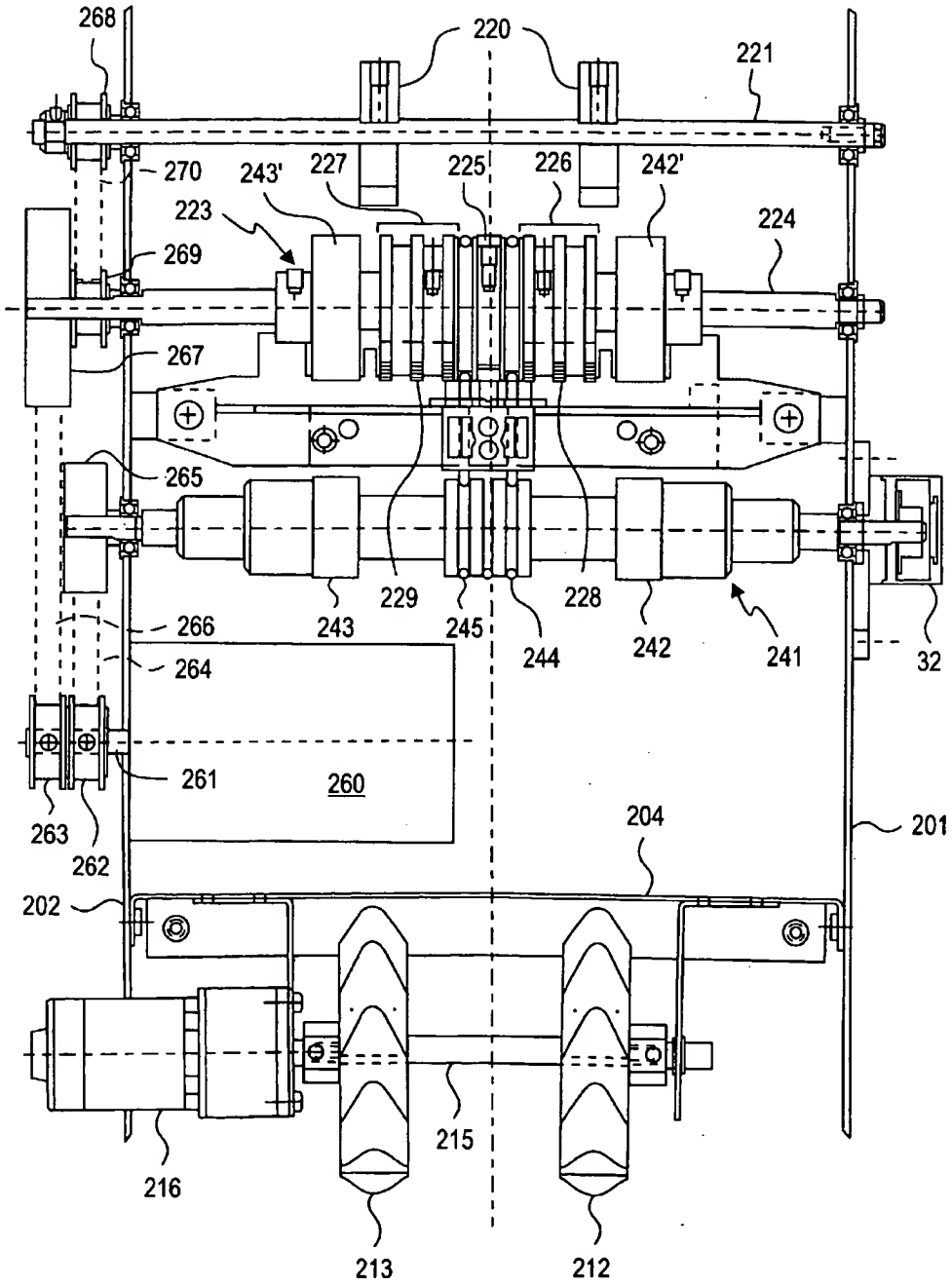

268
220
221
270
243'
227
225
226
242'
223
224
269
267
265
229
228
266
243
245
244
242
241
32
264
261
260
263
262
204
201
202
215
216
213
212

FIG. 20b

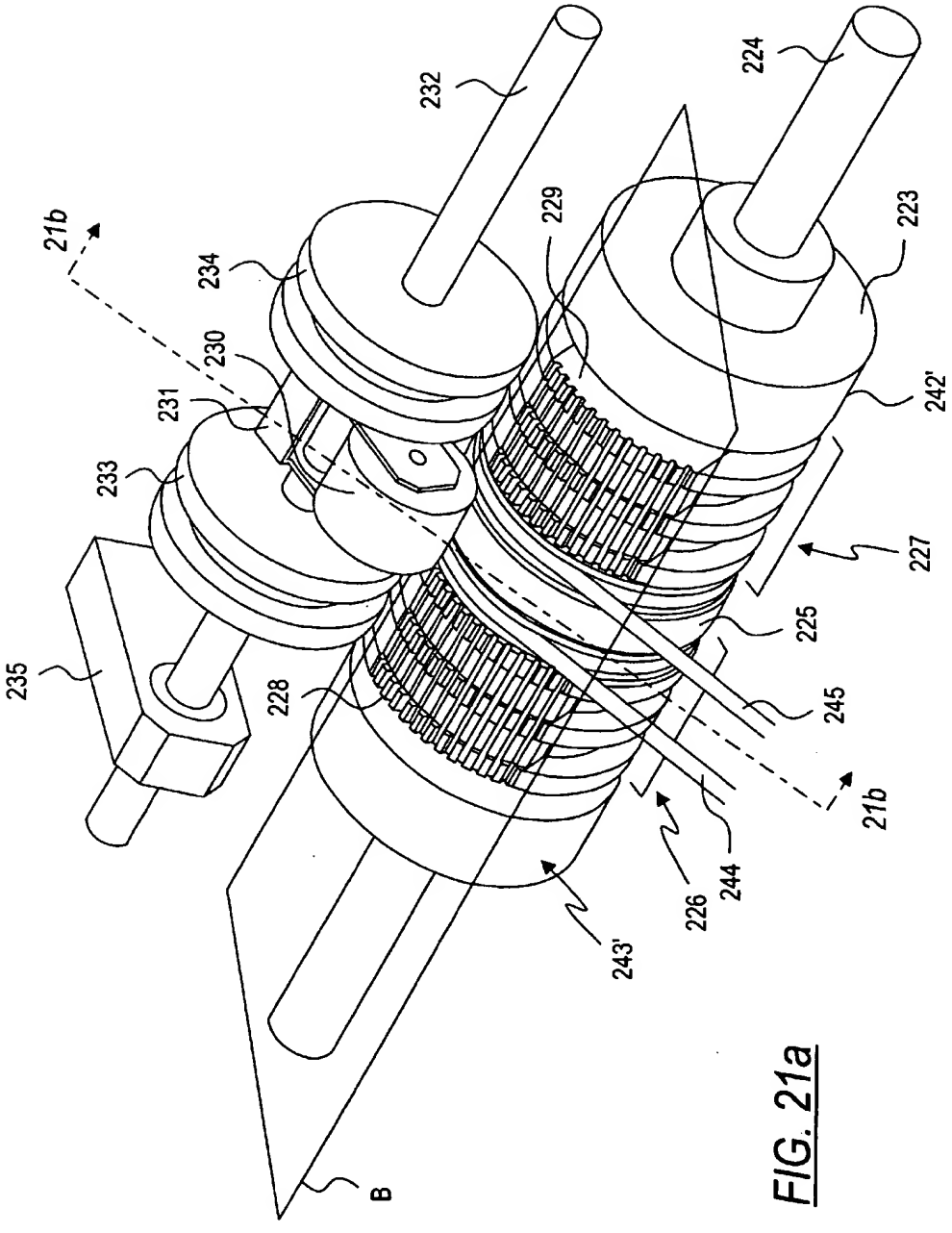

232
224
21b
229
223
234
230
231
242'
233
227
225
235
228
245
21b
226
244
243'
B

FIG. 21a

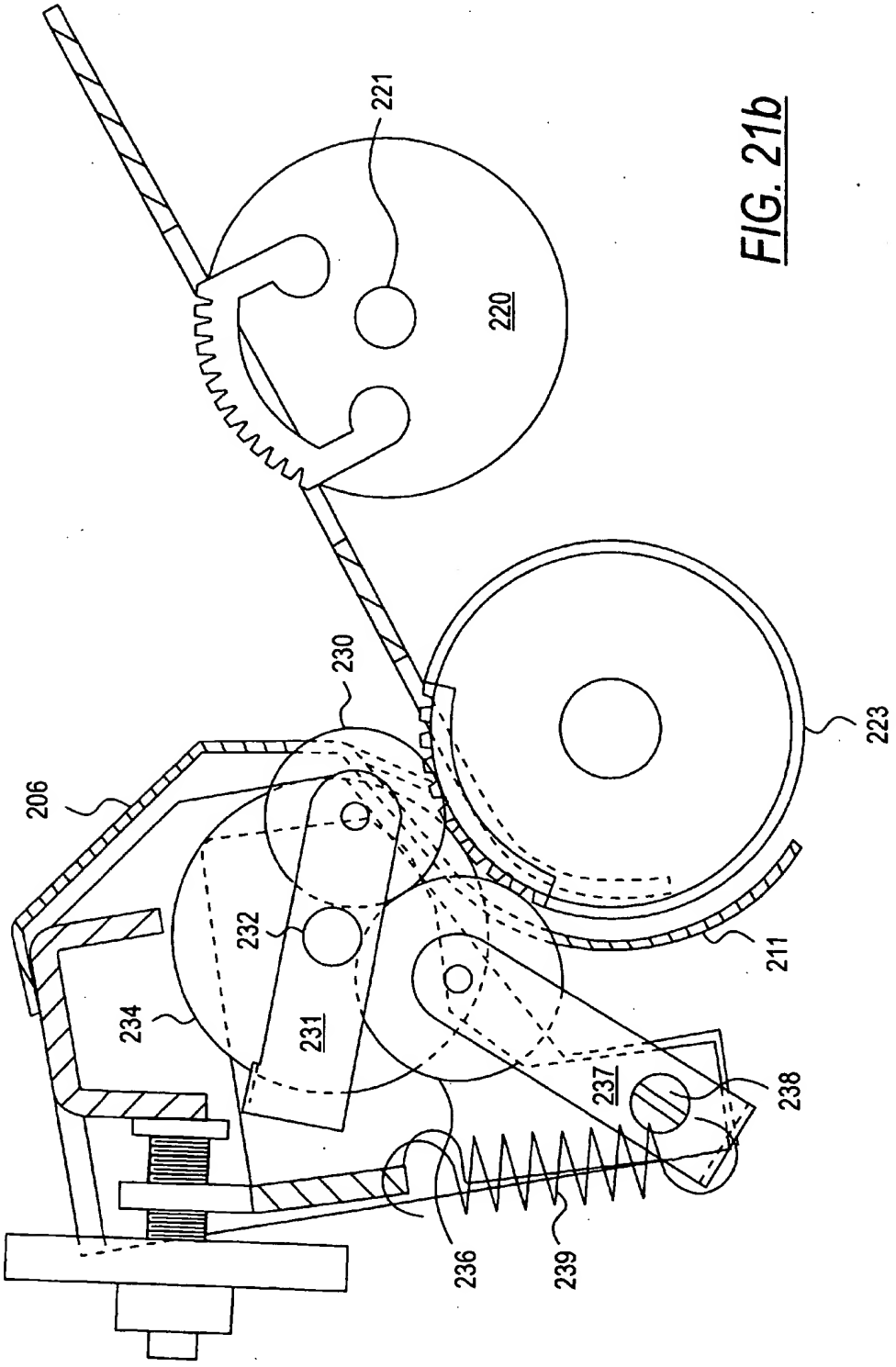
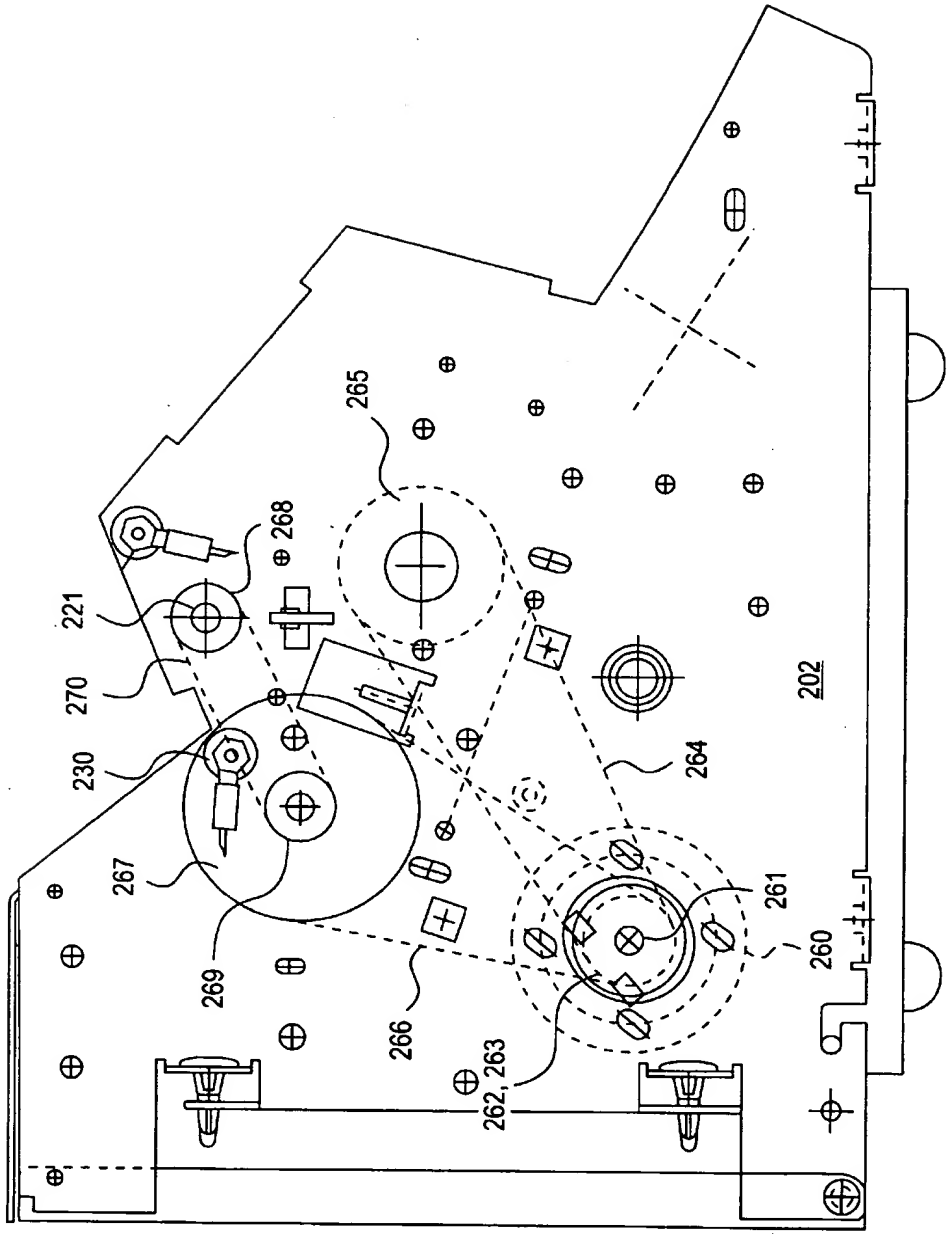


FIG. 21b

FIG. 22



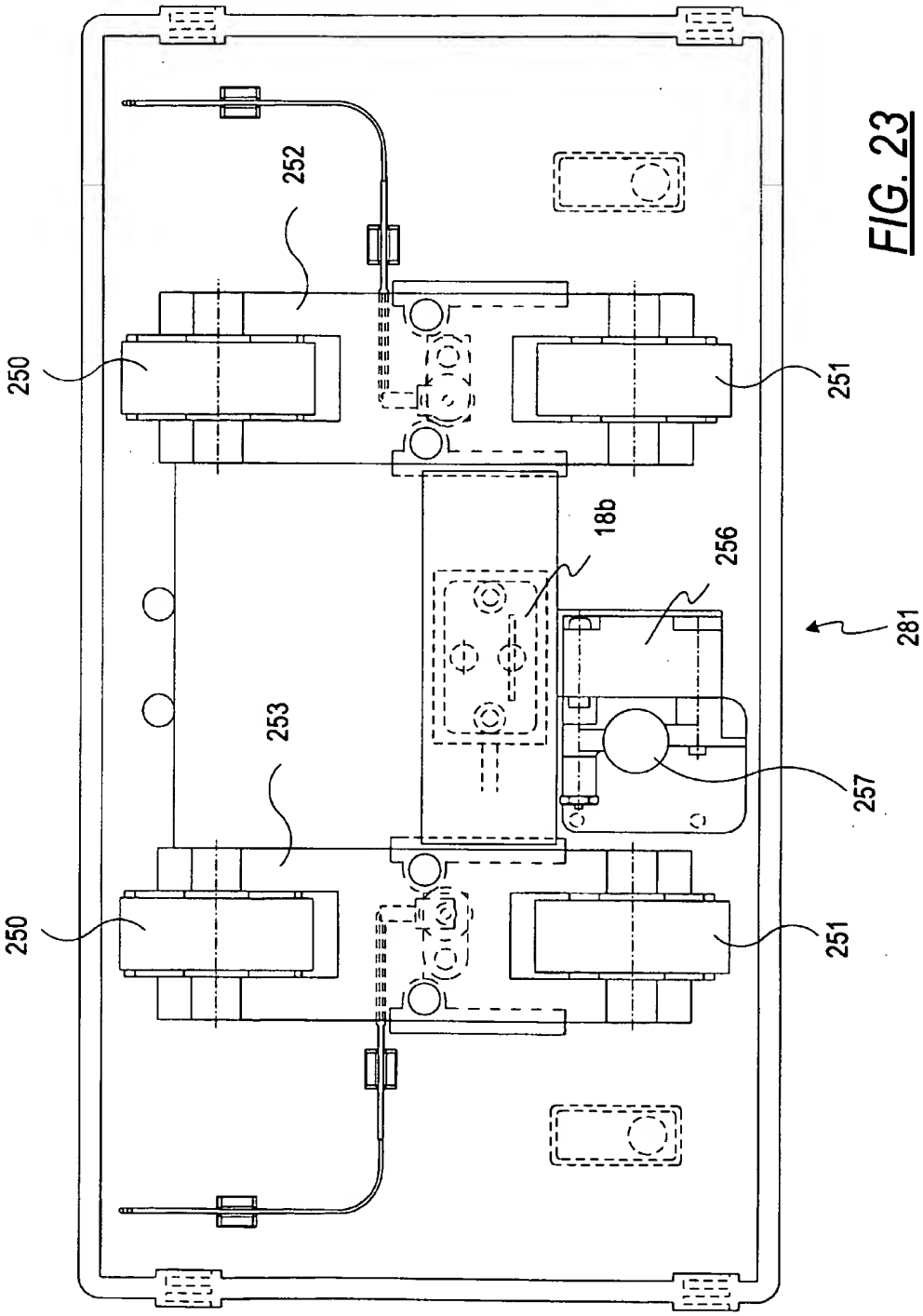


FIG. 23

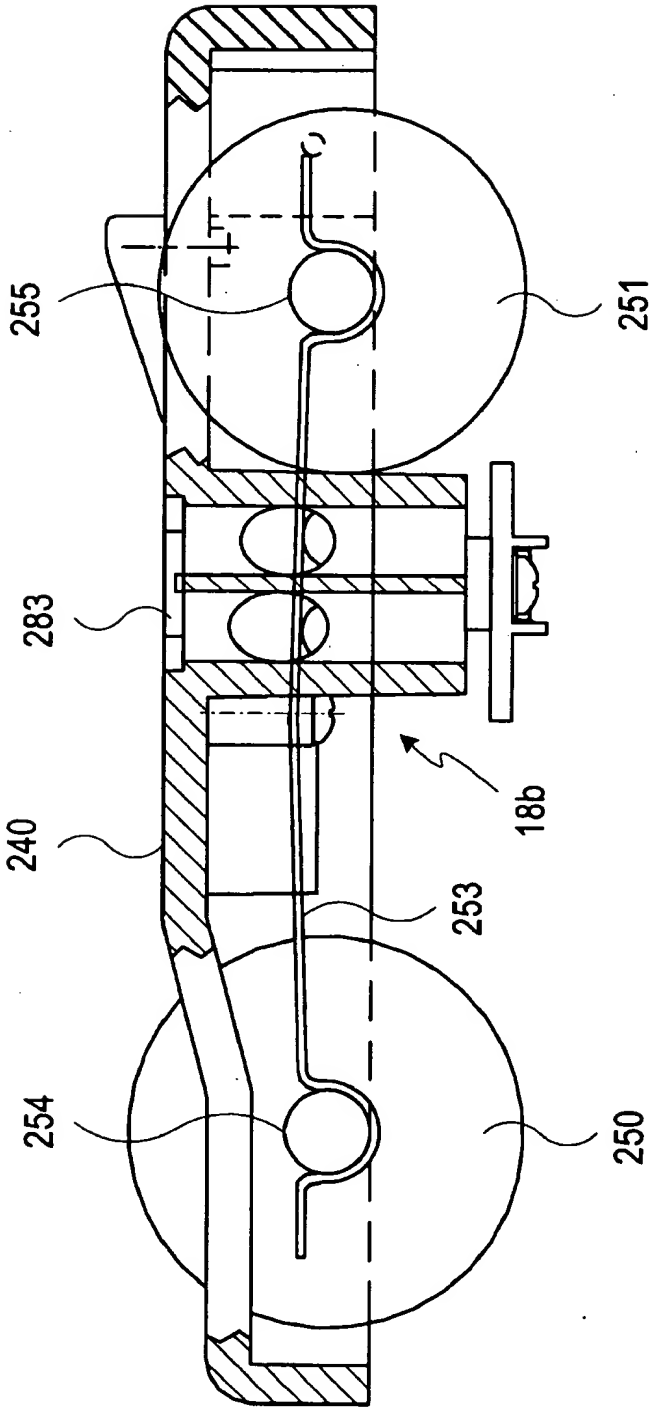


FIG. 24

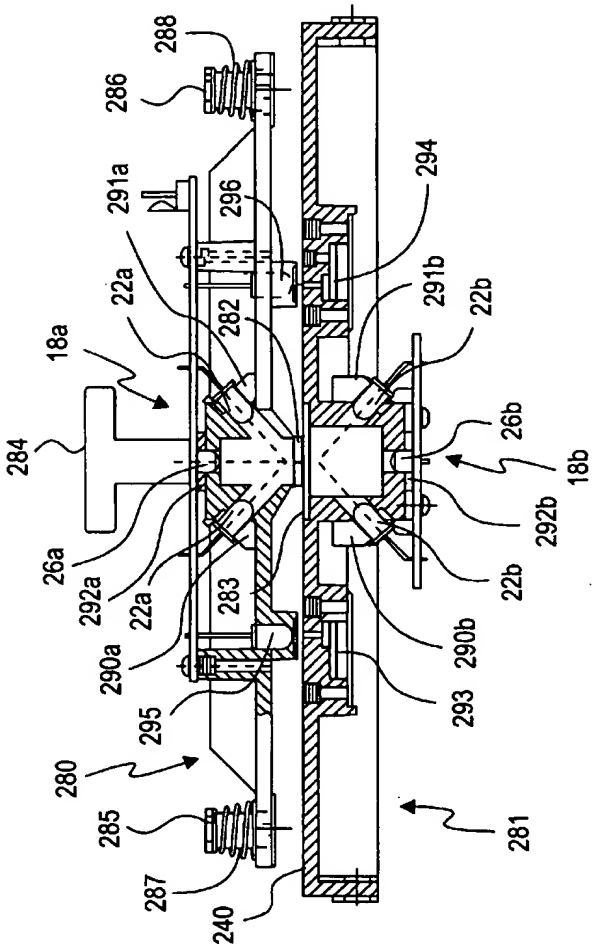

288
286
291a
296
294
22a
282
291b
22b
18a
284
26b
18b
292b
26a
292a
22a
283
22b
290a
290b
295
293
280
285
281
287
240

FIG. 26

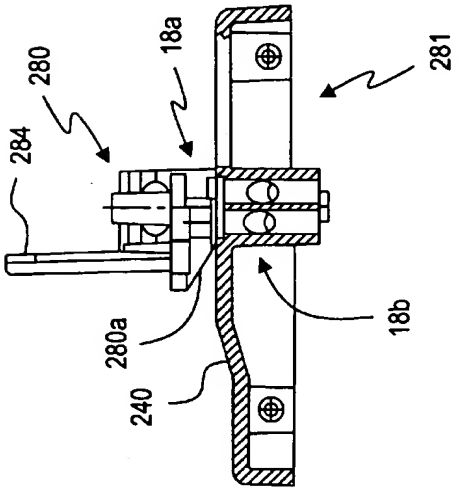

280
18a
281
284
280a
18b
240

FIG. 25

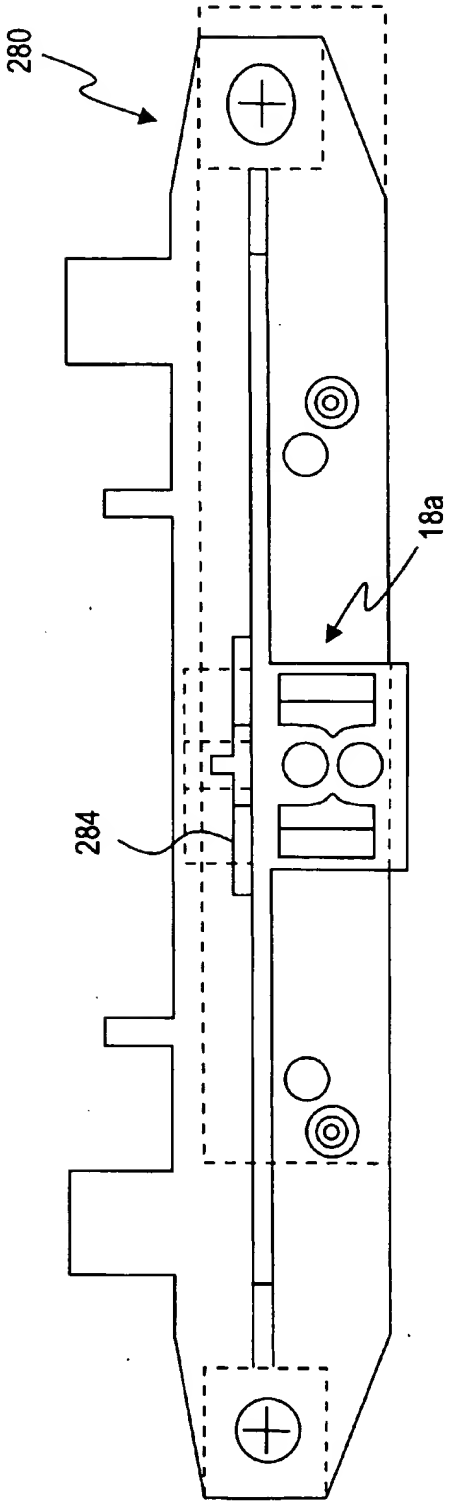


FIG. 27

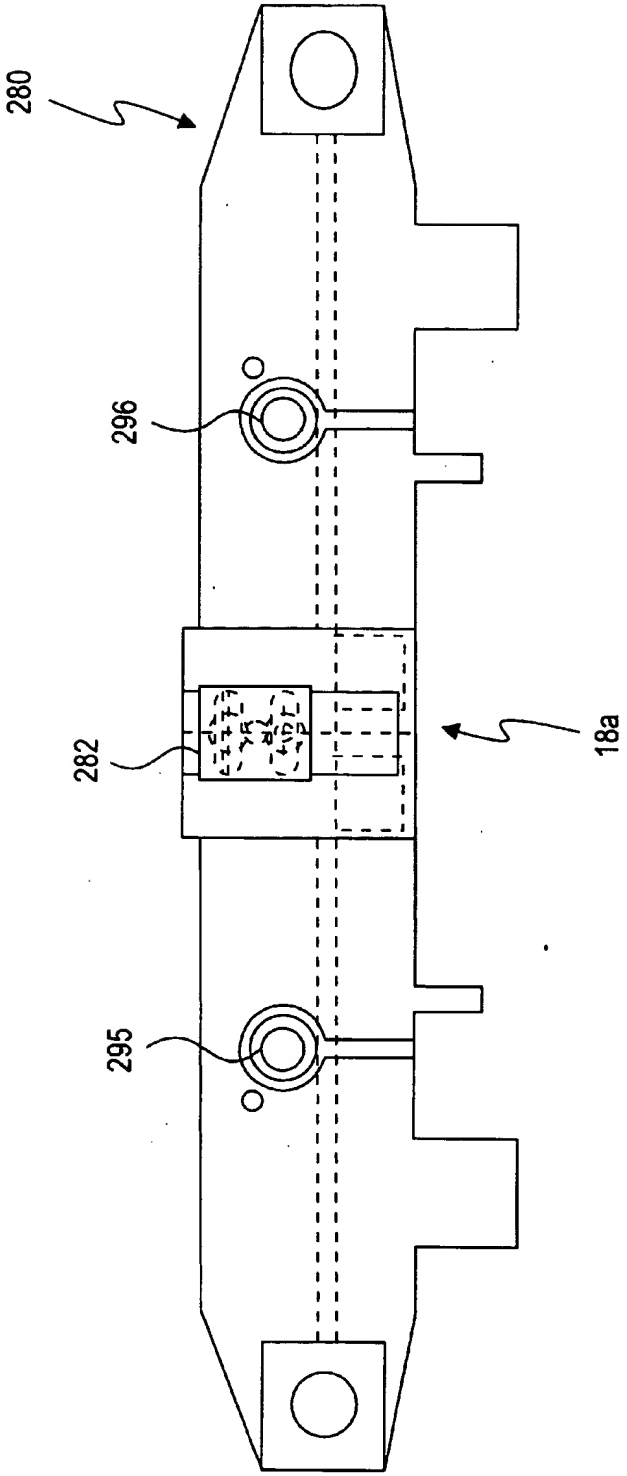


FIG. 28

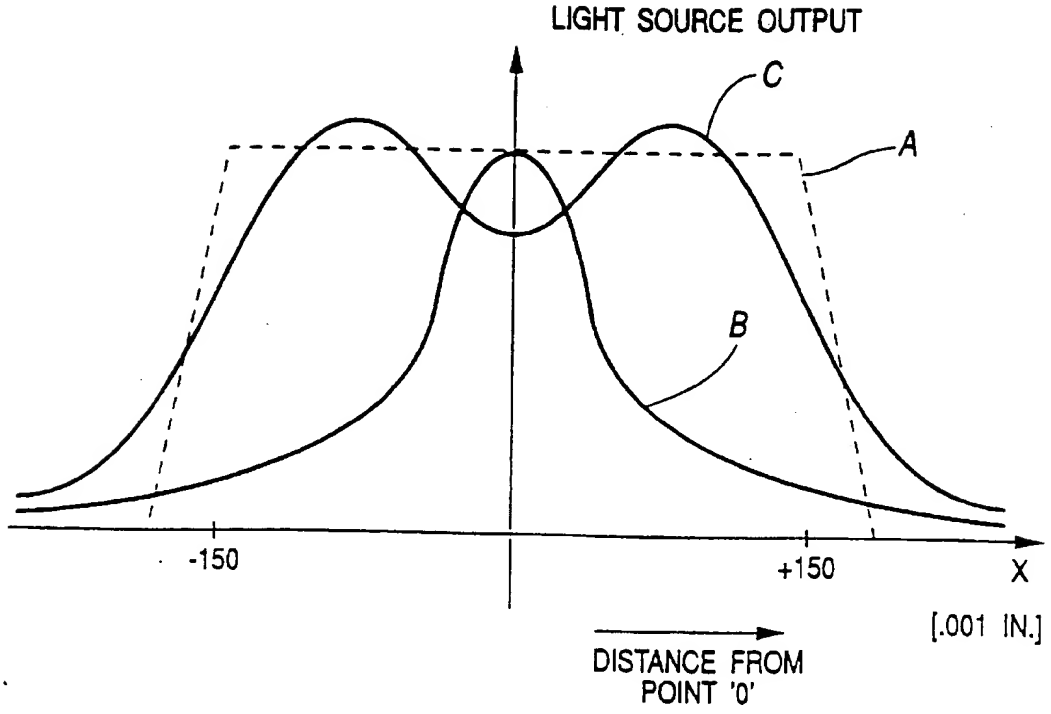


FIG. 29

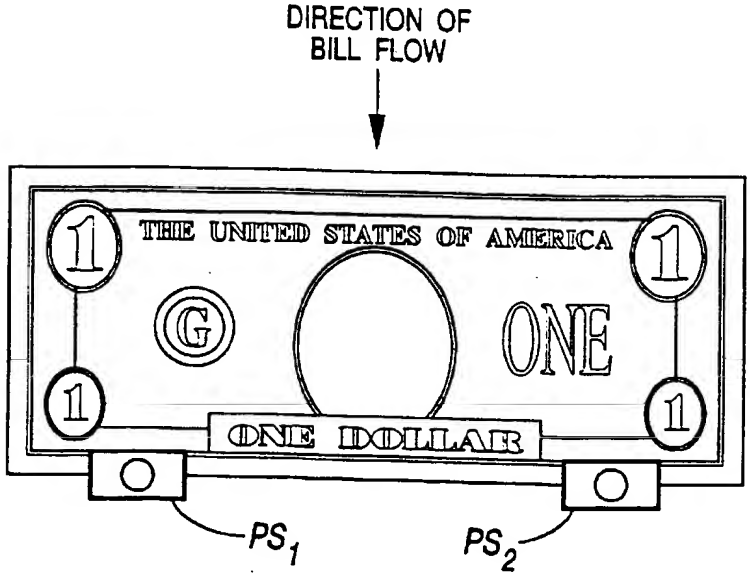


FIG. 30a

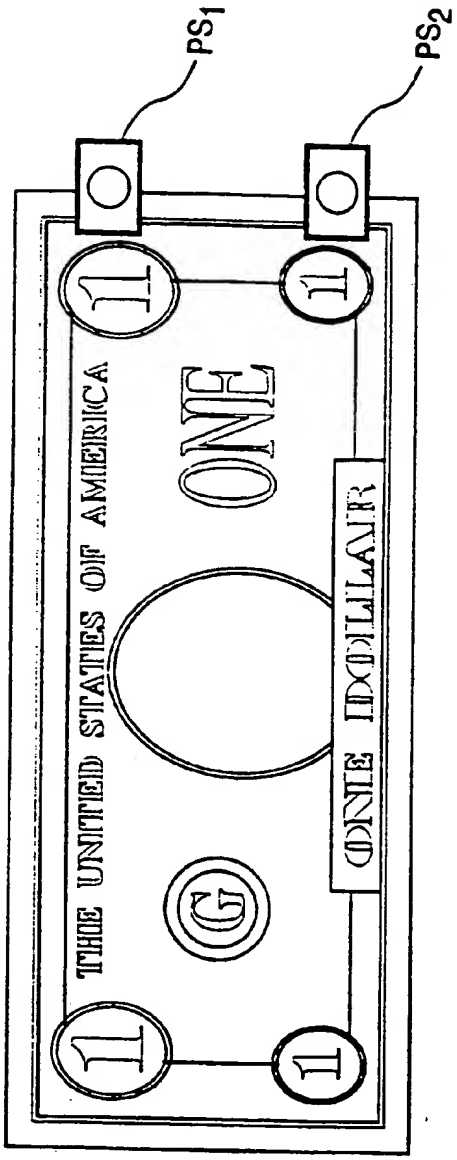

PS1
PS2
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
ONE
ONE DOLLAR
DIRECTION OF BILL FLOW

FIG. 30b

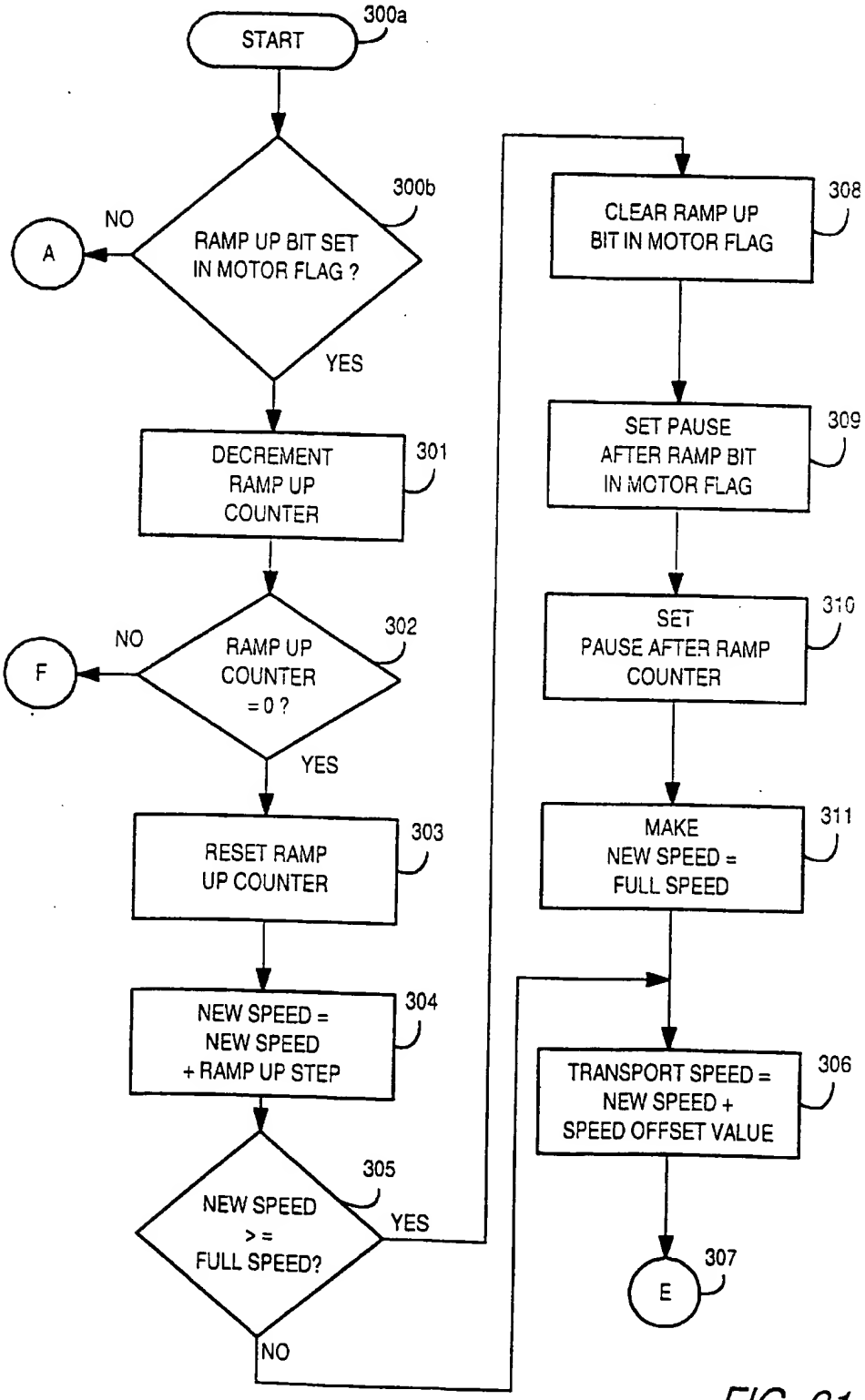

START
300a
RAMP UP BIT SET IN MOTOR FLAG ?
300b
NO
A
YES
DECREMENT RAMP UP COUNTER
301
RAMP UP COUNTER = 0 ?
302
NO
F
YES
RESET RAMP UP COUNTER
303
NEW SPEED = NEW SPEED + RAMP UP STEP
304
NEW SPEED >= FULL SPEED?
305
YES
NO
CLEAR RAMP UP BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
308
SET PAUSE AFTER RAMP BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
309
SET PAUSE AFTER RAMP COUNTER
310
MAKE NEW SPEED = FULL SPEED
311
TRANSPORT SPEED = NEW SPEED + SPEED OFFSET VALUE
306
E
307

FIG. 31

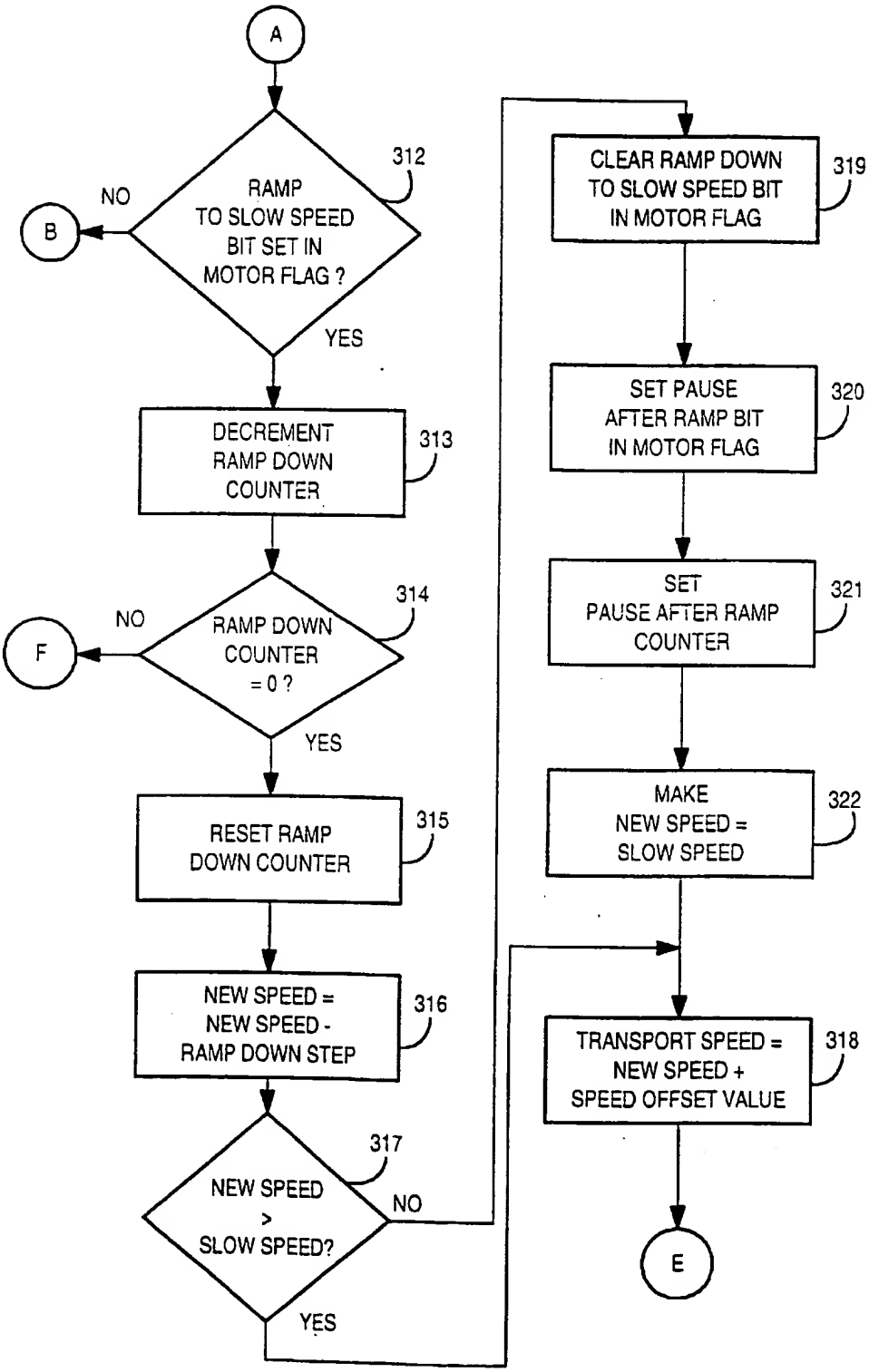

A
RAMP TO SLOW SPEED BIT SET IN MOTOR FLAG ?
312
NO
B
YES
DECREMENT RAMP DOWN COUNTER
313
RAMP DOWN COUNTER = 0 ?
314
NO
F
YES
RESET RAMP DOWN COUNTER
315
NEW SPEED = NEW SPEED - RAMP DOWN STEP
316
NEW SPEED > SLOW SPEED?
317
NO
YES
CLEAR RAMP DOWN TO SLOW SPEED BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
319
SET PAUSE AFTER RAMP BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
320
SET PAUSE AFTER RAMP COUNTER
321
MAKE NEW SPEED = SLOW SPEED
322
TRANSPORT SPEED = NEW SPEED + SPEED OFFSET VALUE
318
E

FIG. 32

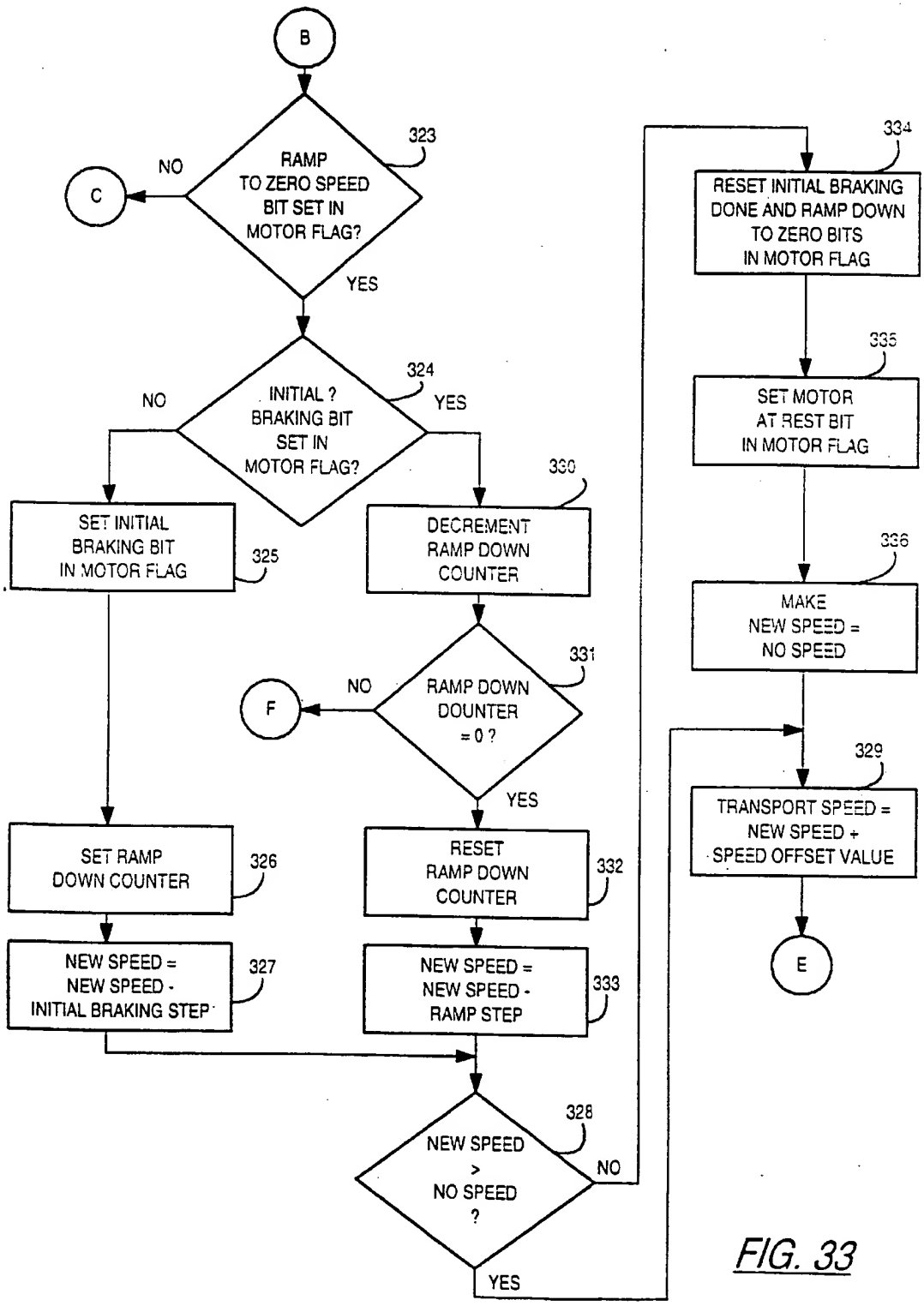

B
RAMP TO ZERO SPEED BIT SET IN MOTOR FLAG?
323
NO
C
YES
INITIAL ? BRAKING BIT SET IN MOTOR FLAG?
324
NO
YES
SET INITIAL BRAKING BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
325
DECREMENT RAMP DOWN COUNTER
330
RAMP DOWN DOUNTER = 0 ?
331
NO
F
YES
SET RAMP DOWN COUNTER
326
RESET RAMP DOWN COUNTER
332
NEW SPEED = NEW SPEED - INITIAL BRAKING STEP
327
NEW SPEED = NEW SPEED - RAMP STEP
333
NEW SPEED > NO SPEED ?
328
NO
YES
RESET INITIAL BRAKING DONE AND RAMP DOWN TO ZERO BITS IN MOTOR FLAG
334
SET MOTOR AT REST BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
335
MAKE NEW SPEED = NO SPEED
336
TRANSPORT SPEED = NEW SPEED + SPEED OFFSET VALUE
329
E

FIG. 33

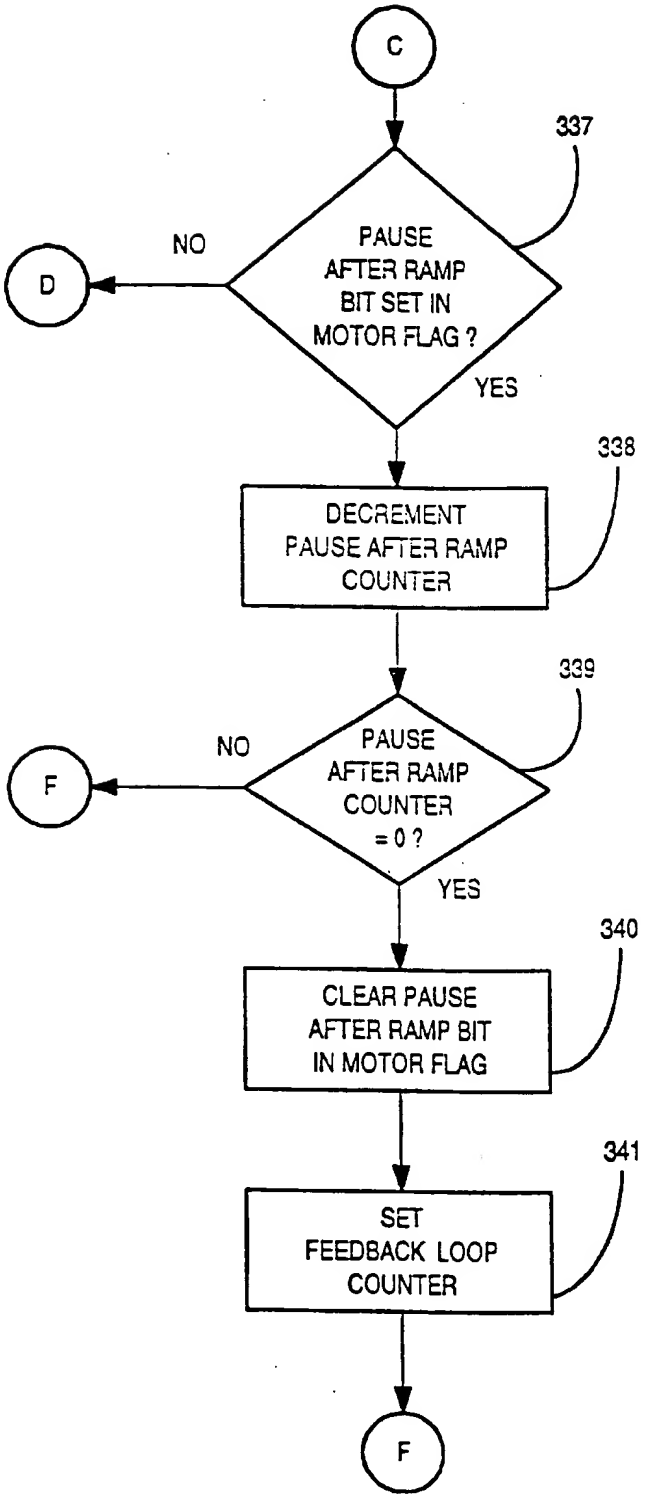

C
337
PAUSE AFTER RAMP BIT SET IN MOTOR FLAG ?
NO
D
YES
338
DECREMENT PAUSE AFTER RAMP COUNTER
339
PAUSE AFTER RAMP COUNTER = 0 ?
NO
F
YES
340
CLEAR PAUSE AFTER RAMP BIT IN MOTOR FLAG
341
SET FEEDBACK LOOP COUNTER
F

FIG. 34

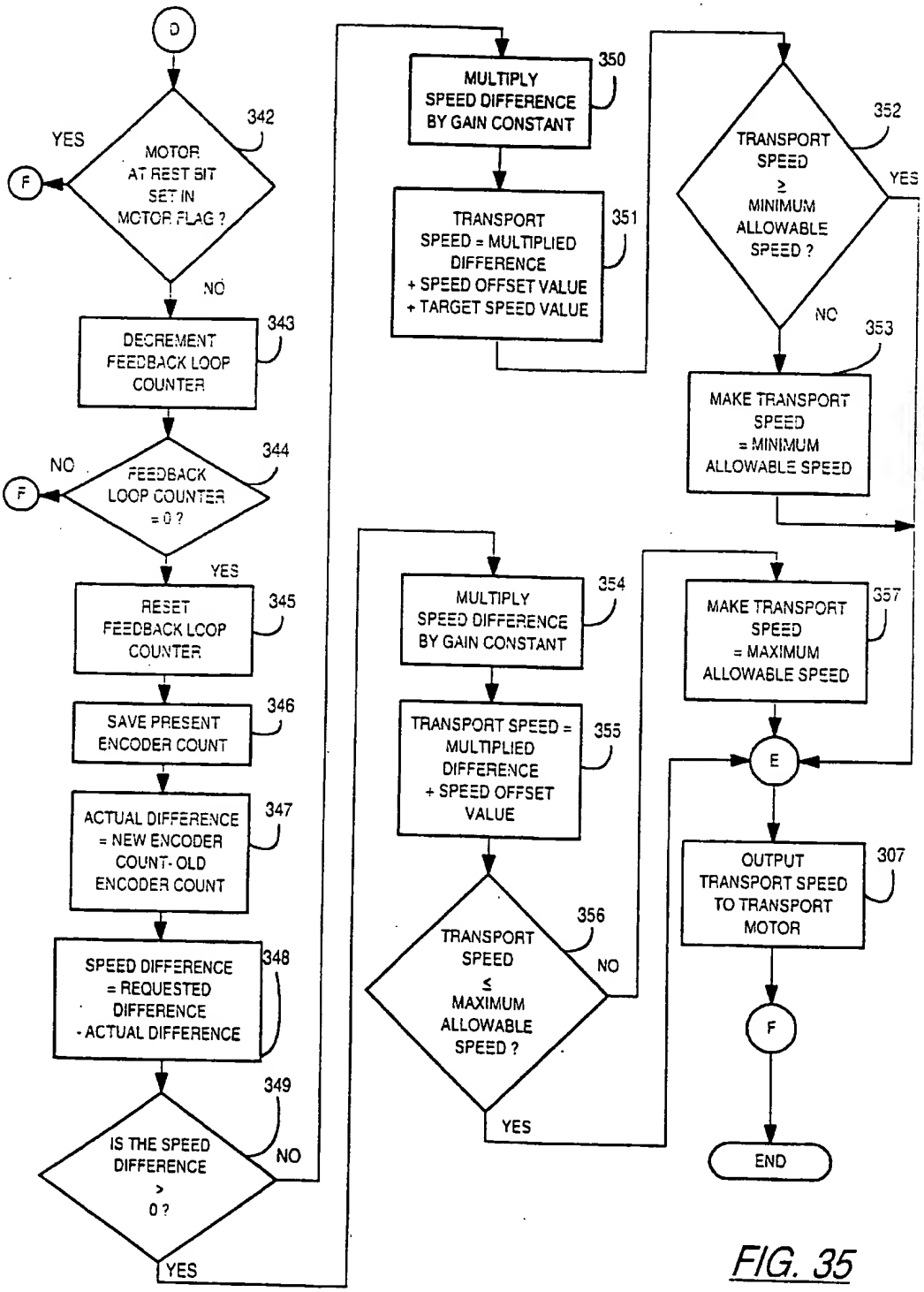

D
342
YES
MOTOR AT REST BIT SET IN MOTOR FLAG ?
F
NO
343
DECREMENT FEEDBACK LOOP COUNTER
344
NO
FEEDBACK LOOP COUNTER = 0 ?
F
YES
345
RESET FEEDBACK LOOP COUNTER
346
SAVE PRESENT ENCODER COUNT
347
ACTUAL DIFFERENCE = NEW ENCODER COUNT - OLD ENCODER COUNT
348
SPEED DIFFERENCE = REQUESTED DIFFERENCE - ACTUAL DIFFERENCE
349
IS THE SPEED DIFFERENCE > 0 ?
NO
YES
350
MULTIPLY SPEED DIFFERENCE BY GAIN CONSTANT
351
TRANSPORT SPEED = MULTIPLIED DIFFERENCE + SPEED OFFSET VALUE + TARGET SPEED VALUE
352
TRANSPORT SPEED ≥ MINIMUM ALLOWABLE SPEED ?
YES
NO
353
MAKE TRANSPORT SPEED = MINIMUM ALLOWABLE SPEED
354
MULTIPLY SPEED DIFFERENCE BY GAIN CONSTANT
355
TRANSPORT SPEED = MULTIPLIED DIFFERENCE + SPEED OFFSET VALUE
356
TRANSPORT SPEED ≤ MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SPEED ?
NO
YES
357
MAKE TRANSPORT SPEED = MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SPEED
E
307
OUTPUT TRANSPORT SPEED TO TRANSPORT MOTOR
F
END

FIG. 35

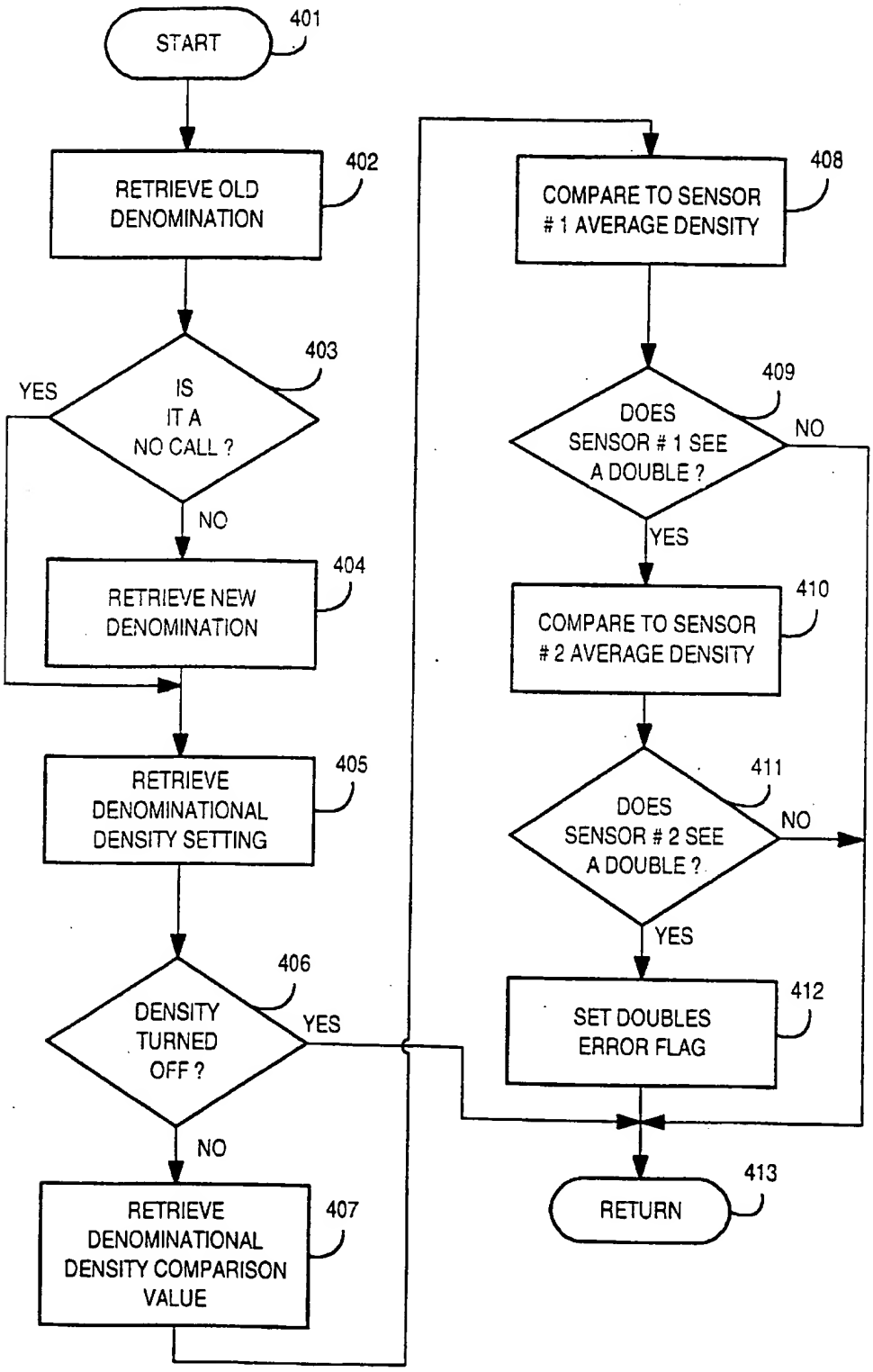

START
401
RETRIEVE OLD DENOMINATION
402
IS IT A NO CALL ?
403
YES
NO
RETRIEVE NEW DENOMINATION
404
RETRIEVE DENOMINATIONAL DENSITY SETTING
405
DENSITY TURNED OFF ?
406
YES
NO
RETRIEVE DENOMINATIONAL DENSITY COMPARISON VALUE
407
COMPARE TO SENSOR # 1 AVERAGE DENSITY
408
DOES SENSOR # 1 SEE A DOUBLE ?
409
NO
YES
COMPARE TO SENSOR # 2 AVERAGE DENSITY
410
DOES SENSOR # 2 SEE A DOUBLE ?
411
NO
YES
SET DOUBLES ERROR FLAG
412
RETURN
413

FIG. 36

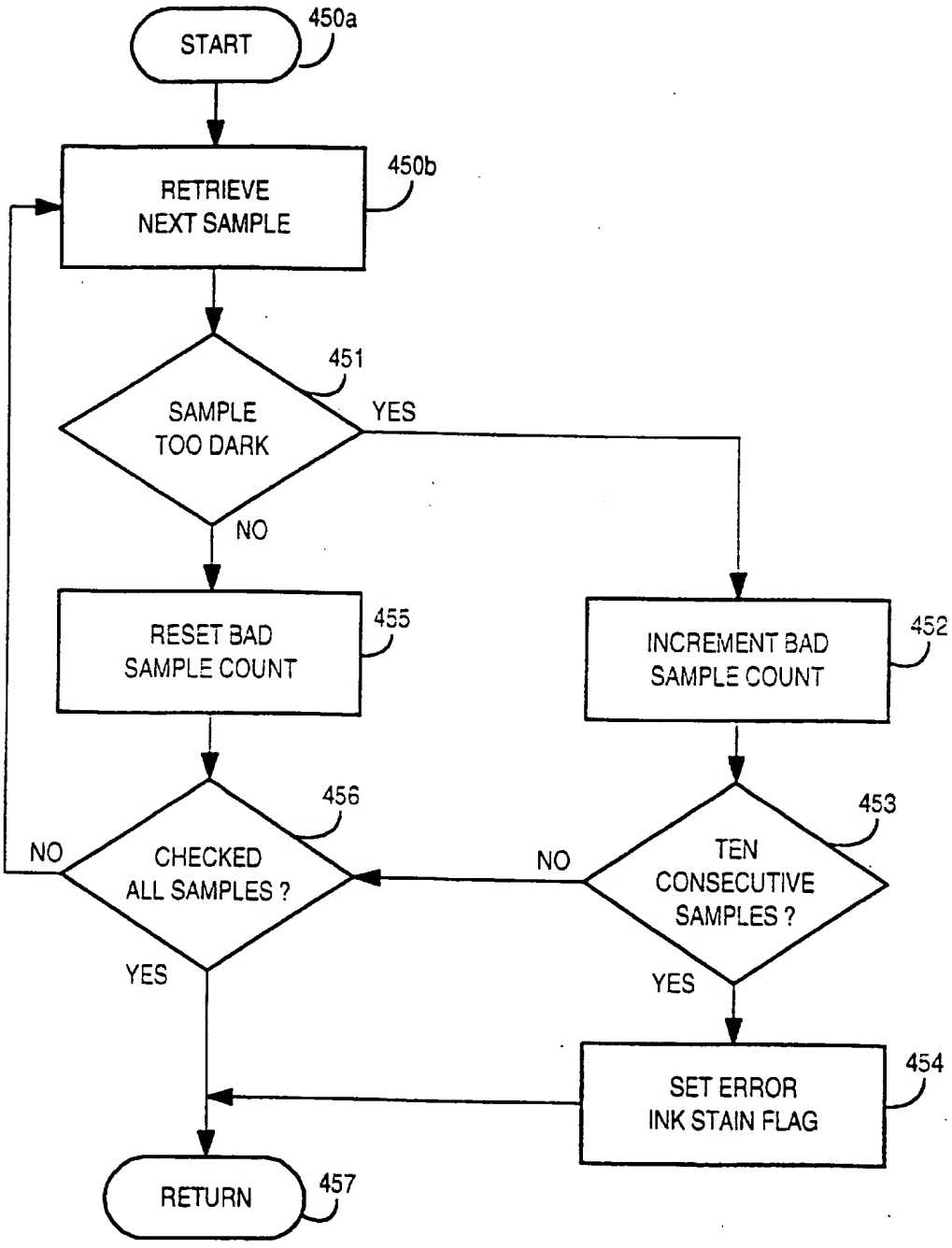

START
450a
RETRIEVE NEXT SAMPLE
450b
SAMPLE TOO DARK
451
YES
NO
RESET BAD SAMPLE COUNT
455
INCREMENT BAD SAMPLE COUNT
452
CHECKED ALL SAMPLES ?
456
NO
YES
TEN CONSECUTIVE SAMPLES ?
453
NO
YES
SET ERROR INK STAIN FLAG
454
RETURN
457

FIG. 37

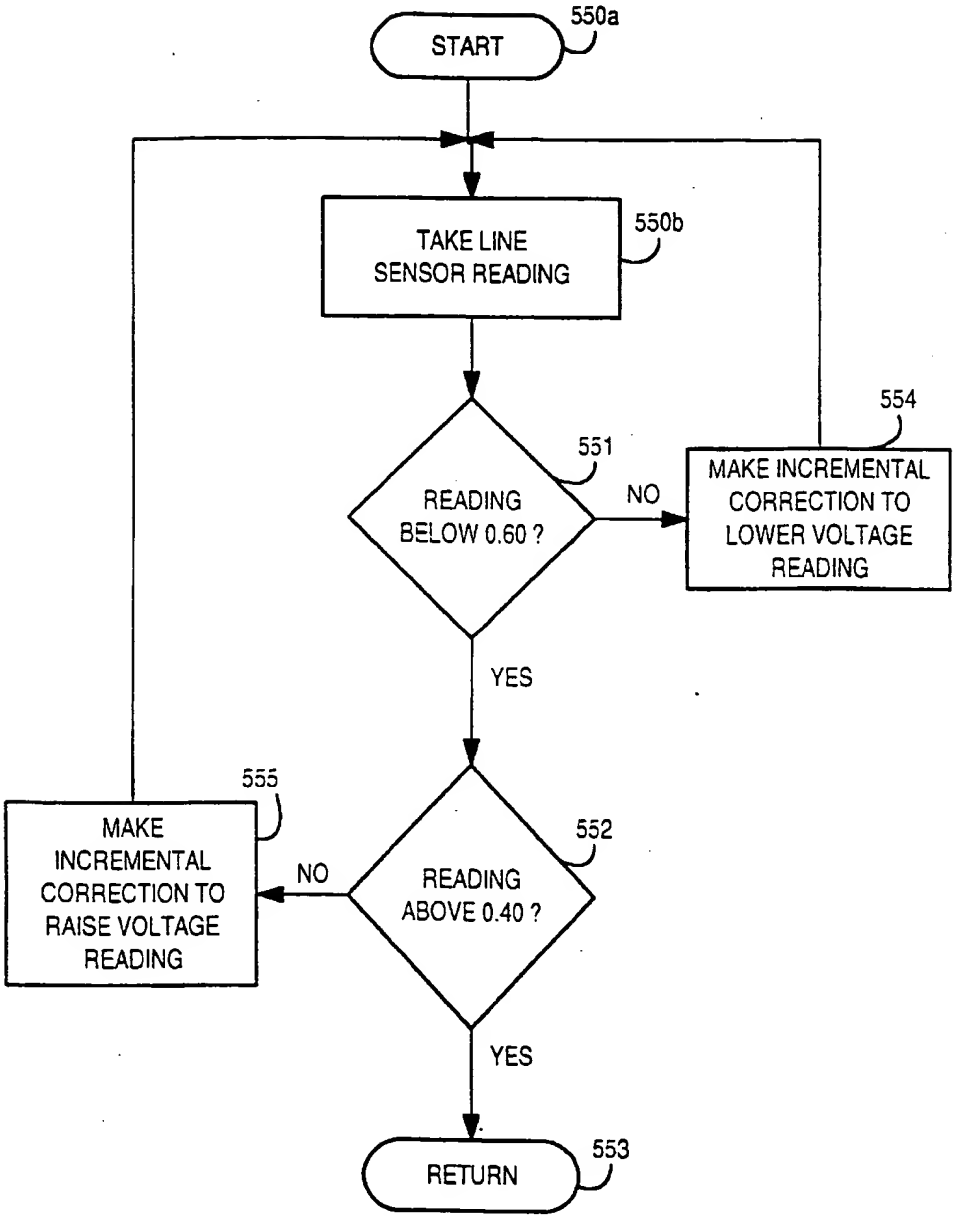

START
550a
TAKE LINE SENSOR READING
550b
READING BELOW 0.60 ?
551
NO
MAKE INCREMENTAL CORRECTION TO LOWER VOLTAGE READING
554
YES
READING ABOVE 0.40 ?
552
NO
MAKE INCREMENTAL CORRECTION TO RAISE VOLTAGE READING
555
YES
RETURN
553

FIG.38

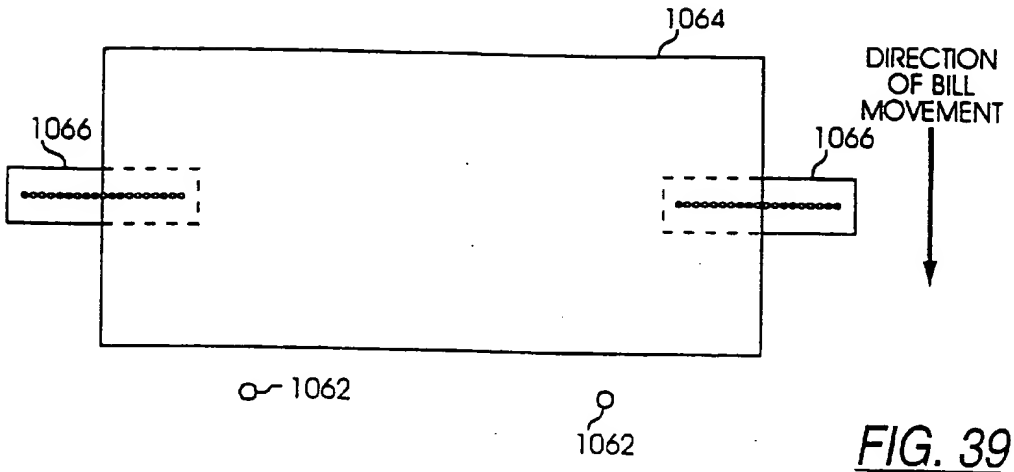


FIG. 39

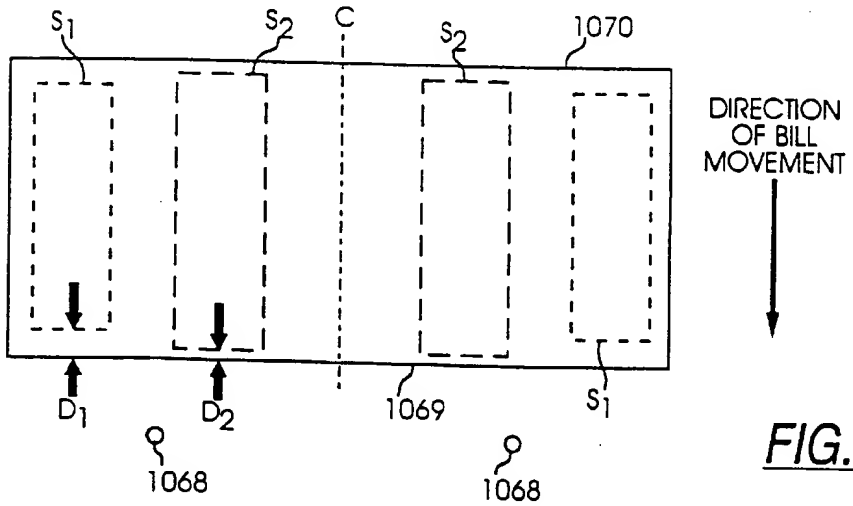


FIG. 40

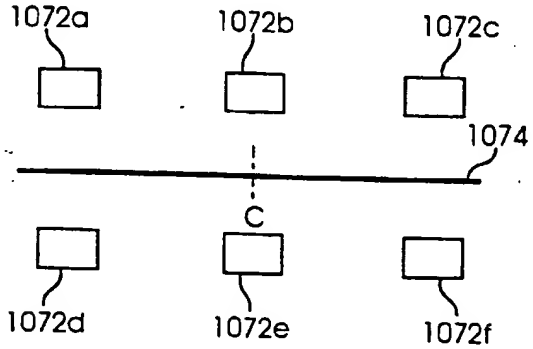


FIG. 42

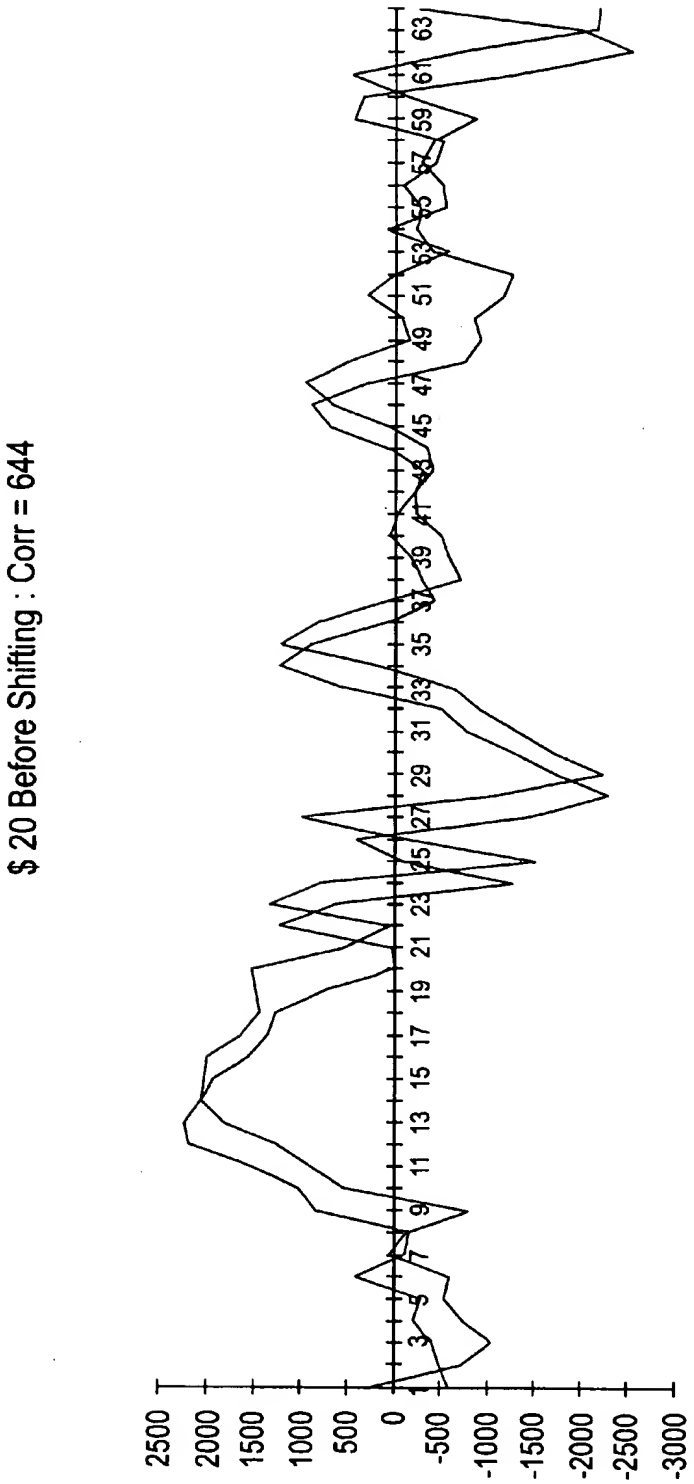

$ 20 Before Shifting : Corr = 644
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
-1000
-1500
-2000
-2500
-3000
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
17
19
21
23
25
27
29
31
33
35
37
39
41
43
45
47
49
51
53
55
57
59
61
63

FIG. 41a

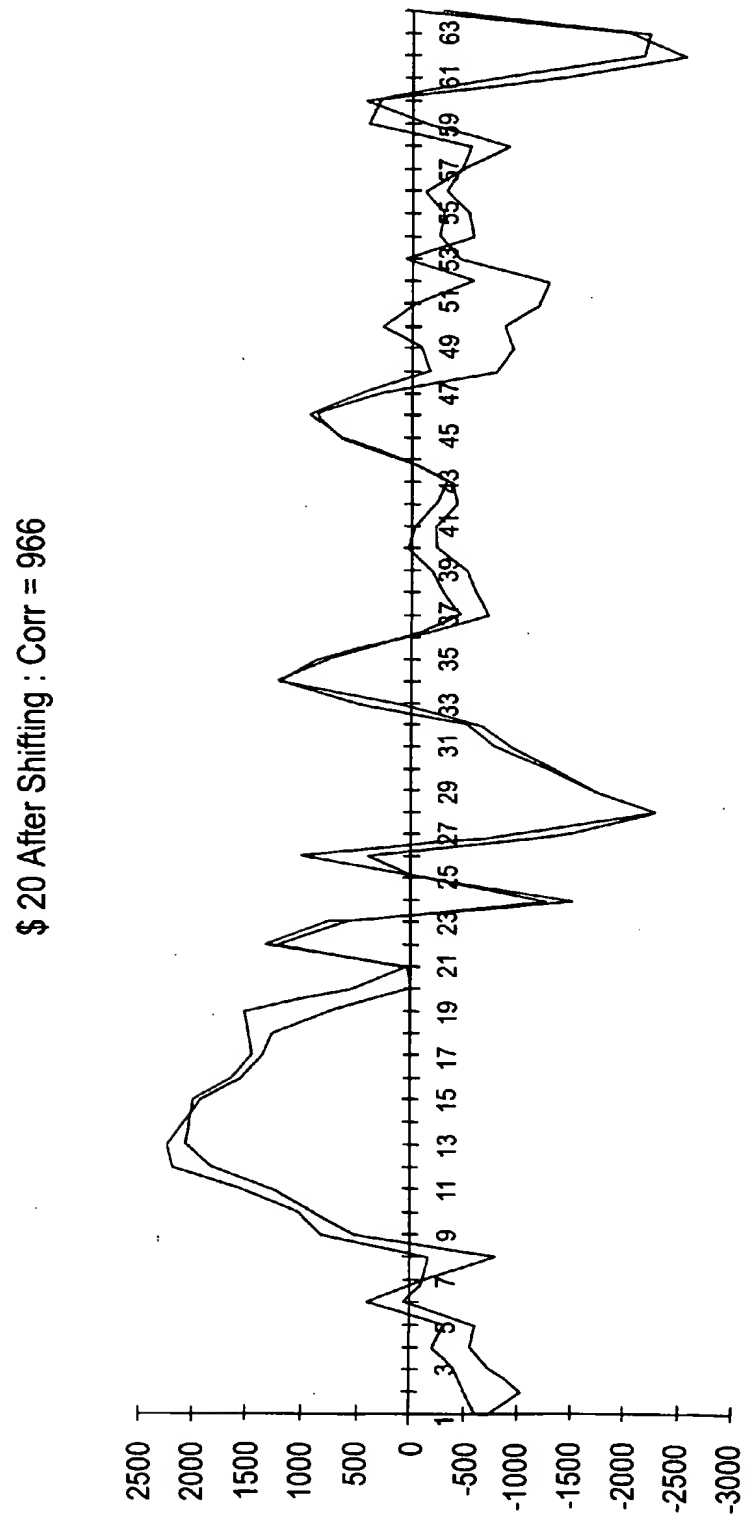

$ 20 After Shifting : Corr = 966
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
-500
-1000
-1500
-2000
-2500
-3000
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
17
19
21
23
25
27
29
31
33
35
37
39
41
43
45
47
49
51
53
55
57
59
61
63

FIG. 41b

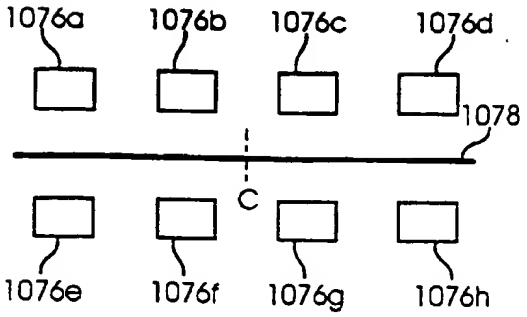


FIG. 43

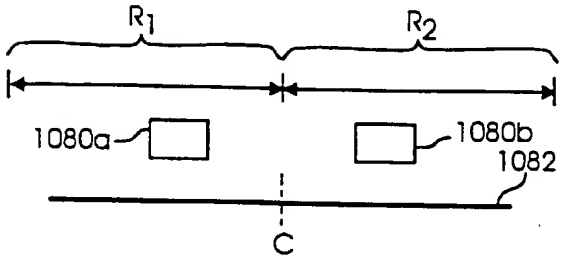


FIG. 44

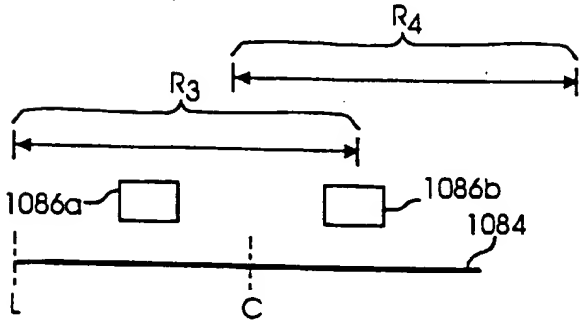


FIG. 45

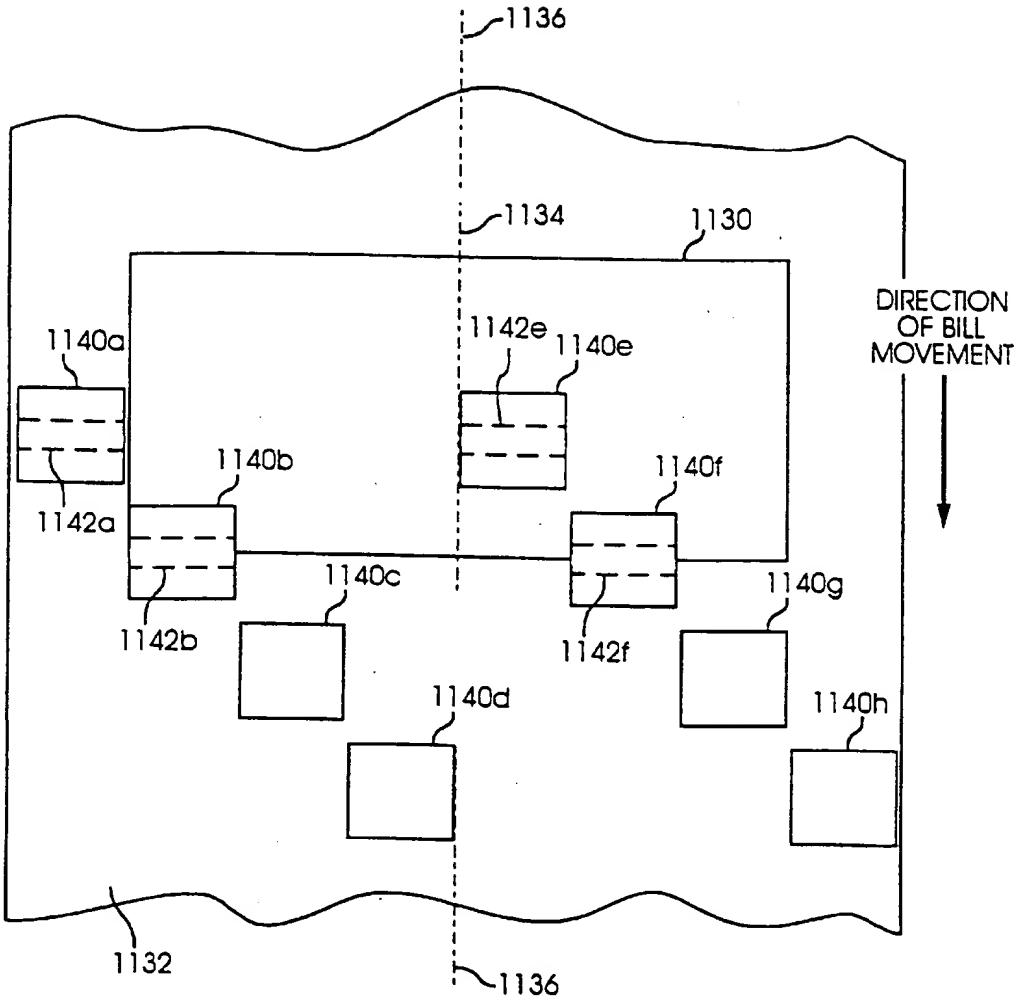

1136
1134
1130
DIRECTION OF BILL MOVEMENT
1140a
1142e
1140e
1140b
1140f
1142a
1140c
1140g
1142b
1142f
1140d
1140h
1132
1136

FIG. 46

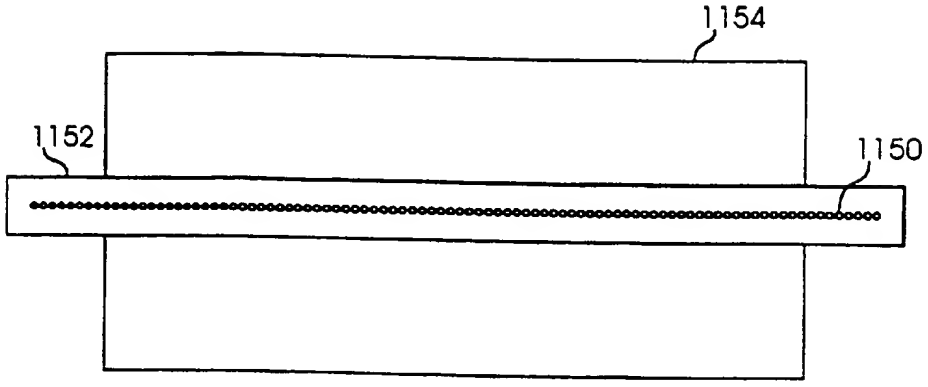


FIG. 47a

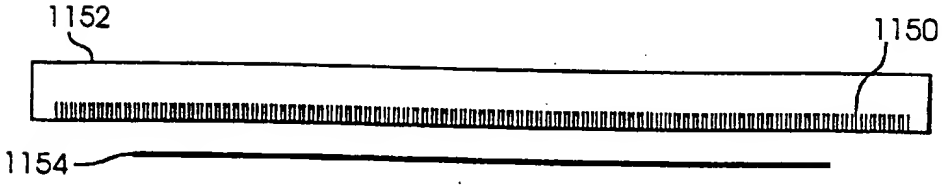


FIG. 47b

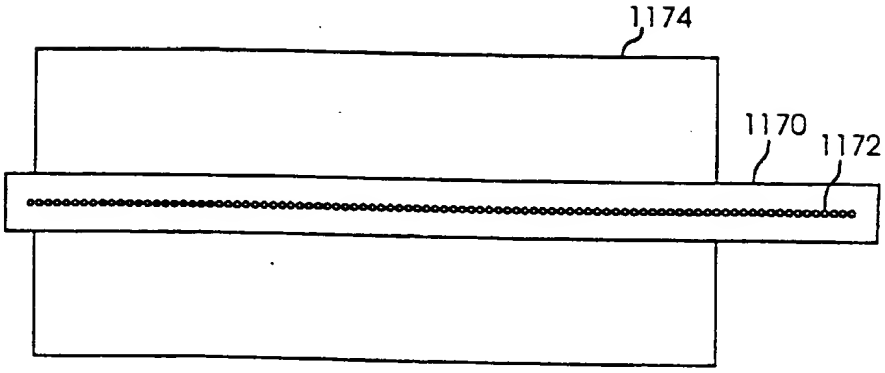

1174
1170
1172

FIG. 48

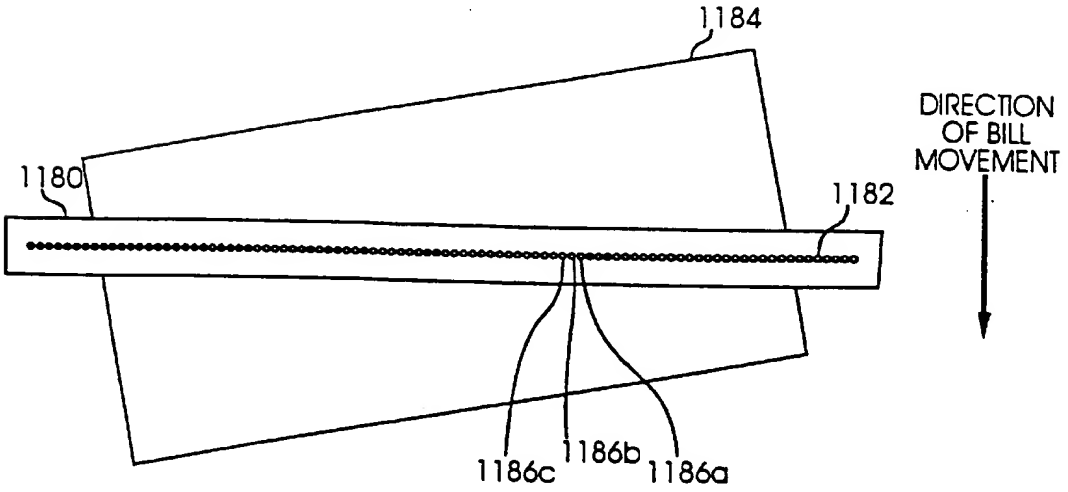

1184
1180
1182
DIRECTION OF BILL MOVEMENT
1186c
1186b
1186a

FIG. 49

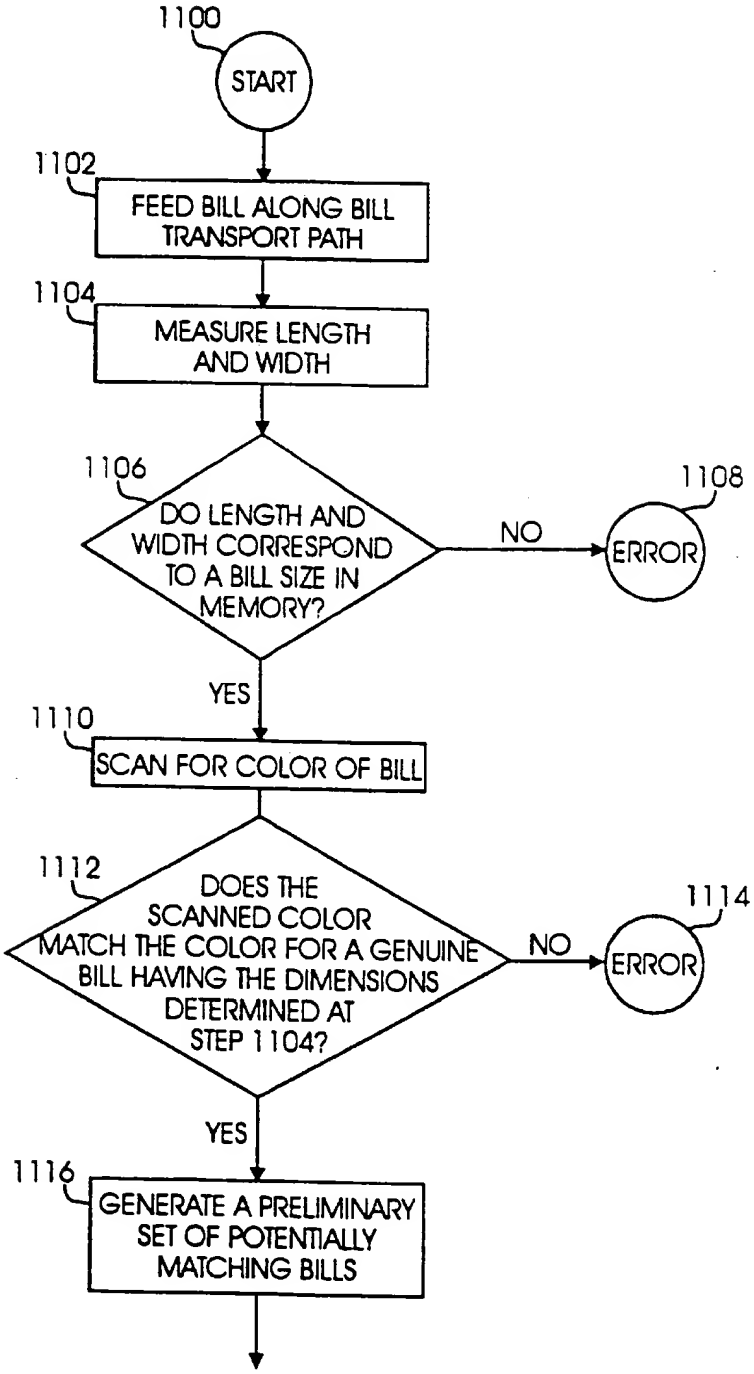

1100
START
1102
FEED BILL ALONG BILL TRANSPORT PATH
1104
MEASURE LENGTH AND WIDTH
1106
DO LENGTH AND WIDTH CORRESPOND TO A BILL SIZE IN MEMORY?
NO
1108
ERROR
YES
1110
SCAN FOR COLOR OF BILL
1112
DOES THE SCANNED COLOR MATCH THE COLOR FOR A GENUINE BILL HAVING THE DIMENSIONS DETERMINED AT STEP 1104?
NO
1114
ERROR
YES
1116
GENERATE A PRELIMINARY SET OF POTENTIALLY MATCHING BILLS

FIG. 50a

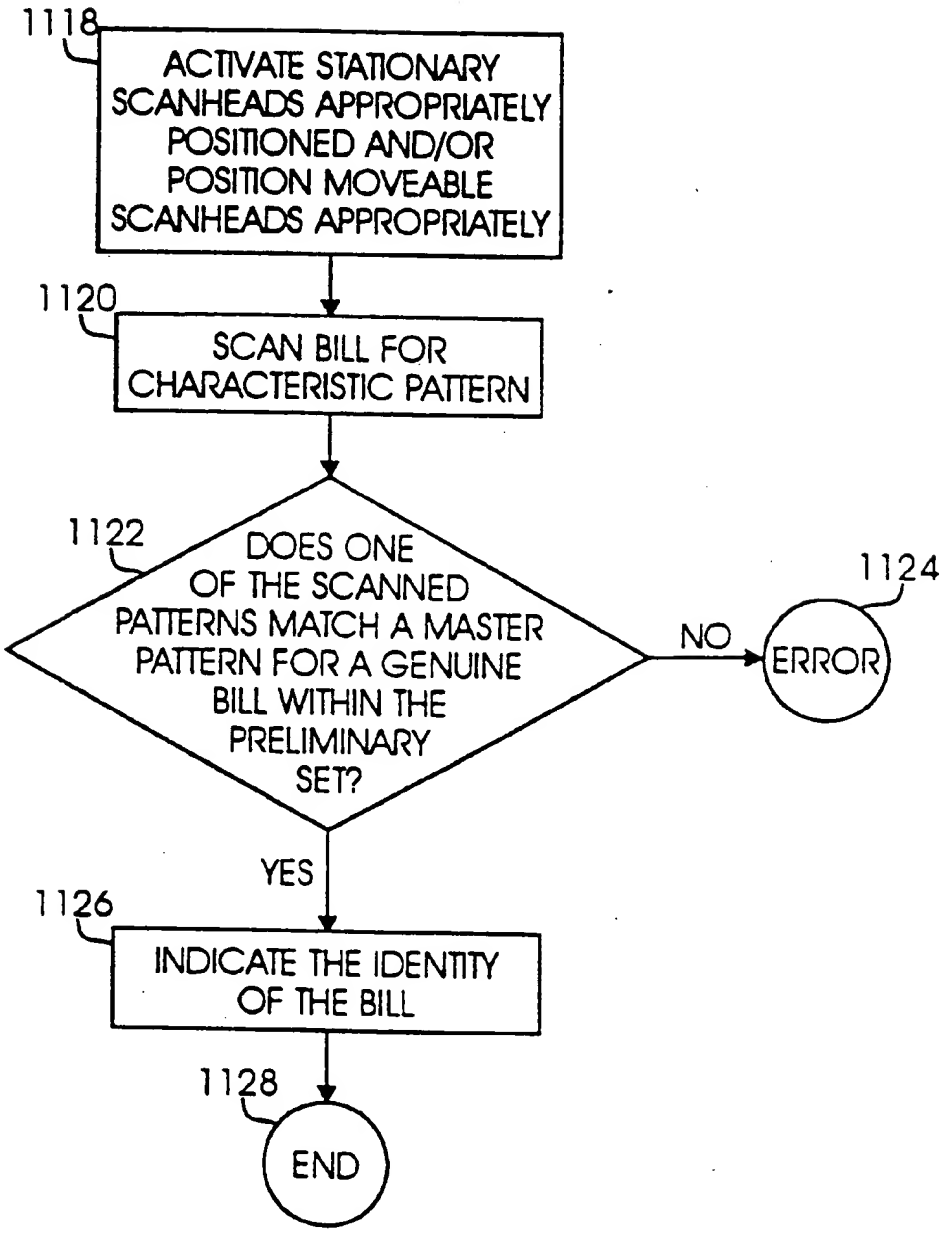

1118
ACTIVATE STATIONARY SCANHEADS APPROPRIATELY POSITIONED AND/OR POSITION MOVEABLE SCANHEADS APPROPRIATELY
1120
SCAN BILL FOR CHARACTERISTIC PATTERN
1122
DOES ONE OF THE SCANNED PATTERNS MATCH A MASTER PATTERN FOR A GENUINE BILL WITHIN THE PRELIMINARY SET?
NO
1124
ERROR
YES
1126
INDICATE THE IDENTITY OF THE BILL
1128
END

FIG. 50b

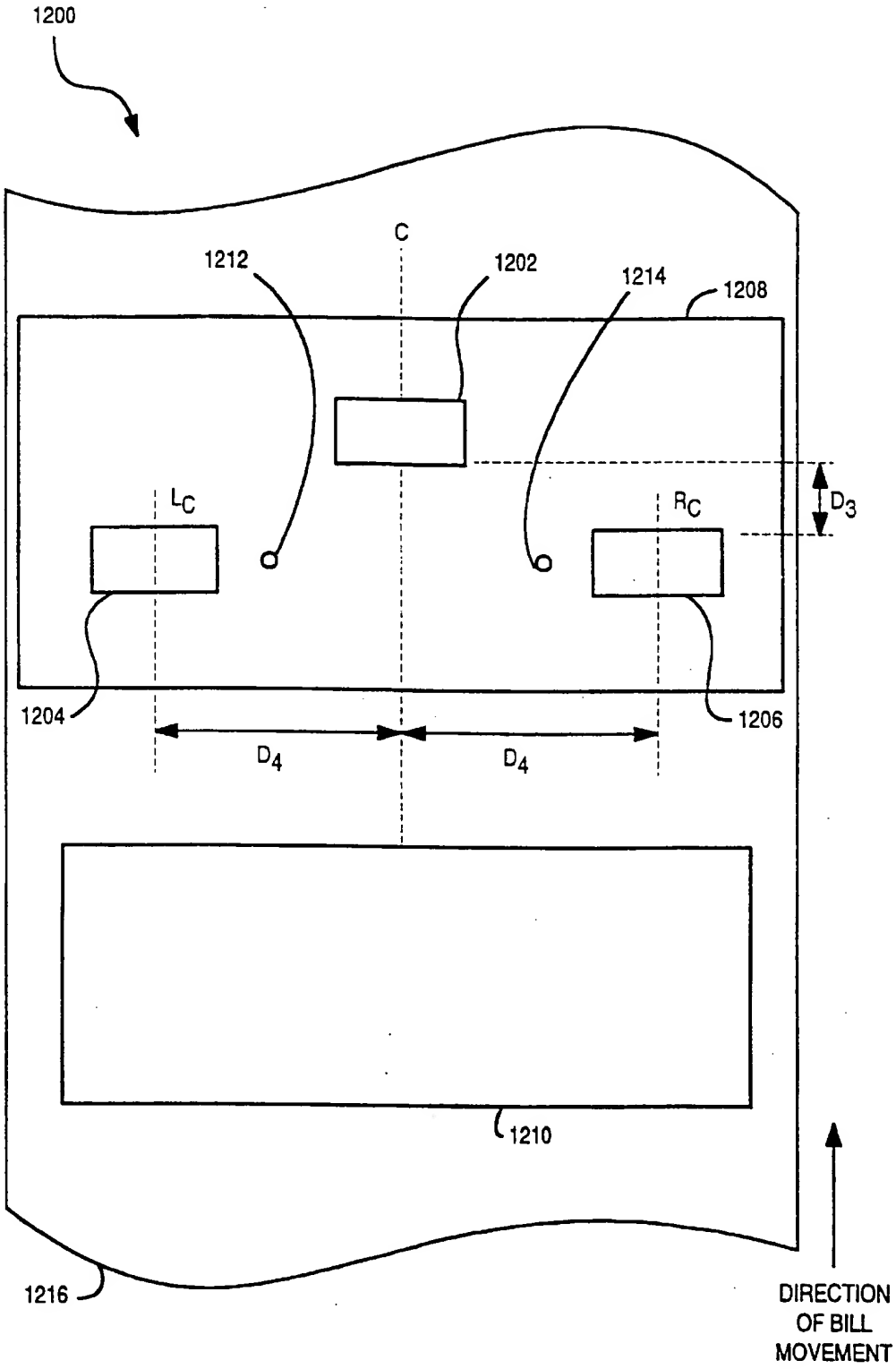

1200
C
1212
1202
1214
1208
L_C
R_C
D_3
1204
1206
D_4
D_4
1210
1216
DIRECTION OF BILL MOVEMENT

FIG. 51

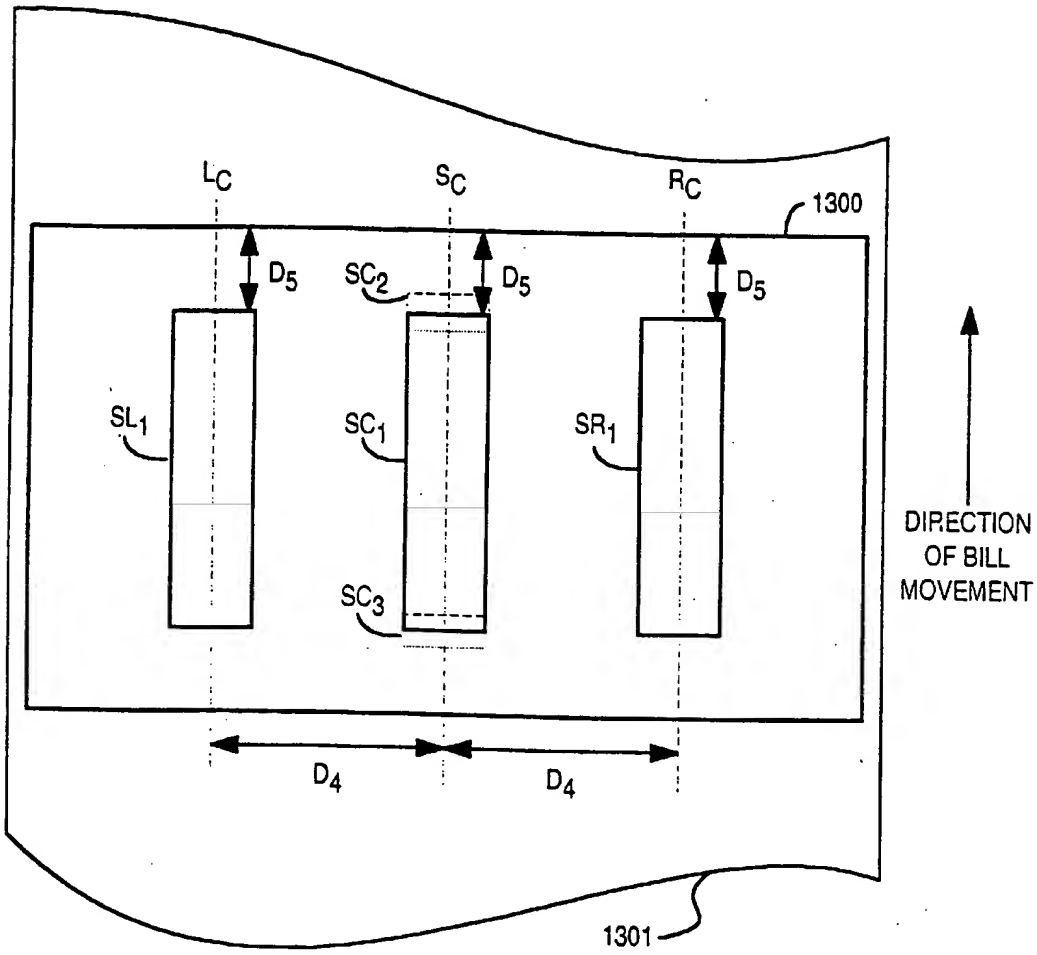
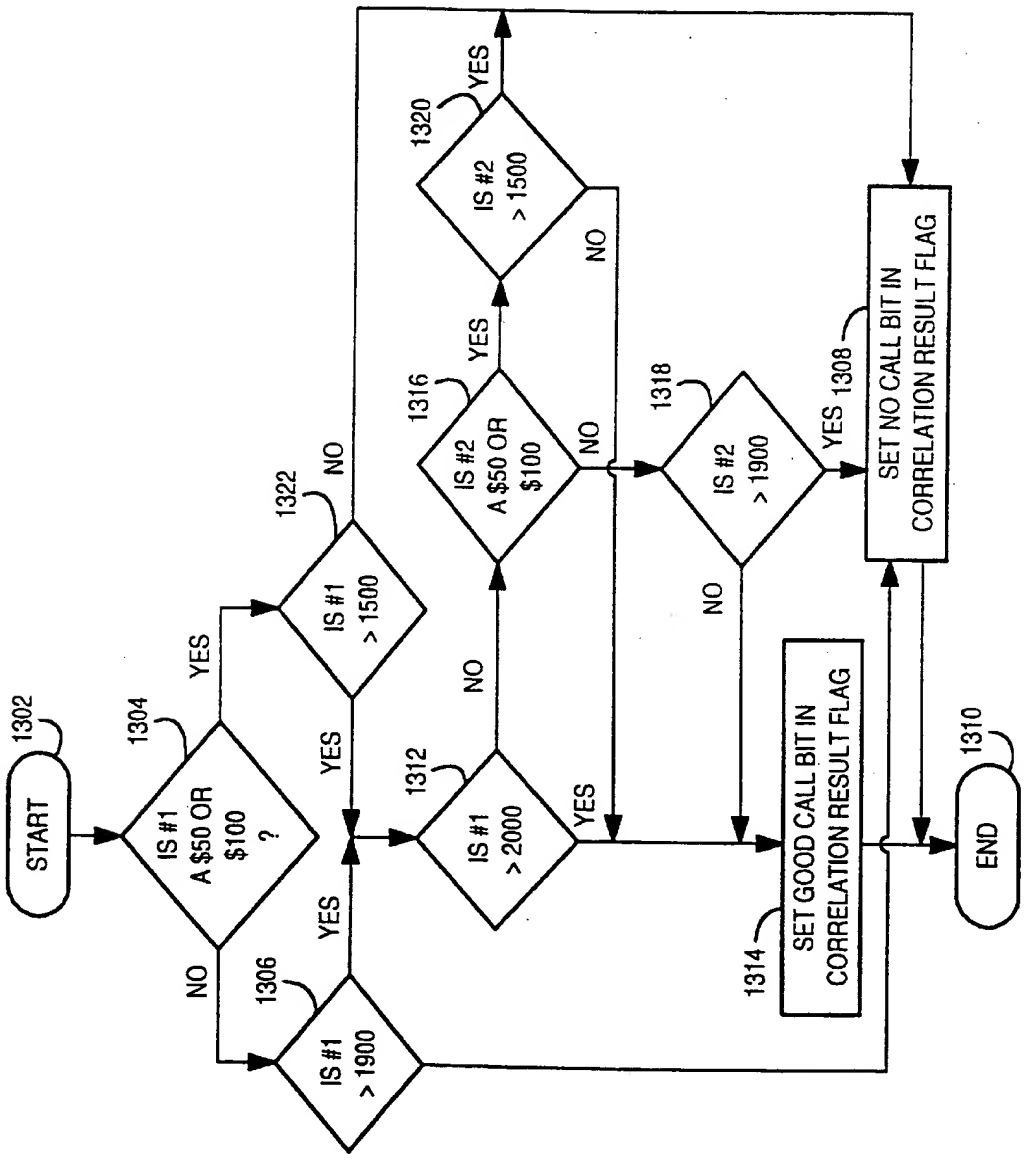

L_C
S_C
R_C
1300
D_5
SC_2
D_5
D_5
SL_1
SC_1
SR_1
SC_3
DIRECTION OF BILL MOVEMENT
D_4
D_4
1301

FIG. 52

FIG. 53


START
1302
IS #1 A $50 OR $100 ?
1304
YES
NO
IS #1 > 1500
1322
NO
YES
IS #1 > 1900
1306
YES
NO
IS #1 > 2000
1312
YES
NO
IS #2 A $50 OR $100
1316
YES
NO
IS #2 > 1500
1320
YES
NO
IS #2 > 1900
1318
YES
NO
SET NO CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
1308
SET GOOD CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
1314
END
1310

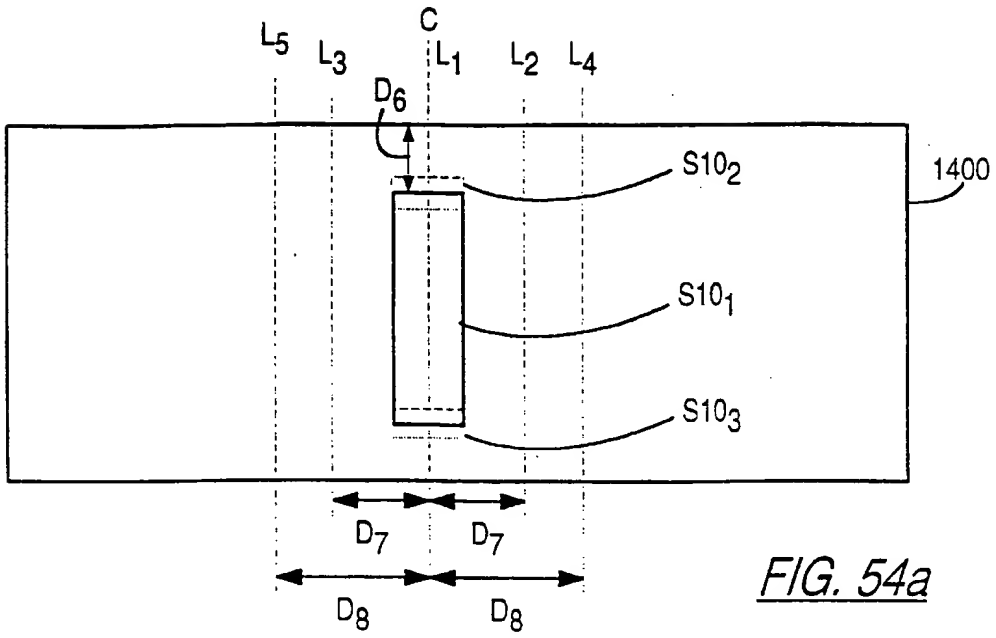


FIG. 54a

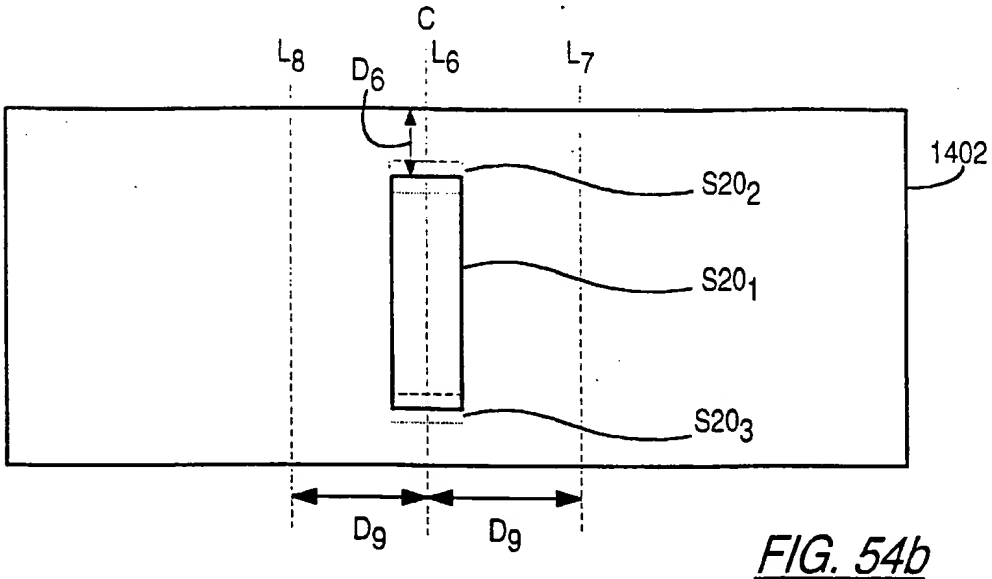


FIG. 54b

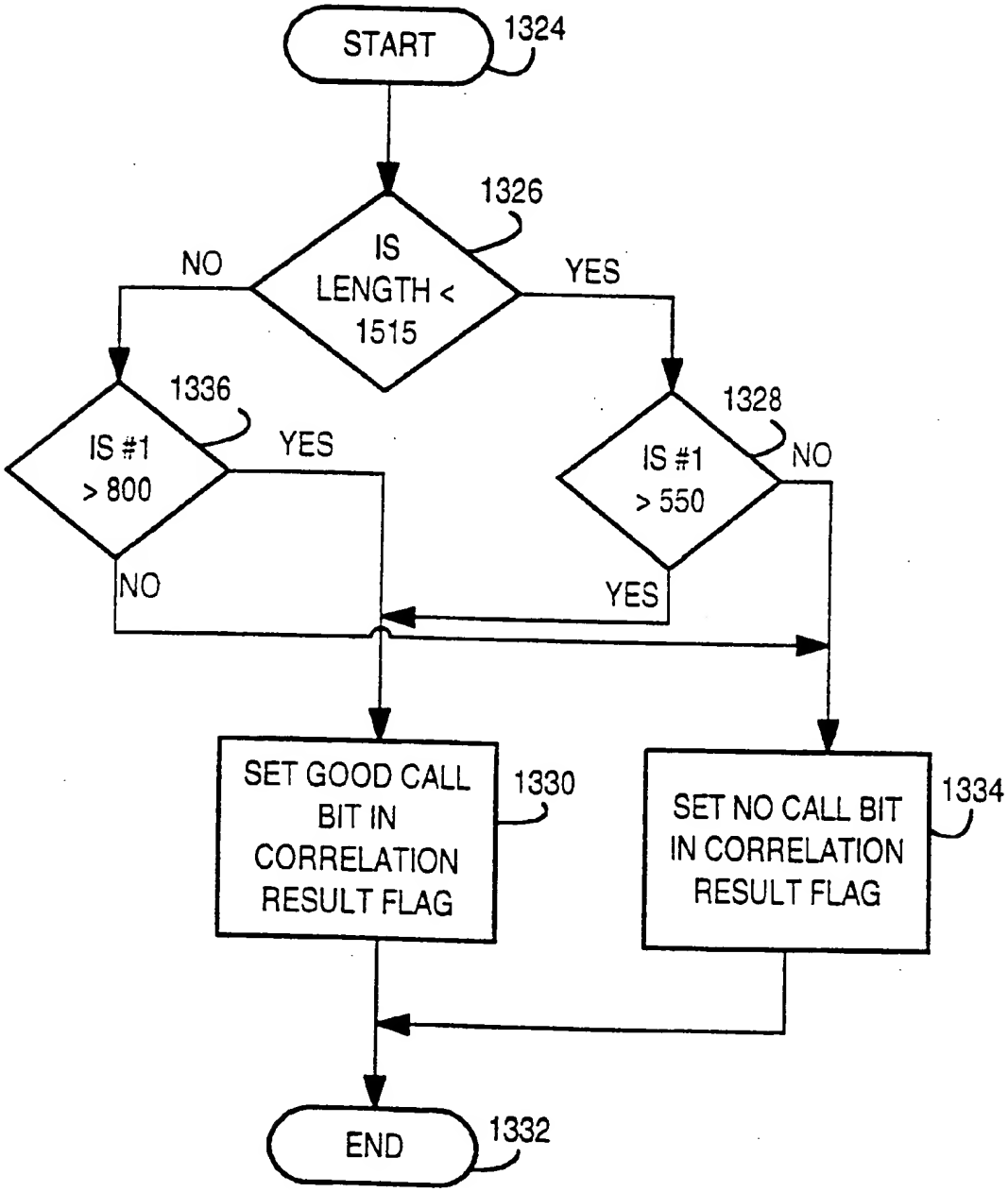

START
1324
1326
IS LENGTH < 1515
NO
YES
1336
IS #1 > 800
YES
NO
1328
IS #1 > 550
NO
YES
SET GOOD CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
1330
SET NO CALL BIT IN CORRELATION RESULT FLAG
1334
END
1332

FIG. 55

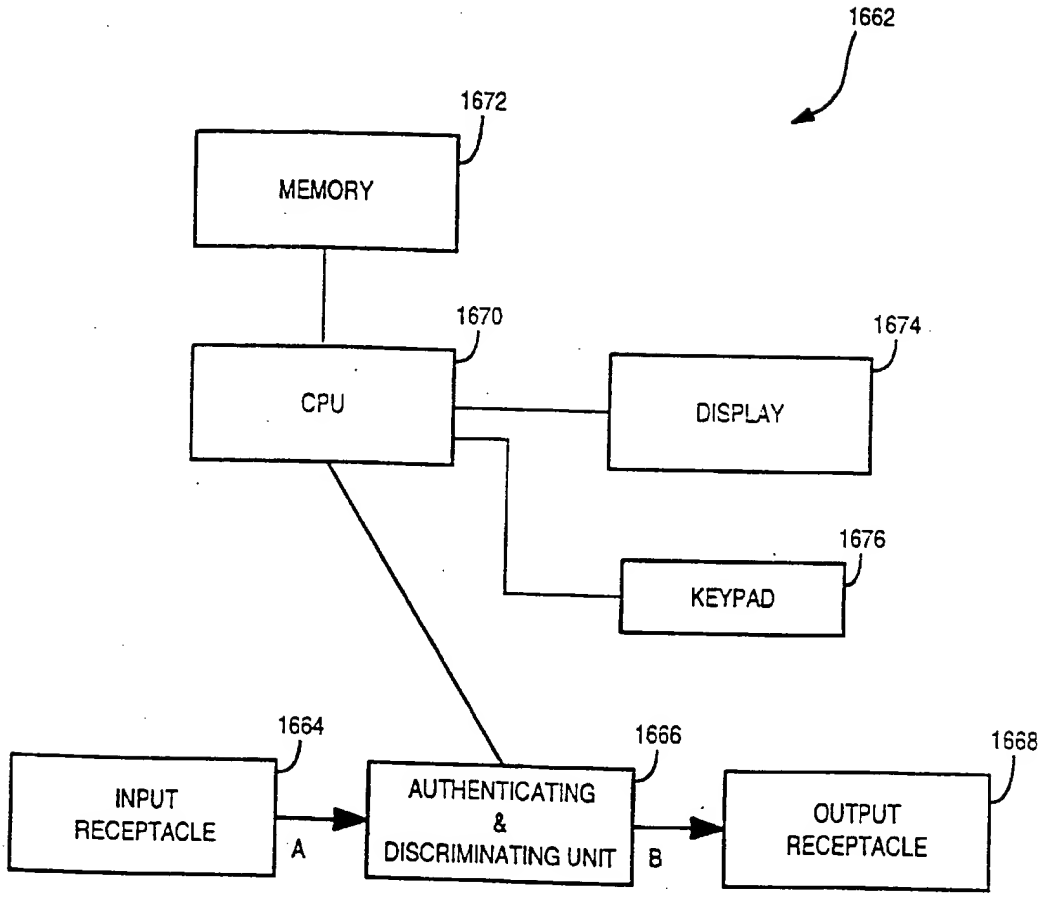

1662
1672
MEMORY
1670
CPU
1674
DISPLAY
1676
KEYPAD
1664
INPUT RECEPTACLE
A
1666
AUTHENTICATING & DISCRIMINATING UNIT
B
1668
OUTPUT RECEPTACLE

FIG. 56

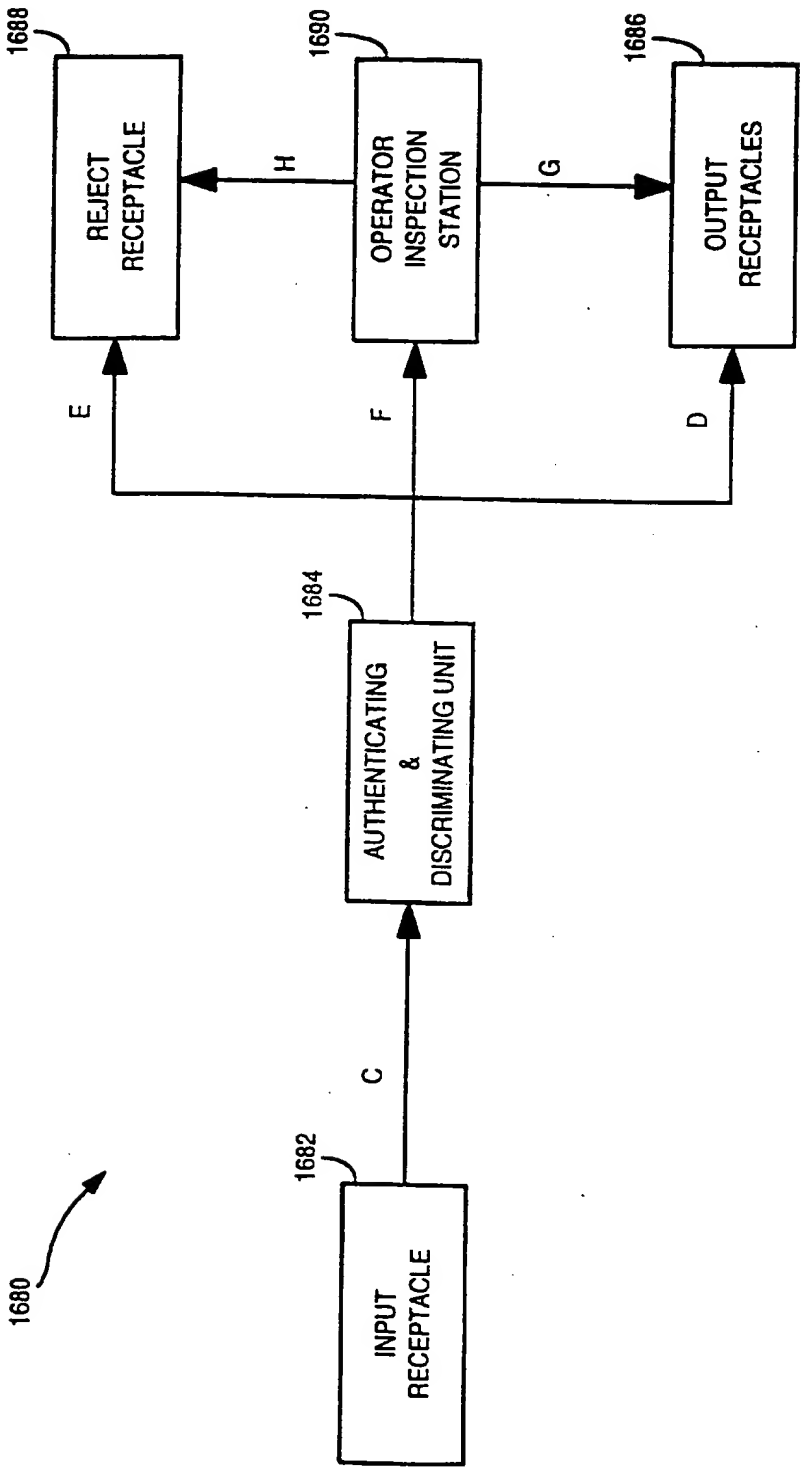

1688
REJECT RECEPTACLE
1690
OPERATOR INSPECTION STATION
1686
OUTPUT RECEPTACLES
H
G
E
F
D
1684
AUTHENTICATING & DISCRIMINATING UNIT
C
1682
INPUT RECEPTACLE
1680

FIG. 57

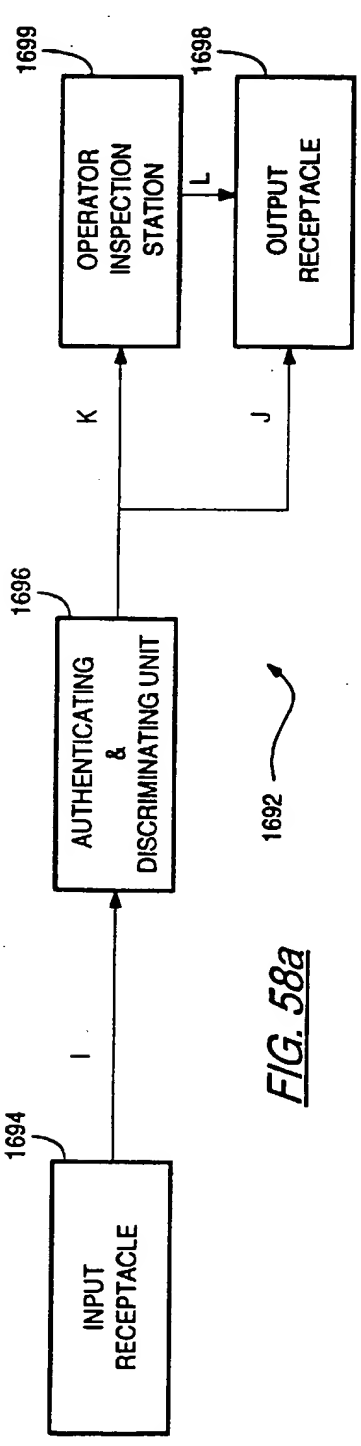


FIG. 58a

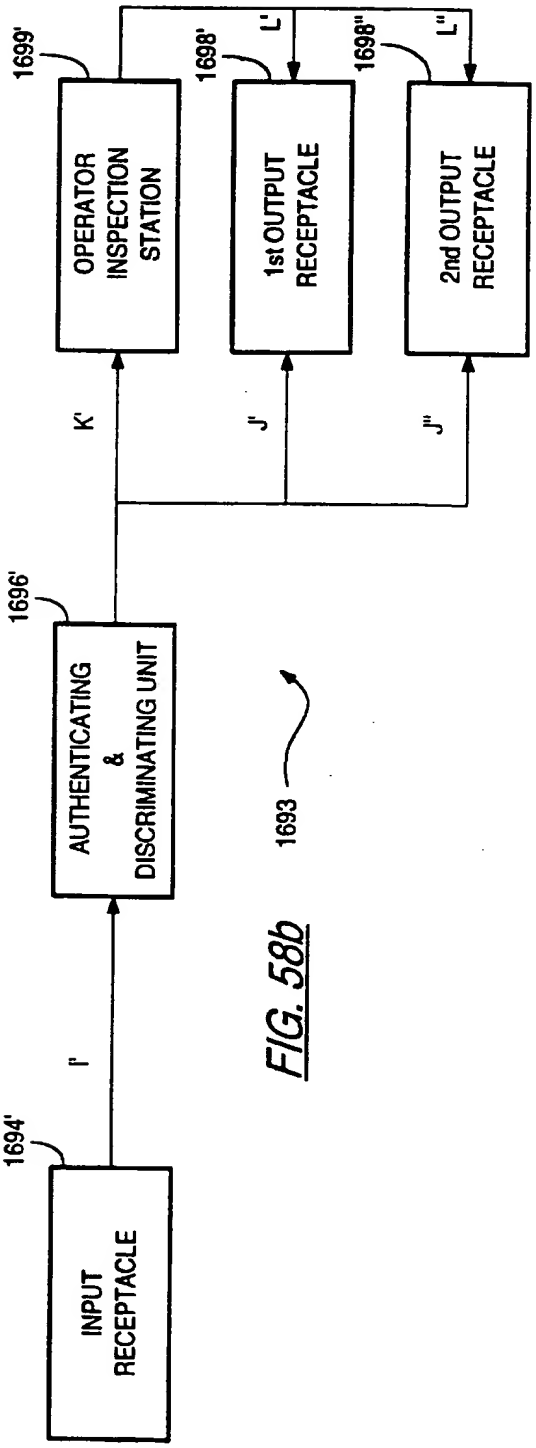


FIG. 58b

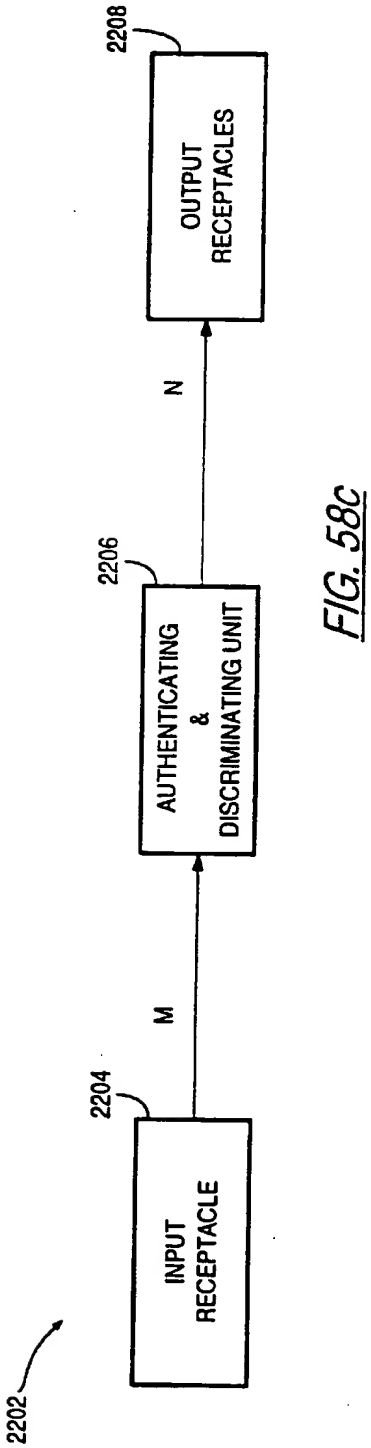


FIG. 58c

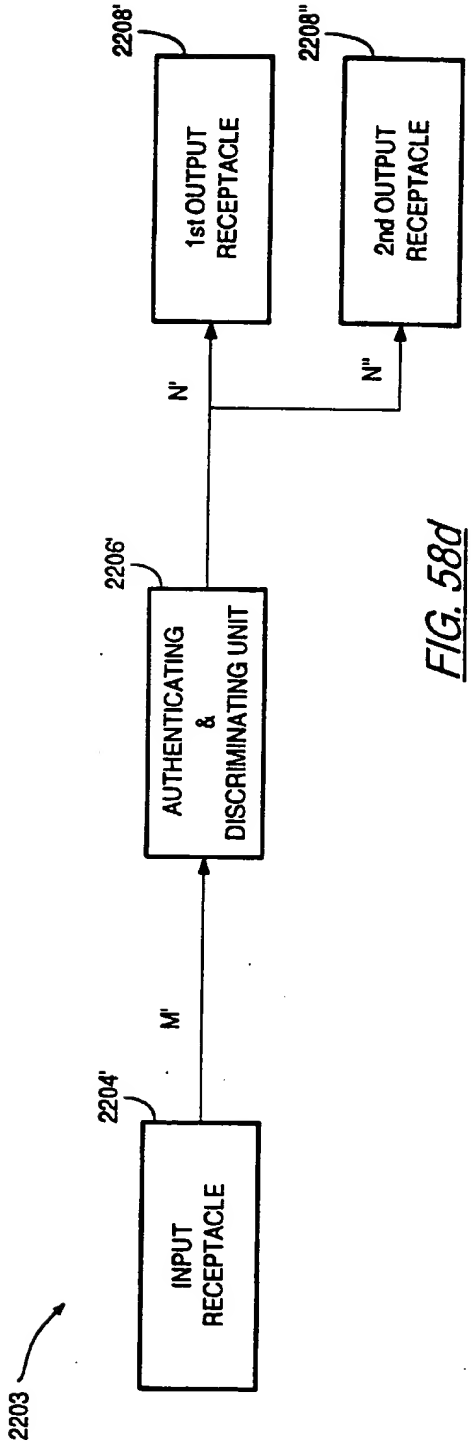


FIG. 58d

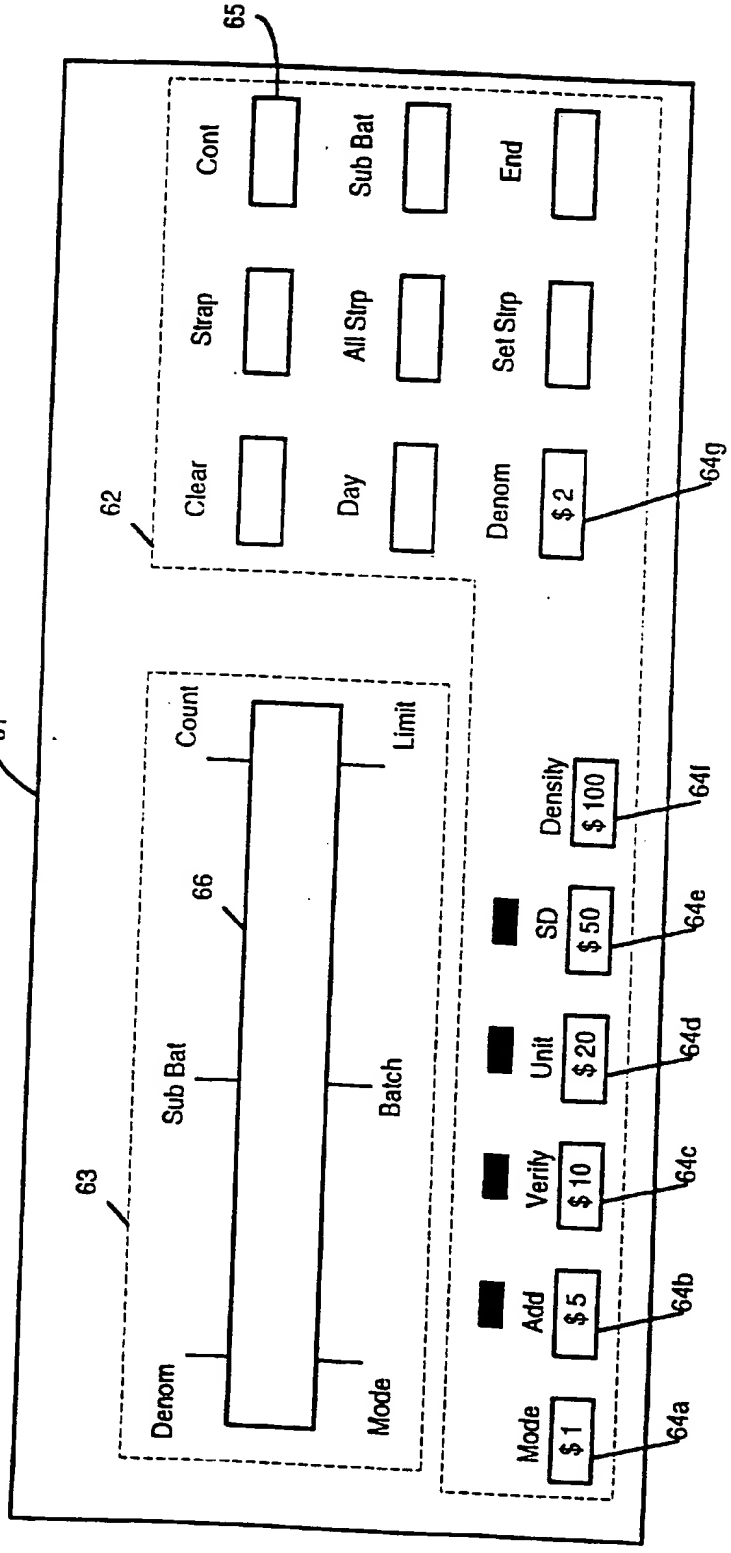

65
Cont
Sub Bat
End
Strap
All Strp
Set Strp
Clear
Day
Denom
$ 2
64g
62
61
Count
Limit
66
Density
$ 100
64f
SD
$ 50
64e
Sub Bat
Batch
Unit
$ 20
64d
63
Verify
$ 10
64c
Add
$ 5
64b
Denom
Mode
Mode
$ 1
64a

FIG. 59

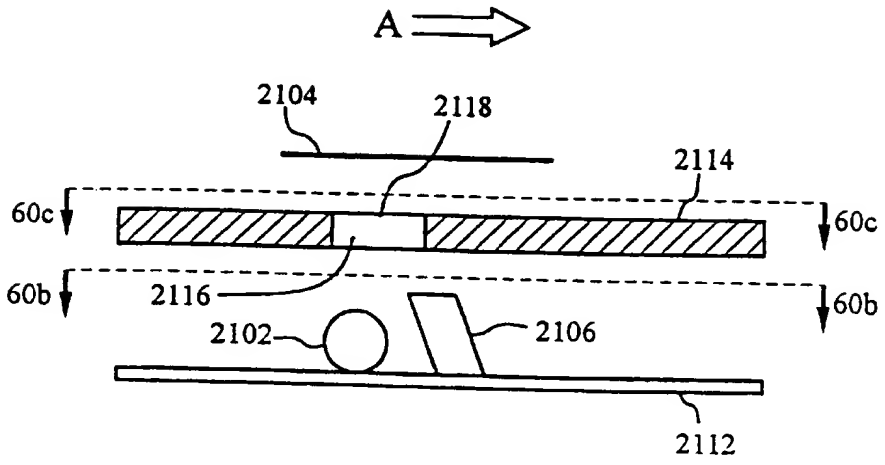


FIG. 60a

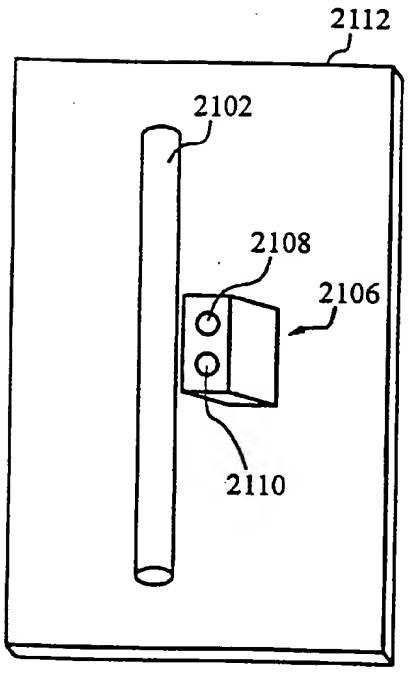


FIG. 60b

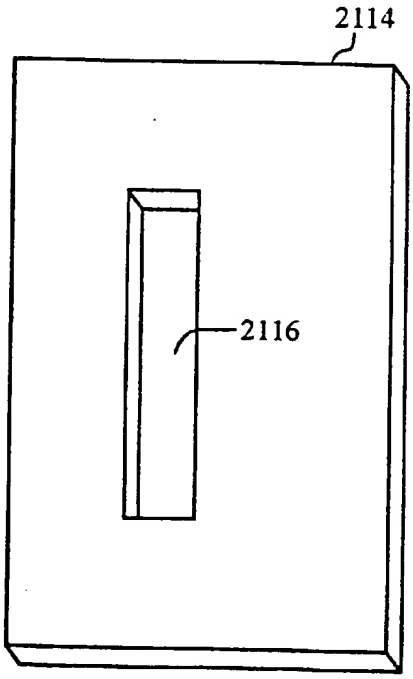


FIG. 60c

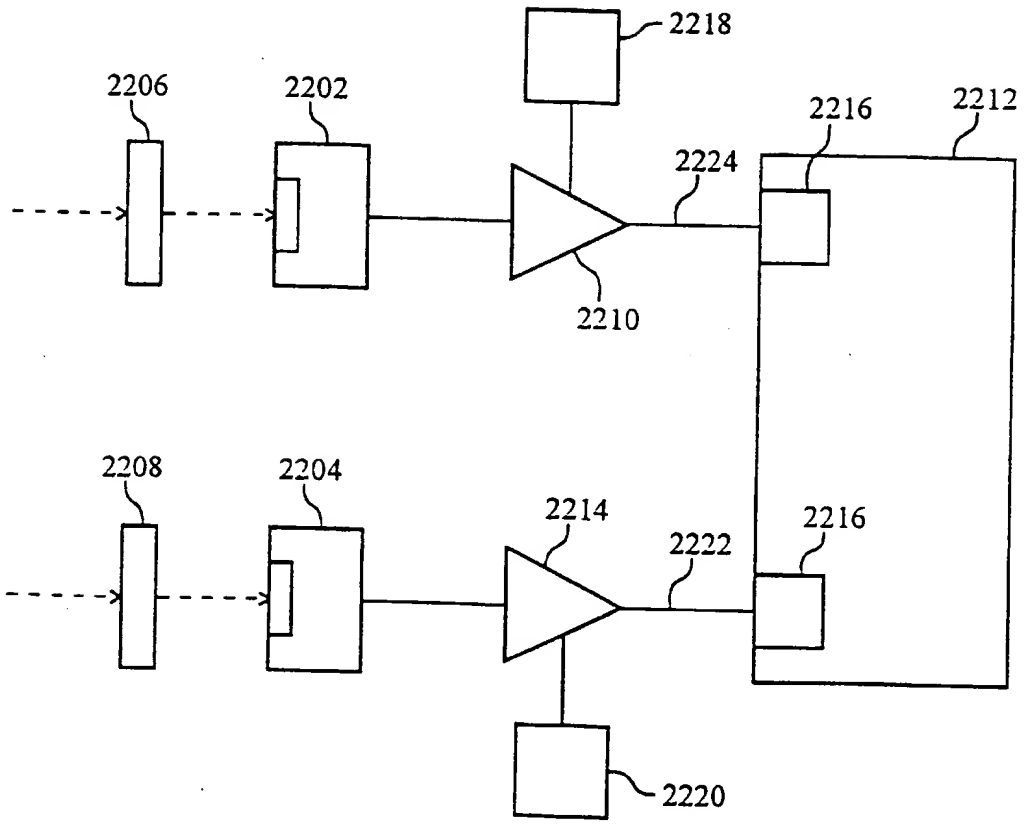

2218
2206
2202
2216
2212
2224
2210
2208
2204
2214
2216
2222
2220

FIG. 61

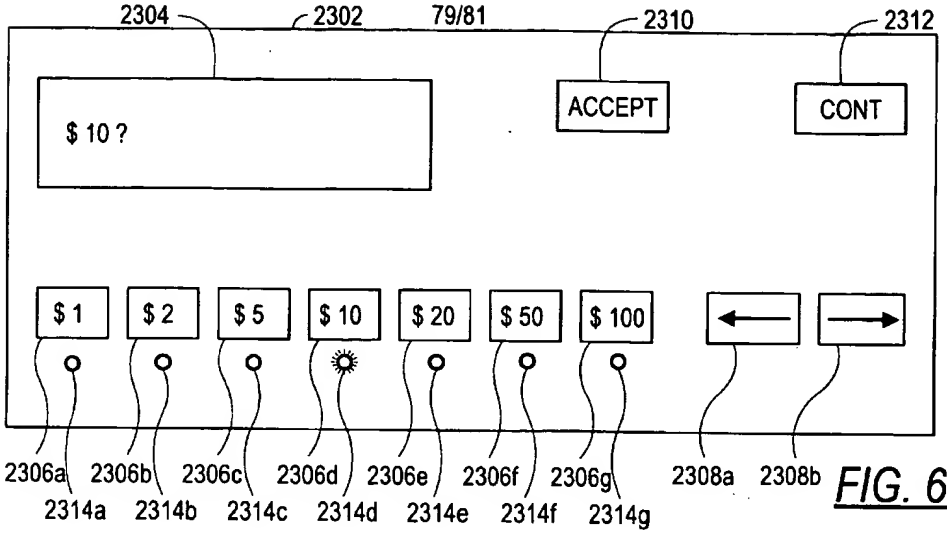


FIG. 62

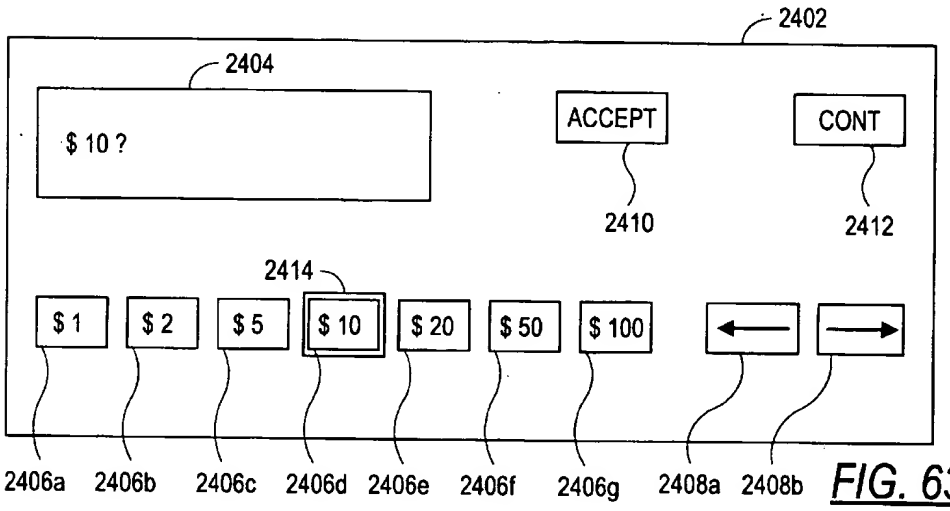


FIG. 63

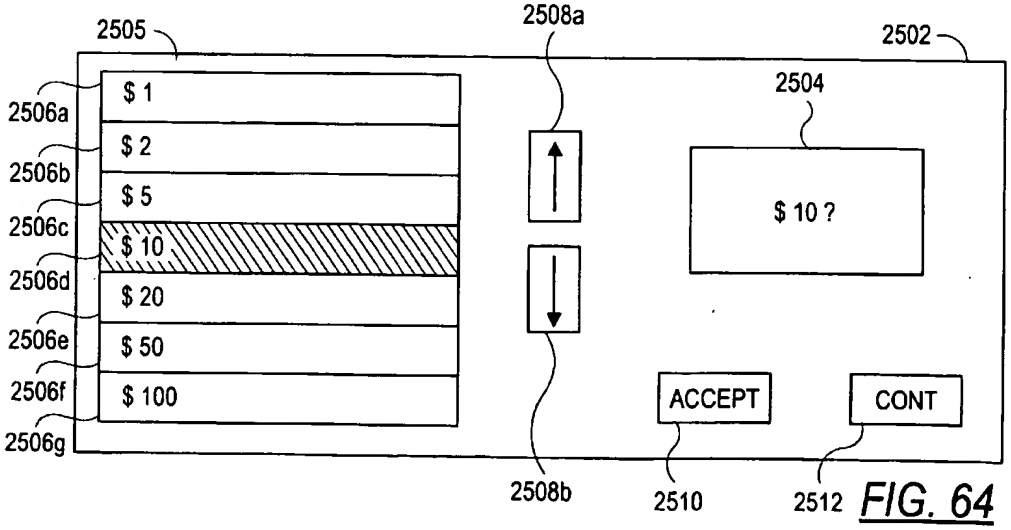


FIG. 64

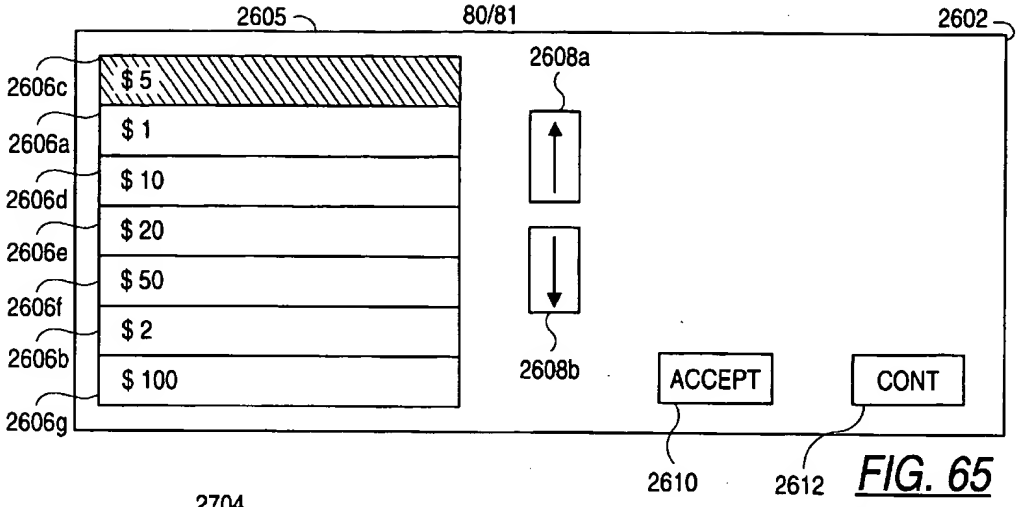


FIG. 65

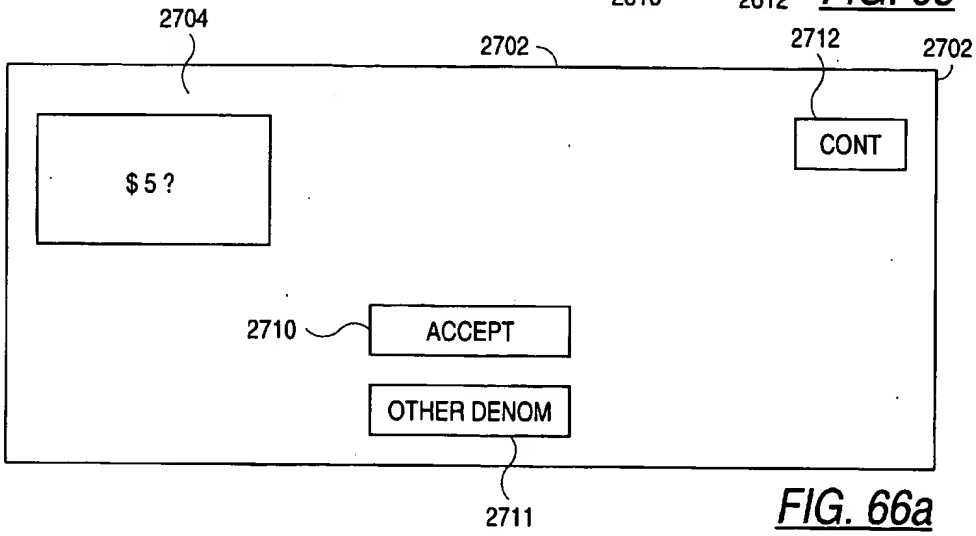


FIG. 66a

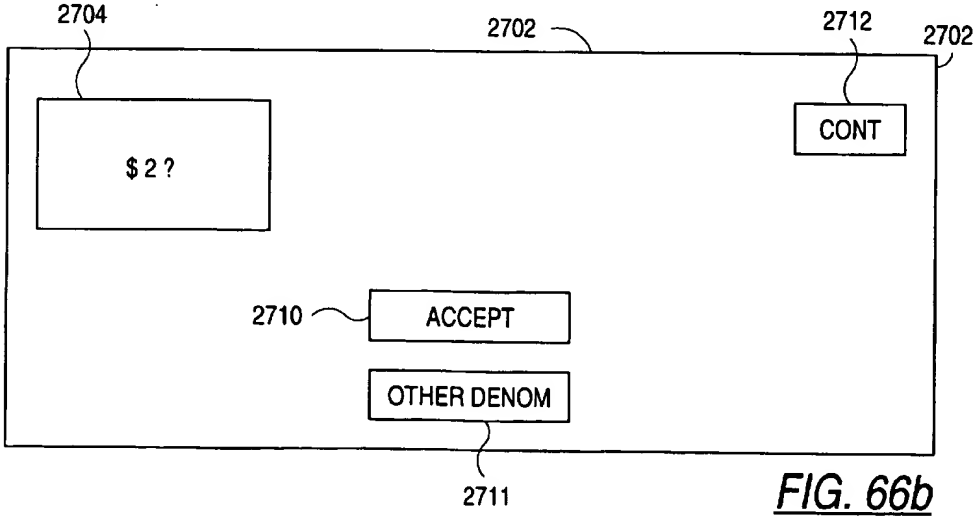


FIG. 66b

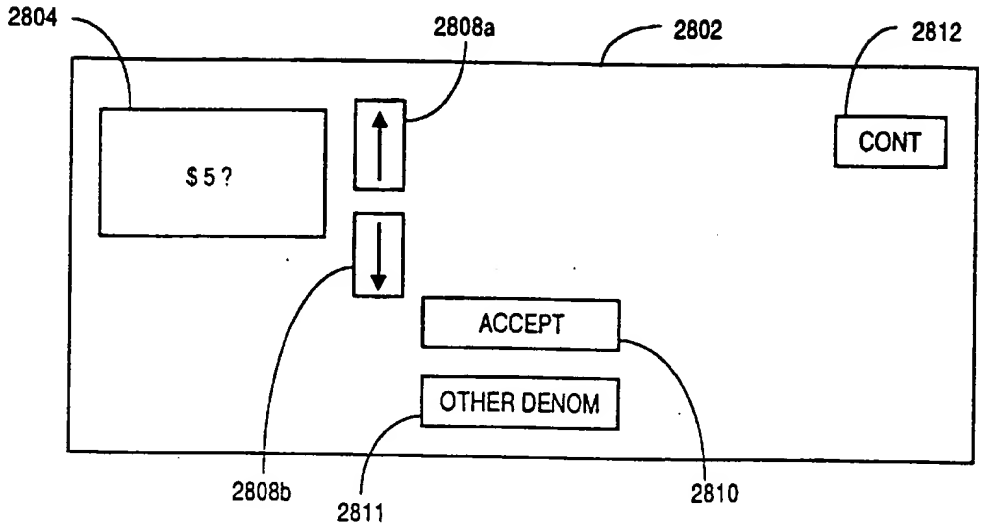

2804
2808a
2802
2812
$5?
CONT
ACCEPT
OTHER DENOM
2808b
2811
2810

FIG. 67

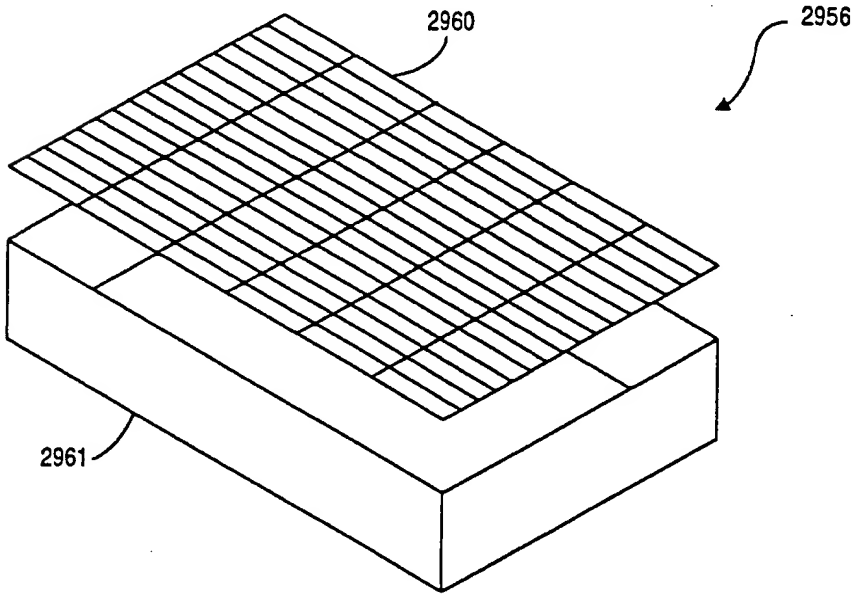

2960
2956
2961

FIG. 68

METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DISCRIMINATING AND COUNTING DOCUMENTS

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

This application is a divisional of co-pending application Ser. No. 08/573,392, filed Dec. 15, 1995, now U.S. Pat. No. 5,790,697, which is a continuation-in-part of the following pending U.S. patent applications:

Ser. No. 08/394,752 filed Feb. 27, 1995 for a "Method of Generating Modified Patterns and Method and Apparatus for Using the Same in a Currency Identification System", now U.S. Pat. No. 5,724,438;

Ser. No. 08/362,848 filed Dec. 22, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents";

Ser. No. 08/317,349 filed Oct. 4, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Authenticating Documents Including Currency", now U.S. Pat. No. 5,640,463;

Ser. No. 08/287,882 filed Aug. 9, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Document Identification", now U.S. Pat. No. 5,652,802;

Ser. No. 008/243,807 filed May 16, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination", now U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,949; and

Ser. No. 08/226,660 filed Apr. 12, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination".

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/399,854 filed Mar. 7, 1995 for a "Method and Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent applications Ser. No. 08/394,752, filed Feb. 27, 1995 for a "Method of Generating Modified Patterns and Method and Apparatus for Using the Same in a Currency Identification System," Ser. No. 08/340,031, and Ser. No. 08/287,882.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/394,752 filed Feb. 27, 1995 for a "Method of Generating Modified Patterns and Method and Apparatus for Using the Same in a Currency Identification System" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent applications Ser. No. 08/340,031 filed Nov. 14, 1994, U.S. Pat. No. 5,815,592, and Ser. No. 08/127,334 filed Sep. 27, 1993, U.S. Pat. No. 5,467,405, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting."

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/362,848 filed Dec. 22, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/340,031, filed Nov. 14, 1994, U.S. Pat. No. 5,815,592.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/340,031 filed Nov. 14, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent applications Ser. No. 08/243,807 and Ser. No. 08/207,592 filed Mar. 8, 1994, U.S. Pat. No. 5,467,406, for "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination".

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/287,882 filed Aug. 9, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Document Identification" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent applications Ser. No. 08/207,592, Ser. No. 08/219,093 filed on Mar. 29, 1994, abandoned, for a "Currency Discriminator and Authenticator", and Ser. No. 08/127,334 filed Sep. 27, 1993, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting."

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/243,807 filed May 16, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent applications Ser. No. 08/219,093 and Ser. No. 08/127,334.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/226,660 filed Apr. 12, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/127,334.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/219,093 filed on Mar. 29, 1994, for a "Currency Discriminator and Authenticator" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/127,334.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/207,592 filed Mar. 8, 1994, and issued as U.S. Pat. No. 5,467,406, for "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination" is a continuation-in-part of pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/127,334.

U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/127,334 filed Sep. 27, 1993, and issued as U.S. Pat. No. 5,467,405, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting," is a continuation of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/885,648, filed on May 19, 1992, and issued as U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting," which is a continuation-in-part of abandoned U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/475,111, filed Feb. 5, 1990, now abandoned, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting."

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates, in general, to document identification. More specifically, the present invention relates to an apparatus and method for discriminating among a plurality of document types such as currency bills of different denominations and/or from different countries and authenticating the genuineness of the same.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Machines that are currently available for simultaneous scanning and counting of documents such as paper currency are relatively complex and costly, and relatively large in size. The complexity of such machines can also lead to excessive service and maintenance requirements. These drawbacks have inhibited more widespread use of such machines, particularly in banks and other financial institutions where space is limited in areas where the machines are most needed, such as teller areas. The above drawbacks are particularly difficult to overcome in machines which offer much-needed features such as the ability to scan bills regardless of their orientation relative to the machine or to each other, and the ability to authenticate genuineness and/or denomination of the bills.

A variety of techniques and apparatus have been used to satisfy the requirements of automated currency handling systems. At the lower end of sophistication in this area of technology are systems capable of handling only a specific type of currency, such as a specific dollar denomination, while rejecting all other currency types. At the upper end are complex systems which are capable of identifying and discriminating among and automatically counting multiple currency denominations.

Currency discrimination systems typically employ either magnetic sensing or optical sensing for discriminating among different currency denominations. Magnetic sensing is based on detecting the presence or absence of magnetic ink in portions of the printed indicia on the currency by using magnetic sensors, usually ferrite core-based sensors, and using the detected magnetic signals, after undergoing

analog or digital processing, as the basis for currency discrimination. A variety of currency characteristics can be measured using magnetic sensing. These include detection of patterns of changes in magnetic flux, patterns of vertical grid lines in the portrait area of bills, the presence of a security thread, total amount of magnetizable material of a bill, patterns from sensing the strength of magnetic fields along a bill, and other patterns and counts from scanning different portions of the bill such as the area in which the denomination is written out.

The more commonly used optical sensing techniques, on the other hand, are based on detecting and analyzing variations in light reflectance or transmissivity characteristics occurring when a currency bill is illuminated and scanned by a strip of focused light. The subsequent currency discrimination is based on the comparison of sensed optical characteristics with prestored parameters for different currency denominations, while accounting for adequate tolerances reflecting differences among individual bills of a given denomination. A variety of currency characteristics can be measured using optical sensing. These include detection of a bill's density, color, length and thickness, the presence of a security thread and holes, and other patterns of reflectance and transmission. Color detection techniques may employ color filters, colored lamps, and/or dichroic beamsplitters.

In addition to magnetic and optical sensing, other techniques of detecting characteristic information of currency include electrical conductivity sensing, capacitive sensing (such as for watermarks, security threads, thickness, and various dielectric properties) and mechanical sensing (such as for size, limpness, and thickness).

A major obstacle in implementing automated currency discrimination systems is obtaining an optimum compromise between the criteria used to adequately define the characteristic pattern for a particular currency denomination, the time required to analyze test data and compare it to predefined parameters in order to identify the currency bill under scrutiny, and the rate at which successive currency bills may be mechanically fed through and scanned. Even with the use of microprocessors for processing the test data resulting from the scanning of a bill, a finite amount of time is required for acquiring samples and for the process of comparing the test data to stored parameters to identify the denomination of the bill.

Some of the currency scanning systems today scan for two or more characteristics of bills to discriminate among various denominations or to authenticate their genuineness. However, these systems do not efficiently utilize the information which is obtained. Rather, these systems generally conduct comparison based on the two or more characteristics independently of each other. As a result, the time required to make these comparisons is increased which in turn can reduce the operating speed of the entire scanning system.

Recent currency discriminating systems rely on comparisons between a scanned pattern obtained from a subject bill and sets of stored master patterns for the various denominations among which the system is designed to discriminate. As a result, the master patterns which are stored play an important role in a discrimination system's ability to discriminate among bills of various denominations as well as between genuine bills and counterfeit bills. These master patterns have been generated by scanning bills of various denominations known to be genuine and storing the resulting patterns. However, a pattern generated by scanning a genuine bill of a given denomination can vary depending upon a number of factors such as the condition of the bill, e.g., whether it is a crisp bill in new condition or a worn, flimsy bill, as well as year in which the bill was printed, e.g., before or after security threads were incorporated into bills of some denominations. Likewise, it has been found that bills which have experienced a high degree of usage may shrink, resulting in a reduction of the dimensions of such bills. Such shrinkage may likewise result in variations in scanning patterns. As a result, if, for example, a $20 master pattern is generated by scanning a crisp, genuine $20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but worn $20 bills. Likewise, if a $20 master pattern is generated using a very worn, genuine $20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but crisp $20 bills.

It has been found that scanning U.S. bills of different denominations along a central portion thereof provides scanning patterns sufficiently divergent to enable accurate discrimination between different denominations. Such a discrimination device is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196. However, currencies of other countries can differ from U.S. currency and from each other in a number of ways. For example, while all denominations of U.S. currencies are the same size, in many other countries currencies vary in size by denomination. Furthermore, there is a wide variety of bill sizes among different countries. In addition to size, the color of currency can vary by country and by denomination. Likewise, many other characteristics may vary between bills from different countries and of different denominations.

As a result of the wide variety of currencies used throughout the world, a discrimination system designed to handle bills of one country generally can not handle bills from another country. Likewise, the method of discriminating bills of different denominations of one country may not be appropriate for use in discriminating bills of different denominations of another country. For example, scanning for a given characteristic pattern along a certain portion of bills of one country, such as optical reflectance about the central portion of U.S. bills, may not provide optimal discrimination properties for bills of another country, such as German marks.

Furthermore, there is a distinct need for an identification system which is capable of accepting bills of a number of currency systems, that is, a system capable of accepting a number of bill-types. For example, a bank in Europe may need to process on a regular basis French, British, German, Dutch, etc. currency, each having a number of different denomination values.

Some of the optical scanning systems available today employ two optical scanheads disposed on opposite sides of a bill transport path. One of the optical scanheads scans one surface (e.g., green surface) of a currency bill to obtain a first set of reflectance data samples, while the other optical scanhead scans the opposite surface (e.g., black surface) of the currency bill to obtain a second set of reflectance data samples. These two sets of data samples are then processed and compared to stored characteristic patterns corresponding to the green surfaces of currency bills of different denominations. If degree of correlation between either set of data samples and any of the stored characteristic patterns is greater than a predetermined threshold, then the denomination of the bill is positively identified.

A drawback of the foregoing technique for scanning both surfaces of a currency bill is that it is time-consuming to process and compare both sets of data samples for the scanned bill to the stored characteristic patterns. The set of

data samples corresponding to the black surface of the scanned bill are processed and compared to the stored characteristic patterns even though no match should be found. As previously stated, the stored characteristic patterns correspond to the green surfaces of currency bills of different denominations.

Another drawback of the foregoing scanning technique is that the set of data samples corresponding to the black surface of the scanned bill occasionally leads to false positive identification of a scanned bill. The reason for this false positive identification is that if a scanned bill is slightly shifted in the lateral direction relative to the bill transport path, the set of data samples corresponding to the black surface of the scanned bill may sufficiently correlate with one of the stored characteristic patterns to cause a false positive identification of the bill. The degree of correlation between the set of "black" data samples and the stored "green" characteristic patterns should, of course, not be greater than the predetermined threshold for positively identifying the denomination of the bill.

Furthermore, in currency discriminating systems that rely on comparisons between a scanned pattern obtained from a subject bill and sets of stored master patterns, the ability of a system to accurately line up the scanned patterns to the master patterns to which they are being compared is important to the ability of a discrimination system to discriminate among bills of various denominations as well as between genuine bills and counterfeit bills without rejecting an unacceptable number of genuine bills. However, the ability of a system to line up scanned and master patterns is often hampered by the improper initiation of the scanning process which results in the generation of scanned patterns. If the generation of scanned patterns is initiated too early or too late, the resulting pattern will not correlate well with the master pattern associated with the identity of the currency; and as a result, a genuine bill may be rejected. There are a number of reasons why a discrimination system may initiate the generation of a scanned pattern too early or too late, for example, stray marks on a bill, the bleeding through of printed indicia from one bill in a stack onto an adjacent bill, the misdetection of the beginning of the area of the printed indicia which is desired to be scanned, and the reliance on the detection of the edge of a bill as the trigger for the scanning process coupled with the variance, from bill to bill, of the location of printed indicia relative to the edge of a bill. Therefore, there is a need to overcome the problems associated with correlating scanned and master patterns.

In some currency discriminators bills are transported, one at a time, passed a discriminating unit. As the bills pass the discriminating unit, the denomination of each bill is determined and a running total of each particular currency denomination and/or of the total value of the bills that are processed is maintained. A number of discriminating techniques may be employed by the discriminating unit including optical or magnetic scanning of bills. A plurality of output bins are provided and the discriminator includes means for sorting bills into the plurality of bins. For example, a discriminator may be designed to recognize a number of different denominations of U.S. bills and comprise an equal number of output bins, one associated with each denomination. These discriminators also include a reject bin for receiving all bills which cannot be identified by the discriminating unit. These bills may later be examined by an operator and then either re-fed through the discriminator or set aside as unacceptable.

Depending on the design of a discriminator, bills may be transported and scanned either along their long dimension or their narrow dimension. For a discriminator that transport bills in their narrow dimension, it is possible that a given bill may be oriented either face up or face down and either top edge first ("forward" direction) or top edge last ("reverse" direction). For discriminators that transport bills in their long dimension, it is possible that a given bill may be oriented either face up or face down and either left edge first ("forward" direction) or left edge last ("reverse" direction). The manner in which a bill must be oriented as it passes a discriminating unit depends on the characteristics of the discriminator. Some discriminators are capable of identifying the denomination of a bill only if it is fed with a precise orientation, e.g., face up and top edge first. Other discriminators are capable of identifying bills provided they are "faced" (i.e., fed with a predetermined face orientation, that is all face up or all face down). For example, such a discriminator may be able to identify a bill fed face up regardless of whether the top edge is fed first or last. Other discriminators are capable of identifying the denomination fed with any orientation. However, whether a given discriminator can discriminate between bills fed with different orientations depends on the discriminating method used. For example, a discriminator that discriminates bills based on patterns of transmitted light may be able to identify the denomination of a forward fed bill regardless of whether the bill is fed face up or face down, but the same discriminator would not be able to discriminate between a bill fed face up and a bill fed face down.

Currently, discriminators are known which discriminate and/or sort by denomination when bills are properly faced. In such systems, all reverse-faced bills are not identified and are routed to a reject receptacle. Also discriminators are known which discriminate and/or sort between all bills facing up and all bills facing down. For example, in a multi-output pocket system, all face up bills, regardless of denomination, may be routed to a first pocket and all face down bills, regardless of denomination, may be routed to a second pocket. Furthermore, there is currently known discriminators designed to accept a stack of faced bills and flag the detection of a reverse-faced bill, thus allowing the reverse-faced bill to be removed from the stack. However, there remains a need for a discriminator that can detect and flag the presence of a bill oriented with an incorrect forward/reverse orientation and a discriminator that can sort between forward-oriented bills and reverse-oriented bills.

Furthermore, for a number of reasons, a discriminating unit may be unable to determine the denomination of a bill. These reasons include a bill being excessively soiled, worn, or faded, a bill being torn or folded, a bill being oriented in a manner that the discriminating unit cannot handle, and the discriminating unit having poor discriminating performance. Furthermore, the discriminating unit and/or a separate authenticating unit may determine that a bill is not genuine. In current discriminators, such unidentified or non-genuine bills are deposited in a reject receptacle.

A characteristic of the above described discriminators is that the value of any ejected unidentified bills is not added to the running total of the aggregate value of the stack of bills nor do the counters keeping track of the number of each currency denomination reflect the rejected unidentified bills. While this is desirable with respect to bills which are positively identified as being fake, it may be undesirable with respect to bills which were not identified for other reasons even though they are genuine bills. While the bills in a reject receptacle may be re-fed through the discriminator, the operator must then add the totals from the first batch and the second batch together. Such a procedure

can be inefficient in some situations. Also, if a bill was rejected the first time because it was, for example, excessively soiled or too worn, then it is likely that the bill will remain unidentified by the discriminating unit even if re-fed.

A problem with the above described situations where the totals and/or counts do not reflect all the genuine bills in a stack is that an operator must then count all the unidentified genuine bills by hand and add such bills to separately generated totals. As a result the chance for human error increases and operating efficiency decreases. Take for example a bank setting where a customer hands a teller a stack of currency to be deposited. The teller places the stack of bills in a discriminator, the display on the discriminator indicates that a total of $730 has been identified. However, fourteen genuine bills remain unidentified. As a result, the teller must count these fourteen bills by hand or re-fed through the discriminator and then add their total to the $730 total. An error could result from the teller miscounting the unidentified bills, the teller forgetting to add the two totals together, or the teller overlooking the unidentified bills entirely and only recording a deposit of $730.

Moreover, even if the teller makes no mistakes, the efficiency of the teller is reduced by having to manually calculate additional totals. The decrease in efficiency is further aggravated where detailed records must be maintained about the specific number of each denomination processed during each transaction.

Therefore, there is a need for a currency discriminator which is capable of conveniently and efficiently accommodating genuine bills that, for whatever reason, remain unidentified after passing through the discriminating unit of a discriminator.

A number of methods have been developed for authenticating the genuineness of security documents. These methods include sensing magnetic, optical, conductive, and other characteristics of documents under test. In general, it has been found that no single authentication test is capable of detecting all types of counterfeit documents while at the same time not rejecting any genuine documents. Therefore, more than one test may be employed whereby a first test is used to detect certain types of counterfeits and additional tests are used to detect other types of counterfeits.

It has been known that the illumination of certain substances with ultraviolet light causes the substances to fluoresce, that is, to emit visible light. Some documents employ fluorescent materials as a security feature to inhibit counterfeiting. Typically, these fluorescent security features comprise a marking which is visibly revealed when the document is illuminated with ultraviolet light. Previous methods have been developed to authenticate such documents by sensing the fluorescent light emitted by a document illuminated by ultraviolet light and comparing the sensed fluorescent light to the fluorescent light emitted by genuine documents.

Conversely, some documents, such as United States currency, are manufactured from special paper designed not to fluoresce under ultraviolet light. Previously known authenticating methods for such documents have sensed for the emission of fluorescent light under ultraviolet illumination and have rejected as counterfeit those documents emitting fluorescent light.

However, it has been found that the presently known ultraviolet authentication methods do not detect all types of counterfeits. For example, while many counterfeit United States bills do emit fluorescent light under ultraviolet illumination, some counterfeit United States bills do not.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for identifying documents.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for identifying, authenticating, and counting currency bills comprising a plurality of currency denominations.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for discriminating among documents of different types including currency documents of different denominations.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for discriminating among currency bills comprising a plurality of currency denominations.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of efficiently discriminating among, authenticating, and counting bills of several currency denominations at a high speed and with a high degree of accuracy.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of efficiently discriminating currencies from a number of different countries.

It is another object of this invention to provide a currency evaluation device able to discriminate among different denominations of bills from two or more currency systems.

It is another object of this invention to provide a currency evaluation device able to discriminate among different denominations of both Canadian and German bills.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document such as a currency bill along two or more laterally displaced segments to thereby identify the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document along two or more laterally displaced segments by using two or more laterally displaced scanheads.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document along two or more laterally displaced segments by using two or more laterally displaced sensors of a linear array scanhead.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document along two or more laterally displaced segments by using one or more laterally moveable scanheads.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind wherein the above scanheads or sensors retrieve optical reflectance information from a document under test and use such reflectance information to determine the identity of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document by comparing one or more scanned patterns generated by scanning a document under test with one or more scanheads or one or more sensors and comparing the scanned pattern or patterns with one or more master patterns associated with genuine documents.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document by determining the size of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document by determining the color of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document based on a combination of size information and scanned/master pattern comparison.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document based on a combination of color information and scanned/master pattern comparison.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document based on a combination of size information, color information, and scanned/master pattern comparison.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which only selected ones of a number of scanheads or sensors are activated to scan a document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which scanned patterns are generated only from the output or data derived therefrom of selected ones of a number of scanheads or sensors which are activated to scan a document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors to scan a document is based on size information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors to scan a document is based on color information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the lateral positioning of one or more moveable scanheads is based on size and/or color information detected from the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of the output or data derived therefrom of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors for the generation of scanned patterns is based on size information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of the output or data derived therefrom of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors for the generation of scanned patterns is based on color information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning either side or both sides of a document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the amount of information that must be processed is reduced by tailoring the areas from which scanned patterns are derived, such reduction being based on pre-scan information detected from a document such as the size and/or color of a document to be scanned.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the amount of information that must be processed is reduced by tailoring the data which must be assembled into one or more scanned patterns, such reduction being based on information detected from a document during the scanning process itself, the information detected during the scanning process itself including, for example, size and/or color information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which size and/or color information detected from a document is used to generate a preliminary set of potentially matching documents and in which one or more scanned patterns generated from a document are compared with master patterns chosen from the preliminary set.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads in a centered or justified manner along a transport path.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads along a transport path and in which one or more sensors separate from the one or more scanheads are used to determine the lateral positioning of the document within the transport path.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads along a transport path and in which the lateral positioning of the document within the transport path is determined by analyzing the output of one or more scanheads.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads along a transport path and in which the skew of the document is determined by analyzing of output of one or more scanheads or analyzing the output of one or more separate sensors.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of accepting documents fed either face up or face down.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of accepting documents fed in either the forward or reverse direction, i.e., top edge first or top edge last.

A related object of the present invention is to provide such an improved currency discrimination and counting apparatus which is compact, economical, and has uncomplicated construction and operation.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved currency scanning and counting machine which is relatively simple and compact, while at the same time providing a variety of advanced features which make the machine convenient and useful to the operator.

Another object of this invention is to provide such an improved currency scanning and counting machine that is relatively inexpensive to manufacture and maintain, and which also facilitates service and maintenance. In this connection, a related object of the invention is to provide such a machine having a relatively small number of parts, and in which most of the parts are arranged in a manner to have a long operating life with little or no maintenance.

It is a further object of this invention to provide such a machine that is capable of operating at a faster throughput rate than any previous machine able to determine the denomination of the scanned bills.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for identifying a currency as belonging to a set of one or more currency bills.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for determining the identity of a currency bill.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method of generating modified scanned patterns.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method of generating modified master patterns.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for determining the identity of a currency bill by comparing a modified version of a scanned pattern with one or more master patterns.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for determining the identity of a currency bill by comparing modified versions of one or more master patterns with a scanned pattern.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus using an improved pattern generation method for improving the ability of a discrimination system to accurately reject improper bills while reducing the likelihood of rejecting genuine bills.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus that is capable of flagging unidentified bills.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus that flags unidentified bills by suspending operation of the apparatus.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus of the above type that can conveniently be caused to resume operation after an operator of the apparatus has examined an unidentified bill.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus of the above type whereby the denomination or kind of any unidentified bill may be conveniently added to appropriate counters and the operation of the apparatus conveniently resumed when an operator determines that an unidentified bill is acceptable and whereby the operation of the apparatus may be conveniently resumed without adversely affecting any counter when an operator determines that an unidentified bill is not acceptable.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus whereby the discriminator prompts the operator as to the identity of any flagged bills, such as by prompting the operator as to the denomination of any bill whose denomination has not been determined by the discriminator.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document discriminating apparatus that can flag a document based on the forward or reverse orientation of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document discriminating apparatus that can sort between documents having a forward orientation and documents having a reverse orientation.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents including currency documents.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating United States currency bills.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents which may be employed in a currency discriminating apparatus.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents including currency documents by illuminating a document with ultraviolet light.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents which improves the ability of a system to accurately reject improper documents while reducing the likelihood of rejecting genuine documents.

Other objects and advantages of the invention will become apparent upon reading the following detailed description in conjunction with the accompanying drawings.

In accordance with one embodiment of the present invention, the foregoing objectives are realized by providing a currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills. This device includes an input receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated, a discriminating unit for discriminating the currency bills by denomination, an output receptacle for receiving the currency bills after they have been discriminated, and a transport mechanism for transporting the currency bills, one at a time, from the input receptacle past the discriminating unit and to the output receptacle. The transport mechanism includes stripping wheels for stripping the lowermost bill from a stack of bills in the input receptacle, and a pair of driven transport rolls on opposite sides of the discriminating unit for transporting each bill past the discriminating unit. One of the transport rolls also receives bills directly from the stripping wheels and transports the received bills to the region between the pair of transport rolls.

In one embodiment, a pair of photosensors are located at opposite sides of the bill transport path, each photosensor including a light source and a protective lens on one side of the bill, and a photodetector and a protective lens on the other side of the bill. The lenses for both the light sources and the photodetectors are located sufficiently close to each other that the lenses are wiped by the bills transported therebetween.

In accordance with one embodiment of the present invention, the objectives enumerated above are achieved by scanning a document along one or more segments, generating one or more scanned patterns therefrom, and comparing the one or more scanned patterns to one or more master patterns associated with scans along corresponding segments of genuine documents. According to one embodiment, bills are fed in and scanned across their narrow dimension. According to another embodiment, bills are fed in and scanned across their wide dimension. One embodiment of the present invention involves a technique based on the optical sensing of reflectance characteristics obtained by illuminating and scanning a document such as a currency bill along an appropriately selected segment or segments of a document. Light reflected from the bill as it is optically scanned is detected and used as an analog representation of the variation in the dark and light content of the printed pattern or indicia on the bill surface.

A series of such detected reflectance signals are obtained by sampling and digitally processing, under microprocessor control, the reflected light at a plurality of predefined sample points as the bill is moved across the illuminated strip.

Accordingly, a fixed number of reflectance samples is obtained across the note. The data samples obtained for a bill scan are subjected to digital processing, including a normalizing process to deaccentuate variations due to contrast fluctuations in the printed pattern or indicia existing on the surface of the bill being scanned. The normalized reflectance data represent a characteristic pattern that is fairly unique for a given bill identity and incorporates sufficient distinguishing features between characteristic patterns for different bill-types so as to accurately differentiate therebetween.

By using the above approach, a series of master characteristic patterns are generated and stored using standard bills for each denomination of currency that is to be detected. The "standard" bills used to generate the master characteristic patterns are preferably bills that are slightly used bills. According to one embodiment, two or four characteristic patterns are generated and stored within system memory for each detectable bill-type. The stored patterns correspond, respectively, to optical scans performed on one or both sides of a bill along "forward" and "reverse" directions relative to the pattern printed on the bill. For bills which produce significant pattern changes when shifted slightly to the left or right, such as the $10 bill in U.S. currency, it is preferred to store two patterns for each of the "forward" and "reverse" directions, each pair of patterns for the same direction represent two scan areas that are slightly displaced from each other along the lateral dimension of the bill. The document identification system of this invention may be adapted to identify different denominations of a plurality of currency systems. Accordingly, a master set of different characteristic patterns is stored within the system memory for subsequent correlation purposes.

According to one embodiment a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, typically three, each generated by scanning a genuine bill of the given denomination.

According to one method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more genuine bills of "standard" or average quality of the given denomination. A "standard" bill is a slightly used bill, as opposed to a crisp new bill or one which has been subject to a high degree of usage.

According to another method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more new bills of the given denomination and some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more old bills of the given denomination.

According to the correlation technique of this invention, the pattern generated by scanning a bill under test and processing the sampled data is compared with each of the prestored characteristic patterns within a preliminary set (to be described below) to generate, for each comparison, a correlation number representing the extent of similarity between corresponding ones of the plurality of data samples for the compared patterns. Bill identification is based on designating the scanned bill as belonging to the bill-type corresponding to the stored characteristic pattern for which the correlation number resulting from pattern comparison is determined to be the highest. The possibility of a scanned bill having its identity mischaracterized following the comparison of characteristic patterns is significantly reduced by defining a bi-level threshold of correlation that must be satisfied for a "positive" call to be made.

In essence, the present invention utilizes an optical sensing and correlation technique for positively identifying any of a plurality of different bill-types regardless of whether the bill is scanned along the "forward" or "reverse" directions. Likewise in one embodiment of the present invention, the system is capable of identifying any of a plurality of different bill-types regardless of whether the bill is fed into the system with a "face up" or "face down" orientation. Face orientation can be accommodated by storing master patterns scanned from both sides of genuine documents, using a system having one or more scanheads on a single side of a document transport path, and comparing scanned patterns to master patterns retrieved from both sides of genuine documents. Alternatively, scanheads may be placed on both sides of a document transport path, scanned patterns retrieved from respective sides can be compared to master patterns from both sides or master patterns from corresponding sides where face orientation can be determined. Additionally, a cross check can be performed so that the identity determined by a match of patterns from one side of a document is consistent with the identity indicated by comparing patterns from the other side of the document. For both one-sided and two-sided scanhead systems, where the face orientation of a document can be determined before patterns are compared, scanned patterns from one side of a document can be compared only to master patterns retrieved from a corresponding side. Similar methods can be employed for accommodating documents fed in forward and reverse directions.

In one embodiment, the invention is particularly adapted to be implemented with a system programmed to track each identified currency identity so as to conveniently present aggregate totals for bills that have been identified at the end of a scan run. One embodiment incorporates an abbreviated curved transport path for accepting currency bills that are to be counted and transporting the bills about their narrow dimension across a scanhead located downstream of the curved path and onto a conventional stacking station where sensed and counted bills are collected. In one embodiment, a scanhead of the present invention operates in conjunction with an optical encoder which is adapted to initiate the capture of a predefined number of reflectance data samples when a bill (and, thus, the indicia or pattern printed thereupon) moves across a coherent strip of light focused by the scanhead.

In one embodiment, a scanhead of the present invention uses a pair of light-emitting diodes ("LEDs") to focus a coherent light strip of predefined dimensions and having a normalized distribution of light intensity across the illuminated area. The LEDs are angularly disposed and focus the desired strip of light onto the narrow dimension of a bill positioned flat across the scanning surface of the scanhead. A photodetector detects light reflected from the bill. The sampling of the photodetector output is controlled by the optical encoder to obtain the desired reflectance samples. In one embodiment, initiation of sampling is based upon detection of the edge of a bill. In another embodiment for bills having a borderline surrounding the remaining printed indicia, initiation of sampling is based upon detection of the borderline of a bill.

Some of the above described techniques and apparatus as tailored to scanning U.S. currency are more fully disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting" incorporated herein in its entirety.

In adapting the currency discriminating method and apparatus disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196 to optimize the scanning of currencies from countries other than the United

States, it is first noted that while it has been found that scanning along the central portion of the green side of U.S. bills provides good patterns to discriminate between the different U.S. denominations, foreign bills may require scanning along segments located in locations other than the center and the desirable areas to scan bills can vary from bill-type to bill-type. For example, it may be determined that it is desirable to scan German marks in the forward direction along a segment 1 inch (2.54 cm) to the left of center along the top face of a bill while it may be desirable to scan British pounds along a segment 1.5 inches (3.81 cm) to the right of center. To provide a system capable of scanning along a plurality of laterally displaced segments, the present invention utilizes either a plurality of laterally displaced stationary scanheads, one or more laterally moveable scanheads, or a linear array scanhead having a plurality of laterally displaced sensors. In one embodiment, the scanheads or sensors are arranged in a symmetrical manner about the center of document to be scanned. Such a symmetrical arrangement aids in providing a system which is capable of accepting bills fed in both the forward and reverse directions.

Additionally, while all denominations of U.S. currency have the same size, currencies from other countries may vary in size from country to country as well as from denomination to denomination for currency from the same country. In one embodiment of the present invention, variance in size is accommodated by incorporating means for determining the size of a document. These size determining means may include sensors separate from the scanheads or scanning sensors discussed above or alternatively, in some embodiments of the present invention, may include the scanheads or scanning sensors discussed above which are used for the retrieval of scanned characteristic patterns. Based on the size information retrieved from a bill, selected scanheads may be activated, laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned and activated, and/or selected sensors in a linear array scanhead may be activated to permit scanning along appropriate segments of a bill based on its size. Alternatively, all scanheads or scanning sensors may be activated and the output of appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be processed to generate scanned patterns based on the size of a bill. Furthermore, based on the size of a bill, a preliminary determination can be made as to which of a plurality of genuine bill-types a bill under test may potentially match. Based on such a preliminary determination, the comparison of generated scanned patterns can be limited to only master patterns associated with bill-types chosen from the preliminary set of potentially matching bills.

Likewise, the transport mechanism which transports documents to be scanned past the above described scanheads may be designed to transport documents in a centered manner, left or right justified manner, in a non-controlled lateral positioned manner, in a non-skewed manner, or in a skewed manner. Sensors separate and distinct from the above described scanheads or the above described scanheads themselves may be used to determine the lateral positioning of transported bills and/or their degree of skew. Based on a determination of the laterally positioning of a bill and/or its skew, appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be activated or laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned and activated or the output from appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be processed to generate scanned patterns based on the lateral positioning and/or skew of the bill.

Additionally, while all denominations of U.S. currency have the same colors (a "green" side and a "black" side), currencies from other countries may vary in color from country to country as well as from denomination to denomination for currency from the same country. In one embodiment of the present invention, variance in color is accommodated by incorporating means for determining the color of a document. These color determining means may include sensors separate from the scanheads or sensors discussed above or alternatively, in some embodiments of the present invention, may include the appropriately modified scanheads or sensors discussed above which are used for the retrieval of scanned characteristic patterns. For example, colored filters may be placed in front of the above described scanheads or sensors. Based on the color information retrieved from a bill, selected scanheads may be activated, laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned and activated, and/or selected sensors in a linear array scanhead may be activated to permit scanning along appropriate segments of a bill based on its color. Alternatively, all scanheads or scanning sensors may be activated and the output of appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be processed to generate scanned patterns based on the color of a bill. Furthermore, based on the color of a bill, a preliminary determination can be made as to which of a plurality of genuine bill-types a bill under test may potentially match. Based on such a preliminary determination, the comparison of generated scanned patterns can be limited to only master patterns associated with bill-types chosen from the preliminary set of potentially matching bills.

In one embodiment of the present invention, both color and size information may be utilized as described above.

In one embodiment of the present invention, scanheads are positioned on both sides of a document transport path so as to permit scanning of either or both sides of a document.

According to one embodiment, an apparatus for currency discrimination comprises first and second stationary scanheads, disposed on opposite sides of a bill transport path, for scanning respective first and second opposing surfaces of a bill traveling along the bill transport path and for producing respective output signals. The bill travels along the transport path in the direction of a predetermined dimension of the bill. A memory stores master characteristic patterns corresponding to associated predetermined surfaces (e.g., green surfaces) of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills. Sampling circuitry samples the output signals associated with the respective first and second opposing surfaces of the scanned bill. A signal processor is programmed to determine which one of the first and second opposing surfaces corresponds to the associated predetermined surfaces of the plurality of denominations of genuine bills. According to one embodiment adapted for discriminating, for example, U.S. bills, the determination as to which surface of a bill corresponds to a predetermined surface is made by detecting the borderlines on each side of a bill and determining the relative times of detection of each borderline. The processor then correlates the output signal associated with the one of the first and second opposing surfaces corresponding to the associated predetermined surfaces with the master characteristic patterns. If the degree of correlation between the selected output signal and any of the stored characteristic patterns is greater than a predetermined threshold, then the denomination of the bill is positively identified.

For each scanhead, initiation of sampling is based upon detection of the change in reflectance value that occurs when the outer border of the printed pattern on a bill is encountered relative to the reflectance value obtained at the edge of

the bill where no printed pattern exists. According to one embodiment of this invention, illuminated strips of at least two different dimensions are used for the scanning process. A narrow strip is used initially to detect the starting point of the printed pattern on a bill and is adapted to distinguish the thin borderline that typically marks the starting point of and encloses the printed pattern on a bill. For the rest of the preselected dimension scanning following detection of the borderline of the printed pattern, a substantially wider strip of light is used to collect the predefined number of samples for a bill scan. The generation and storage of characteristic patterns using standard notes and the subsequent comparison and correlation procedure for classifying the scanned bill as belonging to one of several predefined currency denominations is based on the above-described sensing and correlation technique.

Furthermore, in accordance with another feature of the present invention, the objectives enumerated above in connection with correlating patterns are achieved by repetitively comparing a scanned pattern with multiple sets of master patterns until a sufficient match is found, or alternatively, by repetitively comparing a set of original master patterns with multiple scanned patterns until a sufficient match is found. The multiple sets of master patterns comprise an original set of master patterns plus one or more sets of modified versions of the original master patterns. The multiple scanned patterns comprise an original scanned pattern plus one or more modified versions of the original scanned patterns. Each modified pattern comprises one or more replicated data values from a corresponding original pattern to which each modified pattern is to be compared. Alternatively, each modified master pattern comprises one or more data values which are set equal to zero.

Briefly, in accordance with one embodiment, an improved method of generating modified scanned or master patterns for use in a discrimination system capable of identifying one or more currency bills is provided. Each of the scanned and master patterns comprises a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill and each pattern has a leading end and a trailing end. Each of the data values has an associated sequence position. The modified scanned or master patterns are generated by designating either the scanned pattern or the master pattern for modification and inserting a predetermined number, R, of data values at either the trailing end of the sequence of data values of the designated pattern when the modification is performed in the forward direction or the leading end of the sequence of data values of the designated pattern when the modification is performed in the backward direction. This modification effectively removes R data values from the leading or trailing end of the designated pattern. Either the last R data values of the designated pattern are set equal to the last R data values of the non-designated pattern when the modification is performed in the forward direction or the first R data values of the designated pattern are set equal to the first R data values of the non-designated pattern when the modification is performed in the backward direction. Alternatively, the modified master patterns are generated by inserting R data samples at the leading or trailing ends of the master patterns and by setting the first R or last R data samples of the modified master pattern equal to zero.

According to one method, a modified scanned pattern is generated by removing a predetermined number of leading or trailing data values of an original scanned pattern. Trailing or leading data values, respectively, are added to the modified scanned pattern with the added data values being copied from corresponding sequence positions of a corresponding master pattern. Alternatively, instead of explicitly removing leading or trailing data values, the leading or trailing data values may be effectively removed by adding data values to the opposite end of the scanned pattern and treating the modified scanned pattern as not including the "removed" leading or trailing data values.

According to another method, a modified master pattern is generated in a similar manner except that added trailing or leading data values of the modified master pattern are set equal to data values copied from corresponding sequence positions of a scanned pattern.

According to another method, a modified master pattern is generated in a similar manner except that added trailing or leading data values of the modified master pattern are set equal to zero.

The above described modified patterns or pattern generation methods may be employed in currency identification systems to compensate for misalignment between scanned and master patterns.

According to another method, a scanned pattern comprising a number of data values is compared with one or more master patterns also comprising a number of data values. The scanned and master patterns represent analog variations in characteristic information retrieved from bills along corresponding segments. For example, the patterns may comprise 64 data values generated by sampling the output of a photodetector as a bill is moved relative to a scanhead, the output of the photodetector representing analog variation in the reflectance of light along a given segment of the bill. If none of the master patterns sufficiently match the scanned pattern, the scanned pattern may be modified and the modified scanned pattern compared to the master patterns. For example, data values #1 and #2 may be removed from the scanned pattern sequence, scanned patterns #3 and #4 may be made the first and second values in the modified sequence with subsequent data values modified accordingly. As a result of such a process, the original data values #63 and #64 now become modified data values #61 and #62. As a result of the above steps an incomplete modified pattern of data values #1–#62 is generated. According to one embodiment, modified data values #63 and #64 are generated by replicating data values #63 and #64 of the master patterns to which the modified scanned pattern is to be compared. If the modified patterns do not sufficiently match any of the master patterns, the modification process may be reiterated except that new scanned modified values #61–#64 are generated by replicating master pattern values #61–#64. This process is repeated until a sufficient match is found or until a predetermined number of modification iterations have occurred.

According to another embodiment, scanned patterns may be modified backwards instead of the forward modification described above.

According to another embodiment, master patterns may be modified instead of scanned patterns. According to this method, data values from scanned patterns are replicated into appropriate locations in modified master pattern sequences.

According to another embodiment, trailing or leading sequence positions of modified master patterns may be filled with zeros instead of replicated data values from a scanned pattern to which modified master patterns are to be compared.

According to another embodiment, modified master patterns with trailing or leading data values equal to zero are stored in a memory of an identification system along with

corresponding unmodified master patterns, the master patterns and modified master patterns being stored before a bill under test is scanned by the identification system. When a bill under test is scanned by the identification system it is compared to one or more of the master patterns. If the identity of the bill can not be determined based on this comparison, the scanned pattern is compared with one or more of the modified master patterns. This process can be repeated, with the scanned pattern being compared to multiply modified master patterns if necessary.

According to another embodiment, a currency evaluation device is provided that is able to discriminate among bills of different denominations from two or more currency systems. In one embodiment, such a device is provided that is able to discriminate among both Canadian and German bills of different denominations. In one embodiment, such a device utilizes three scanheads when scanning Canadian bills and a single scanhead when scanning German bills. The device is able to accept faced Canadian and German bills fed in either the forward or reverse directions. According to one embodiment, the operator of the device pre-declares whether Canadian or German bills are to be discriminated. According to one embodiment the measured length of the narrow dimension of German bills is utilized in discriminating German bills. To accommodate for possible lateral shifting of bills relative to the scanhead, multiple German master patterns associated with laterally displaced scans are stored for some denominations. To accommodate for possible lateral shifting of bills relative to the scanheads, multiple Canadian patterns associated with laterally displaced scans are generated and averaged in generated stored Canadian master patterns. To compensate for problems associated with triggering scanning relative to the edge of a bill, multiple patterns are stored for both Canadian and German bills associated with both leading and lagging printed indicia.

In accordance with another embodiment of the present invention, a correlation technique is utilized whereby a scanned pattern generated from the green side of a test bill is correlated against stored green-side master patterns. If as a result of the green-side correlation, the denomination of the test bill can not be called, a scanned pattern generated from the black side of the test bill is correlated against stored black-side master patterns. More particularly, if the green-side correlation results in an indication that the test bill is a $20, $50, or $100 bill but not with sufficiently high certainty so as to permit calling the denomination of the test bill, then the black-side scanned pattern is correlated against one or more black-side master patterns, provided the best call green-side correlation number is greater than a predetermined threshold.

According to one embodiment, documents, including currency bills, are discriminated by comparing a scanned pattern retrieved from a first side of a test document with one or more stored master patterns retrieved from a first side of one or more genuine documents and comparing a scanned pattern retrieved from a second side of a test document with one or more stored master patterns retrieved from a second side of one or more genuine documents.

According to one embodiment a currency discriminator is provided that counts and discriminates bills as they pass a discriminating unit and that flags an unidentified bill or one having a predetermined characteristic, for example a bill having a specified orientation, by transferring the flagged bill to a location where it can be conveniently examined by an operator and then suspending the operation of the discriminator. The operator may then examine the bill and determine whether the bill is acceptable or not. Denomination selection elements such as keys are provided to enable the operator with the depression of a single button to indicate the denomination of an unidentified but acceptable bill, to cause the value of the bill to be reflected in any appropriate counters, and to cause the discriminator to resume operation. A continuation selection element is also provided to enable the operator to cause the discriminator to resume operation without adversely affecting any counters when an unidentified bill is determined to be unacceptable.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a discriminator is provided with a single output receptacle in which all bills are stacked after they pass by the discriminating unit. When an unidentified bill is detected, the discriminator halts operation with the unidentified bill positioned at a predetermined location within the stack such as at the top or back of the stack of bills in the output receptacle or at a predetermined position just prior to the stack. The bill may then be conveniently examined by the operator.

According to another embodiment of the present invention, a discriminator is provided with an examining station where unidentified bills are transferred before the discriminator halts operation. Upon determination that a bill is acceptable, the bill may then be transferred to the output receptacle in a single output receptacle discriminator or to an output receptacle associated with the denomination or other characteristic of the bill in a multi-output receptacle discriminator. Additionally, a reject receptacle may be provided for receiving bills which are determined to be unacceptable.

In one embodiment, a discriminator is provided with two or more output receptacles. All flagged bills are delivered to a separate output receptacle while the discriminator continues to process any remaining bills. Alternatively, bills that a positively determined to be suspect bills may be delivered to one output receptacle, all other flagged bills may be delivered to a second output receptacle, and all unflagged and identified bills may be delivered to one or more additional output receptacles. In another embodiment, suspect bills are routed to a separate output receptacle while all other bills are routed to one or more additional output receptacles.

The discriminator, in another embodiment is designed to suspend operation upon encountering one or more types of flagged bills. For example, the discriminator may halt operation when a no call bill is detected but not when a suspect bill is detected, e.g., when suspect bills are routed to an output receptacle separate from the output receptacle or receptacles to which other bills are routed. According to another embodiment, the discriminator does not suspend its operation upon detecting a flagged bill but rather continues processing any remaining bills, e.g., when flagged bills are routed to one or more output receptacles separate from the output receptacle or receptacles to which non-flagged bills are delivered.

According to one embodiment, the value of any flagged bill such as a no call is reconciled on-the-fly, that is, at the time such bill is encountered. According to one such embodiment, the discriminator suspends operation until the value of the flagged bill is reconciled.

According to another embodiment, the value of any flagged bills is reconciled after all bills have been processed. Alternatively, the reconciliation process may begin before all bills have been processed but without suspending the processing of the remaining bills.

According to one embodiment, denomination indicating means are provided to permit the operator to indicate the value of a flagged bill such as a no call. Examples of denomination indicating means include, for example,

denomination selection elements such as keys, buttons, switches, lights, and displayed keys, denominations, or messages. Such elements may be selected by, for example, pressing an appropriate one of such elements or using scroll keys. The selection of a denomination may cause that denomination to be indicated to the discriminator or, alternatively, a denomination may first have to be selected and then indicated to the discriminator by selecting an accept, yes, or enter key.

According to one embodiment, prompting means are provided whereby the discriminator is able to suggest a denomination to the operator of the discriminator in connection with a flagged bill such a no call. Examples of criteria used in prompting a denomination to the operator in connection with a flagged bill include suggesting a denomination or a sequence of denominations based on a default basis, random basis, user-defined basis, manufacturer defined basis, last bill information, last no call information, last called denomination information, historical information, comparison of scanned and reference information such as correlation information. Means for prompting a denomination may include, for example, displaying a message, highlighting or illuminating a denomination selection or indicating element or associated light.

According to another embodiment of the present invention, a discriminator discriminates a stack of bills and flags bills having a given forward/reverse orientation. Accordingly, when a stack of bills predominately oriented in the forward or reverse direction is discriminated by the discriminator, any bills oriented in the opposite forward/reverse direction may be flagged. Any flagged bills may either be removed without replacement or re-oriented in the appropriate forward or reverse direction. As a result, a stack of bills may be generated in which all bills have the same forward/reverse orientation. Alternatively, in a multi-output receptacle discriminator, instead of flagging bills based on their forward/reverse orientation, bills having a forward orientation may be routed to one output receptacle and those having a reverse orientation may be routed to another output receptacle.

Likewise a discriminator may flag or sort bills based on their face orientation, that is face up or face down, or bills not belonging to a given denomination. Furthermore, the above criteria may be combined in various operating modes of the discriminator.

In one embodiment, the discriminator optically scans an area of a bill and generates a scanned pattern from optical reflectance samples. A scanned pattern is compared with a plurality of master patterns associated with genuine bills of different denominations. Furthermore, the discriminator may store master patterns associated with both forward and reverse scans and/or both top surface and bottom surface scans of genuine bills.

In one embodiment, a bill is scanned for first and second characteristic information, utilizing the first characteristic information to determine the denomination of a scanned bill, and using the second characteristic information to verify the genuineness of the bill. More particularly, a currency evaluation device, according to the present invention, comprises detection circuitry for detecting first and second characteristic information from a scanned bill, a memory for storing sets of genuine first and second characteristic information for a plurality of denominations of genuine bills, and signal processing means for comparing the detected first and second characteristic information with the stored genuine first and second characteristic information. The signal processing means performs a first comparison whereby the detected first characteristic information is compared with the stored sets of genuine first characteristic information. This first comparison results in either an indication of the denomination of the scanned bill or an error. The results of the first comparison are used to streamline a second comparison between detected and stored second characteristic information. The second comparison compares the detected second characteristic information with stored genuine second characteristic information corresponding to the denomination indicated by the first comparison. The second comparison results in either an indication of the genuineness of the scanned bill or an error.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a document to be authenticated is illuminated with ultraviolet light and the amount of ultraviolet light which is reflected off the document is measured. Based on the amount of ultraviolet light which is detected, the document is either authenticated or rejected. In the case of documents being authenticated relative to United States currency, a bill is rejected if a high level of reflected ultraviolet light is not detected.

In another embodiment, the above objectives are achieved by illuminating a document with ultraviolet light and measuring both the amount of reflected ultraviolet light and the amount of emitted visible light. Based on the amount of ultraviolet light detected and the amount of visible light detected, a document is either authenticated or rejected. In the case of documents being authenticated relative to United States currency, a bill is rejected if either a high level of reflected ultraviolet light is not detected or even a low level of visible light is detected.

As explained above, it is known that some counterfeit United States bills fluoresce, or emit visible light, when illuminated by ultraviolet light. As genuine United States currency does not fluoresce, the emission of visible light has been employed as a means of detecting counterfeit United States currency. However, it has been found that not all counterfeit United States bills fluoresce; and hence, such counterfeits will not be detected by the above described fluorescence test.

It has been found that genuine United States currency reflects a high level of ultraviolet light when illuminated by an ultraviolet light source. It has also been found that some counterfeit United States bills do not reflect a high level of ultraviolet light. Such counterfeit bills may or may not also fluoresce under ultraviolet light. The present invention employs an authentication test wherein the amount of reflected ultraviolet light is measured and a bill is rejected if it does not reflect a high amount of ultraviolet light. By employing such a test, counterfeit United States bills which do not reflect a high level of ultraviolet light may be properly rejected.

While not all counterfeit United States bills fail to reflect a high level of ultraviolet light and hence not all counterfeit United States bills will be detected using this test, the present invention provides an additional means for detecting counterfeit bills which might otherwise go undetected. Furthermore, the likelihood of a counterfeit United States bill going undetected may be further reduced by employing an alternative embodiment of the present invention wherein both the amount of reflected ultraviolet light and the amount of emitted visible light are measured. In such a system, a bill is rejected as counterfeit if either it fails to reflect a high level of ultraviolet light or it fluoresces.

The above described embodiments may be adapted to authenticate currencies from other countries and other types

of documents such as food stamps and checks. For instance some genuine documents may be designed to reflect ultraviolet light only in certain locations and/or in a predetermined pattern. An alternative embodiment of the present invention may be designed to accept documents which exhibit similar characteristics while rejecting those which do not. Likewise, an alternative embodiment of the present invention may be employed to authenticate documents based on both their characteristics with respect to reflected ultraviolet light and their characteristics with respect to fluorescent emissions, e.g., detecting the amount, location, and/or pattern of fluorescent emissions.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** is a perspective view of a currency scanning and counting machine embodying the present invention;

FIG. **2***a* is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine of FIG. **1** illustrating a scanhead arranged on each side of a transport path;

FIG. **2***b* is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine illustrating a scanhead arranged on a single side of a transport path;

FIG. **2***c* is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine similar to that of FIG. **2***b* but illustrating the feeding and scanning of bills along their wide direction;

FIG. **2***d* is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine similar to that of FIGS. **2***a*–**2***d* illustrating the employment of a second characteristic detector;

FIG. **3** is a diagrammatic perspective illustration of the successive areas scanned during the traversing movement of a single bill across an optical sensor according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. **4***a* and **4***b* are perspective views of a bill and one area to be optically scanned on the bill;

FIGS. **5***a* and **5***b* are diagrammatic side elevation views of the scan area to be optically scanned on a bill according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. **6***a* is a perspective view of a bill showing the preferred area of a first surface to be scanned by one of the two scanheads employed in one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **6***b* is another perspective view of the bill in FIG. **6***a* showing the preferred area of a second surface to be scanned by the other of the scanheads employed in one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **6***c* is a side elevation showing the first surface of a bill scanned by an upper scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by a lower scanhead;

FIG. **6***d* is a side elevation showing the first surface of a bill scanned by a lower scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by an upper scanhead;

FIGS. **7***a* and **7***b* form a block diagram illustrating one circuit arrangement for processing and correlating reflectance data according to the optical sensing and counting technique of this invention;

FIGS. **8***a* and **8***b* comprise a flowchart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in implementing a discrimination and authentication system according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **9** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in detecting the presence of a bill adjacent the lower scanhead and the borderline on the side of the bill adjacent to the lower scanhead;

FIG. **10** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in detecting the presence of a bill adjacent the upper scanhead and the borderline on the side of the bill adjacent to the upper scanhead;

FIG. **11***a* is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the lower scanhead;

FIG. **11***b* is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the upper scanhead;

FIG. **12** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in determining which scanhead is scanning the green side of a U.S. currency bill;

FIG. **13** is a flow chart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in determining the bill denomination from the correlation results;

FIG. **14** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in decelerating and stopping the bill transport system in the event of an error;

FIG. **15***a* is a graphical illustration of representative characteristic patterns generated by narrow dimension optical scanning of a $1 currency bill in the forward direction;

FIG. **15***b* is a graphical illustration of representative characteristic patterns generated by narrow dimension optical scanning of a $2 currency bill in the reverse direction;

FIG. **15***c* is a graphical illustration of representative characteristic patterns generated by narrow dimension optical scanning of a $100 currency bill in the forward direction;

FIG. **15***d* is a graph illustrating component patterns generated by scanning old and new $20 bills according a second method according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **15***e* is a graph illustrating an pattern for a $20 bill scanned in the forward direction derived by averaging the patterns of FIG. **15***d* according a second method according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. **16***a*–*e* are graphical illustrations of the effect produced on correlation pattern by using the progressive shifting technique, according to an embodiment of this invention;

FIGS. **17***a*–**17***c* are a flowchart illustrating one embodiment of a modified pattern generation method according to the present invention;

FIG. **18***a* is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the execution of multiple correlations of the scan data from a single bill;

FIG. **18***b* is a flow chart illustrating a modified sequential procedure of that of FIG. **18***a;*

FIG. **19***a* is a flow chart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in determining the bill denomination from the correlation results using data retrieved from the green side of U.S. bills according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. **19***b* and **19***c* are a flow chart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in determining the bill denomination from the correlation results using data retrieved from the black side of U.S. bills;

FIG. **20***a* is an enlarged vertical section taken approximately through the center of the machine, but showing the various transport rolls in side elevation;

FIG. **20***b* is a top plan view of the interior mechanism of the machine of FIG. **1** for transporting bills across the optical scanheads, and also showing the stacking wheels at the front of the machine;

FIG. **21***a* is an enlarged perspective view of the bill transport mechanism which receives bills from the stripping wheels in the machine of FIG. **1**;

FIG. **21***b* is a cross-sectional view of the bill transport mechanism depicted in FIG. **21** along line **21***b*;

FIG. **22** is a side elevation of the machine of FIG. **1**, with the side panel of the housing removed;

FIG. **23** is an enlarged bottom plan view of the lower support member in the machine of FIG. **1** and the passive transport rolls mounted on that member;

FIG. **24** is a sectional view taken across the center of the bottom support member of FIG. **23** across the narrow dimension thereof;

FIG. **25** is an end elevation of the upper support member which includes the upper scanhead in the machine of FIG. **1**, and the sectional view of the lower support member mounted beneath the upper support member;

FIG. **26** is a section taken through the centers of both the upper and lower support members, along the long dimension of the lower support member shown in FIG. **23**;

FIG. **27** is a top plan view of the upper support member which includes the upper scanhead;

FIG. **28** is a bottom plan view of the upper support member which includes the upper scanhead;

FIG. **29** is an illustration of the light distribution produced about one of the optical scanheads;

FIGS. **30***a* and **30***b* are diagrammatic illustrations of the location of two auxiliary photo sensors relative to a bill passed thereover by the transport and scanning mechanism shown in FIGS. **20***a*–**28**;

FIG. **31** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a ramp-up routine for increasing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism from zero to top speed;

FIG. **32** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a ramp-to-slow-speed routine for decreasing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism from top speed to slow speed;

FIG. **33** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a ramp-to-zero-speed routine for decreasing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism to zero;

FIG. **34** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a pause-after-ramp routine for delaying the feedback loop while the bill transport mechanism changes speeds;

FIG. **35** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a feedback loop routine for monitoring and stabilizing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism;

FIG. **36** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a doubles detection routine for detecting overlapped bills;

FIG. **37** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a routine for detecting sample data representing dark blemishes on a bill;

FIG. **38** is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a routine for maintaining a desired readhead voltage level;

FIG. **39** is a top view of a bill and size determining sensors according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **40** is a top view of a bill illustrating multiple areas to be optically scanned on a bill according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **41***a* is a graph illustrating a scanned pattern which is offset from a corresponding master pattern;

FIG. **41***b* is a graph illustrating the same patterns of FIG. **41***a* after the scanned pattern is shifted relative to the master pattern;

FIG. **42** is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **43** is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to another embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **44** is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to another embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **45** is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to another embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **46** is a top view of a staggered scanhead arrangement according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **47***a* is a top view of a linear array scanhead according to one embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a centered fashion;

FIG. **47***b* is a side view of a linear array scanhead according to one embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a centered fashion;

FIG. **48** is a top view of a linear array scanhead according to another embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a non-centered fashion;

FIG. **49** is a top view of a linear array scanhead according to another embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a skewed fashion;

FIGS. **50***a* and **50***b* are a flowchart of the operation of a currency discrimination system according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **51** is a top view of a triple scanhead arrangement utilized in a discriminating device able to discriminate both Canadian and German bills according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **52** is a top view of Canadian bill illustrating the areas scanned by the triple scanhead arrangement of FIG. **51** according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **53** is a flowchart of the threshold tests utilized in calling the denomination of a Canadian bill according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **54***a* illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 10 DM German patterns according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **54***b* illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM German patterns according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **55** is a flowchart of the threshold tests utilized in calling the denomination of a German bill according to one embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. **56** is a functional block diagram illustrating one embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. **57** is a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. **58***a* is a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. **58***b* is a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. **58***c* is a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. **58***d* is a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. **59** is an enlarged plan view of the control and display panel in the machine of FIG. **1**;

FIG. **60***a* is a side view of one embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention;

FIG. **60***b* is a top view of the embodiment of FIG. **60***a* along the direction **60***b;*

FIG. **60***c* is a top view of the embodiment of FIG. **60***a* along the direction **60***c;*

FIG. **61** is a functional block diagram illustrating one embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention;

FIGS. **62–67** are enlarged plan views of various embodiments of control panels; and

FIG. **68** is an exploded perspective view of a touch screen device.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

While the invention is susceptible to various modifications and alternative forms, specific embodiments thereof have been shown by way of example in the drawings and will herein be described in detail. It should be understood, however, that it is not intended to limit the invention to the particular forms disclosed, but on the contrary, the intention is to cover all modifications, equivalents, and alternatives falling within the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the appended claims.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a currency discrimination system adapted to U.S. currency is described in connection with, for example, FIGS. **1–38**. Subsequently, modifications to such a discrimination system will be described in obtaining a currency discrimination system in accordance with other embodiments of the present invention, such a currency discriminator systems having multiple scanheads per side. Furthermore, while the embodiments below entail the scanning of currency bills, the system of the present invention is applicable to other documents as well. For example, the system of the present invention may be employed in conjunction with stock certificates, bonds, and postage and food stamps.

Referring now to FIGS. **1** and **2***a*, there is shown one embodiment of a currency scanning and counting machine **10** according to the present invention. The machine **10** includes an input receptacle or bill accepting station **12** where stacks of currency bills that need to be identified and counted are positioned. Bills in the input receptacle are acted upon by a bill separating station **14** which functions to pick out or separate one bill at a time for being sequentially relayed by a bill transport mechanism **16** (FIG. **2***a*), according to a precisely predetermined transport path, between a pair of scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* where the currency denomination of the bill is scanned and identified. In one embodiment, bills are scanned and identified at a rate in excess of 800 bills per minute. In the embodiment depicted, each scanhead **18***a*, **18***b* is an optical scanhead that scans for characteristic information from a scanned bill **17** which is used to identify the denomination of the bill. The scanned bill **17** is then transported to an output receptacle or bill stacking station **20** where bills so processed are stacked for subsequent removal.

Each optical scanhead **18***a*, **18***b* preferably comprises a pair of light sources **22** directing light onto the bill transport path so as to illuminate a substantially rectangular light strip **24** upon a currency bill **17** positioned on the transport path adjacent the scanhead **18**. Light reflected off the illuminated strip **24** is sensed by a photodetector **26** positioned between the two light sources. The analog output of the photodetector **26** is converted into a digital signal by means of an analog-to-digital (ADC) convertor unit **28** whose output is fed as a digital input to a central processing unit (CPU) **30**.

While scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* of FIG. **2***a* are optical scanheads, it should be understood that it may be designed to detect a variety of characteristic information from currency bills. Additionally, the scanhead may employ a variety of detection means such as magnetic, optical, electrical conductivity, and capacitive sensors. Use of such sensors is discussed in more detail below (see e.g., FIG. **2***d*).

Referring again to FIG. **2***a*, the bill transport path is defined in such a way that the transport mechanism **16** moves currency bills with the narrow dimension of the bills being parallel to the transport path and the scan direction. Alternatively, the system **10** may be designed to scan bills along their long dimension or along a skewed dimension. As a bill **17** traverses the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*, the coherent light strip **24** effectively scans the bill across the narrow dimension of the bill. In the embodiment depicted, the transport path is so arranged that a currency bill **17** is scanned across a central section of the bill along its narrow dimension, as shown in FIG. **2***a*. Each scanhead functions to detect light reflected from the bill as it moves across the illuminated light strip **24** and to provide an analog representation of the variation in reflected light, which, in turn, represents the variation in the dark and light content of the printed pattern or indicia on the surface of the bill. This variation in light reflected from the narrow dimension scanning of the bills serves as a measure for distinguishing, with a high degree of confidence, among a plurality of currency denominations which the system is programmed to handle.

A series of such detected reflectance signals are obtained across the narrow dimension of the bill, or across a selected segment thereof, and the resulting analog signals are digitized under control of the CPU **30** to yield a fixed number of digital reflectance data samples. The data samples are then subjected to a normalizing routine for processing the sampled data for improved correlation and for smoothing out variations due to "contrast" fluctuations in the printed pattern existing on the bill surface. The normalized reflectance data represents a characteristic pattern that is unique for a given bill denomination and provides sufficient distinguishing features among characteristic patterns for different currency denominations.

In order to ensure strict correspondence between reflectance samples obtained by narrow dimension scanning of successive bills, the reflectance sampling process is preferably controlled through the CPU **30** by means of an optical encoder **32** which is linked to the bill transport mechanism **16** and precisely tracks the physical movement of the bill **17** between the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*. More specifically, the optical encoder **32** is linked to the rotary motion of the drive motor which generates the movement imparted to the bill along the transport path. In addition, the mechanics of the feed mechanism ensure that positive contact is maintained between the bill and the transport path, particularly when the bill is being scanned by the scanheads. Under these conditions, the optical encoder **32** is capable of precisely tracking the movement of the bill **17** relative to the light strips **24** generated by the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* by monitoring the rotary motion of the drive motor.

The outputs of the photodetectors **26** are monitored by the CPU **30** to initially detect the presence of the bill adjacent the scanheads and, subsequently, to detect the starting point of the printed pattern on the bill, as represented by the thin borderline **17***a* which typically encloses the printed indicia on currency bills. Once the borderline **17***a* has been detected, the optical encoder **32** is used to control the timing and number of reflectance samples that are obtained from the outputs of the photodetectors **26** as the bill **17** moves across the scanheads.

FIG. **2***b* illustrates one embodiment of a currency scanning and counting machine **10** similar to that of FIG. **2***a* but having a scanhead on only a single side of the transport path.

FIG. **2***c* illustrates one embodiment of a currency scanning and counting machine **10** similar to that of FIG. **2***b* but illustrating feeding and scanning of bills along their wide direction.

As illustrated in FIGS. **2***b*–**2***c*, the transport mechanism **16** moves currency bills with a preselected one of their two dimensions (narrow or wide) being parallel to the transport path and the scan direction. FIGS. **2***b* and **4***a* illustrate bills oriented with their narrow dimension "W" parallel to the direction of movement and scanning while FIGS. **2***c* and **4***b* illustrate bills oriented with their wide dimension "L" parallel to the direction of movement and scanning.

Referring now to FIG. **2***d*, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating one embodiment of a currency discriminating and authenticating system according to the present invention. The operation of the system of FIG. **2***d* is the same as that of FIG. **2***a* except as modified below. The system **10** includes a bill accepting station **12** where stacks of currency bills that need to be identified, authenticated, and counted are positioned. Accepted bills are acted upon by a bill separating station **14** which functions to pick out or separate one bill at a time for being sequentially relayed by a bill transport mechanism **16**, according to a precisely predetermined transport path, across two scanheads **18** and **39** where the currency denomination of the bill is identified and the genuineness of the bill is authenticated. In the embodiment depicted, scanhead **18** is an optical scanhead that scans for a first type of characteristic information from a scanned bill **17** which is used to identify the bill's denomination. A second scanhead **39** scans for a second type of characteristic information from the scanned bill **17**. While in the illustrated embodiment scanheads **18** and **39** are separate and distinct, it is understood that these may be incorporated into a single scanhead. For example, where the first characteristic sensed is intensity of reflected light and the second characteristic sensed is color, a single optical scanhead having a plurality of detectors, one or more without filters and one or more with colored filters, may be employed (U.S. Pat. No. 4,992,860 incorporated herein by reference). The scanned bill is then transported to a bill stacking station **20** where bills so processed are stacked for subsequent removal.

The optical scanhead **18** of the embodiment depicted in FIG. **2***d* comprises at least one light source **22** directing a beam of coherent light downwardly onto the bill transport path so as to illuminate a substantially rectangular light strip **24** upon a currency bill **17** positioned on the transport path below the scanhead **18**. Light reflected off the illuminated strip **24** is sensed by a photodetector **26** positioned directly above the strip. The analog output of photodetector **26** is converted into a digital signal by means of an analog-to-digital (ADC) convertor unit **28** whose output is fed as a digital input to a central processing unit (CPU) **30**.

The second scanhead **39** comprises at least one detector **41** for sensing a second type of characteristic information from a bill. The analog output of the detector **41** is converted into a digital signal by means of a second analog to digital converter **43** whose output is also fed as a digital input to the central processing unit (CPU) **30**.

While scanhead **18** in the embodiment of FIG. **2***d* is an optical scanhead, it should be understood that the first and second scanheads **18** and **39** may be designed to detect a variety of characteristic information from currency bills. Additionally these scanheads may employ a variety of detection means such as magnetic or optical sensors. For example, a variety of currency characteristics can be measured using magnetic sensing. These include detection of patterns of changes in magnetic flux (U.S. Pat. No. 3,280,974), patterns of vertical grid lines in the portrait area of bills (U.S. Pat. No. 3,870,629), the presence of a security thread (U.S. Pat. No. 5,151,607), total amount of magnetizable material of a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,617,458), patterns from sensing the strength of magnetic fields along a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,593,184), and other patterns and counts from scanning different portions of the bill such as the area in which the denomination is written out (U.S. Pat. No. 4,356,473).

With regards to optical sensing, a variety of currency characteristics can be measured such as detection of density (U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,447), color (U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,490,846; 3,496,370; 3,480,785), length and thickness (U.S. Pat. No. 4,255,651), the presence of a security thread (U.S. Pat. No. 5,151,607) and holes (U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,447), and other patterns of reflectance and transmission (U.S. Pat. No. 3,496,370; 3,679,314; 3,870,629; 4,179,685). Color detection techniques may employ color filters, colored lamps, and/or dichroic beamsplitters (U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,841,358; 4,658,289; 4,716,456; 4,825,246, 4,992,860 and EP 325, 364).

In addition to magnetic and optical sensing, other techniques of detecting characteristic information of currency include electrical conductivity sensing, capacitive sensing (U.S. Pat. No. 5,122,754 [watermark, security thread]; 3,764,899 [thickness]; 3,815,021 [dielectric properties]; 5,151,607 [security thread]), and mechanical sensing (U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,447 [limpness]; 4,255,651 [thickness]).

According to one embodiment, the detection of the borderline **17***a* constitutes an important step and realizes improved discrimination efficiency in systems designed to accommodate U.S. currency since the borderline **17***a* serves as an absolute reference point for initiation of sampling. If the edge of a bill were to be used as a reference point, relative displacement of sampling points can occur because of the random manner in which the distance from the edge to the borderline **17***a* varies from bill to bill due to the relatively large range of tolerances permitted during printing and cutting of currency bills. As a result, it becomes difficult to establish direct correspondence between sample points in successive bill scans and the discrimination efficiency is adversely affected. Accordingly, the modified pattern generation method of the present invention (to be discussed below) is especially important in discrimination systems designed to accommodate bills other than U.S. currency because many non-U.S. bills lack a borderline around the printed indicia on their bills. Likewise, the modified pattern generation method of the present invention is especially important in discrimination systems designed to accommodate bills other than U.S. currency because the printed indicia of many non-U.S. bills lack sharply defined edges which in turns inhibits using the edge of the printed indicia of a bill as a trigger for the initiation of the scanning process

and instead promotes reliance on using the edge of the bill itself as the trigger for the initiation of the scanning process.

The use of the optical encoder **32** for controlling the sampling process relative to the physical movement of a bill **17** across the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* is also advantageous in that the encoder **32** can be used to provide a predetermined delay following detection of the borderline **17***a* prior to initiation of samples. The encoder delay can be adjusted in such a way that the bill **17** is scanned only across those segments which contain the most distinguishable printed indicia relative to the different currency denominations.

In the case of U.S. currency, for instance, it has been determined that the central, approximately two-inch (approximately 5 cm) portion of currency bills, as scanned across the central section of the narrow dimension of the bill, provides sufficient data for distinguishing among the various U.S. currency denominations. Accordingly, the optical encoder can be used to control the scanning process so that reflectance samples are taken for a set period of time and only after a certain period of time has elapsed after the borderline **17***a* is detected, thereby restricting the scanning to the desired central portion of the narrow dimension of the bill.

FIGS. **3**–**5***b* illustrate the scanning process in more detail. Referring to FIG. **4***a*, as a bill **17** is advanced in a direction parallel to the narrow edges of the bill, scanning via a slit in the scanhead **18***a* or **18***b* is effected along a segment S of the central portion of the bill **17**. This segment S begins a fixed distance D inboard of the borderline **17***a*. As the bill **17** traverses the scanhead, a strip s of the segment S is always illuminated, and the photodetector **26** produces a continuous output signal which is proportional to the intensity of the light reflected from the illuminated strip s at any given instant. This output is sampled at intervals controlled by the encoder, so that the sampling intervals are precisely synchronized with the movement of the bill across the scanhead. FIG. **4***b* is similar to FIG. **4***a* but illustrating scanning along the wide dimension of the bill **17**.

As illustrated in FIGS. **3**, **5***a*, and **6***b*, it is preferred that the sampling intervals be selected so that the strips s that are illuminated for successive samples overlap one another. The odd-numbered and even-numbered sample strips have been separated in FIGS. **3**, **5***a*, and **5***b* to more clearly illustrate this overlap. For example, the first and second strips s1 and s2 overlap each other, the second and third strips s2 and s3 overlap each other, and so on. Each adjacent pair of strips overlap each other. In the illustrative example, this is accomplished by sampling strips that are 0.050 inch (0.127 cm) wide at 0.029 inch (0.074 cm) intervals, along a segment S that is 1.83 inch (4.65 cm) long (64 samples).

FIGS. **6***a* and **6***b* illustrate two opposing surfaces of U.S. bills. The printed pattern on the black and green surfaces of the bill are each enclosed by respective thin borderlines B_1 and B_2. As a bill is advanced in a direction parallel to the narrow edges of the bill, scanning via the wide slit of one of the scanheads is effected along a segment S_A of the central portion of the black surface of the bill (FIG. **6***a*). As previously stated, the orientation of the bill along the transport path determines whether the upper or lower scanhead scans the black surface of the bill. This segment S_A begins a fixed distance D_1 inboard of the borderline B_1, which is located a distance W_1 from the edge of the bill. The scanning along segment S_A is as describe in connection with FIGS. **3**, **4***a*, and **5***a*.

Similarly, the other of the two scanheads scans a segment S_B of the central portion of the green surface of the bill (FIG. **6***b*). The orientation of the bill along the transport path determines whether the upper or lower scanhead scans the green surface of the bill. This segment S_B begins a fixed distance D_2 inboard of the border line B_2, which is located a distance W_2 from the edge of the bill. For U.S. currency, the distance W_2 on the green surface is greater than the distance W_1 on the black surface. It is this feature of U.S. currency which permits one to determine the orientation of the bill relative to the upper and lower scanheads **18**, thereby permitting one to select only the data samples corresponding to the green surface for correlation to the master characteristic patterns in the EPROM **34**. The scanning along segment S_B is as describe in connection with FIGS. **3**, **4***a*, and **5***a*.

FIGS. **6***c* and **6***d* are side elevations of FIG. **2***a* according to one embodiment of the present invention. FIG. **6***c* shows the first surface of a bill scanned by an upper scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by a lower scanhead while FIG. **6***d* shows the first surface of a bill scanned by a lower scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by an upper scanhead. FIGS. **6***c* and **6***d* illustrate the pair of optical scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* are disposed on opposite sides of the transport path to permit optical scanning of both opposing surfaces of a bill. With respect to United States currency, these opposing surfaces correspond to the black and green surfaces of a bill. One of the optical scanheads **18** (the "upper" scanhead **18***a* in FIGS. **6***c*–**6***d*) is positioned above the transport path and illuminates a light strip upon a first surface of the bill, while the other of the optical scanheads **18** (the "lower" scanhead **18***b* in FIGS. **6***c*–**6***d*) is positioned below the transport path and illuminates a light strip upon the second surface of the bill. The surface of the bill scanned by each scanhead **18** is determined by the orientation of the bill relative to the scanheads **18**. The upper scanhead **18***a* is located slightly upstream relative to the lower scanhead **18***b*.

The photodetector of the upper scanhead **18***a* produces a first analog output corresponding to the first surface of the bill, while the photodetector of the lower scanhead **18***b* produces a second analog output corresponding to the second surface of the bill. The first and second analog outputs are converted into respective first and second digital outputs by means of respective analog-to-digital (ADC) convertor units **28** whose outputs are fed as digital inputs to a central processing unit (CPU) **30**. As described in detail below, the CPU **30** uses the sequence of operations illustrated in FIG. **12** to determine which of the first and second digital outputs corresponds to the green surface of the bill, and then selects the "green" digital output for subsequent correlation to a series of master characteristic patterns stored in EPROM **34**. According to one embodiment, as explained below, the master characteristic patterns are generated by performing scans on the green surfaces, not black surfaces, of bills of different denominations. According to one embodiment, the analog output corresponding to the black surface of the bill is not used for subsequent correlation.

The optical sensing and correlation technique is based upon using the above process to generate a series of stored intensity signal patterns using genuine bills for each denomination of currency that is to be detected. According to one embodiment, two or four sets of master intensity signal samples are generated and stored within the system memory, preferably in the form of an EPROM **34** (see FIG. **2***a*), for each detectable currency denomination. According to one embodiment these are sets of master green-surface intensity signal samples. In the case of U.S. currency, the sets of master intensity signal samples for each bill are generated from optical scans, performed on the green surface of the bill and taken along both the "forward" and "reverse" directions

relative to the pattern printed on the bill. Alternatively, the optical scanning may be performed on the black side of U.S. currency bills or on either surface of foreign bills. Additionally, the optical scanning may be performed on both sides of a bill.

In adapting this technique to U.S. currency, for example, sets of stored intensity signal samples are generated and stored for seven different denominations of U.S. currency, i.e., $1, $2, $5, $10, $20, $50 and $100. For bills which produce significant pattern changes when shifted slightly to the left or right, such as the $2, the $10 and/or the $100 bills in U.S. currency, it is preferred to store two green-side patterns for each of the "forward" and "reverse" directions, each pair of patterns for the same direction represent two scan areas that are slightly displaced from each other along the long dimension of the bill. Accordingly, a set of 16 [or 18] different green-side master characteristic patterns are stored within the EPROM for subsequent correlation purposes (four master patterns for the $10 bill [or four master patterns for the $10 bill and the $2 bill and/or the $100 bill] and two master patterns for each of the other denominations). The generation of the master patterns is discussed in more below. Once the master patterns have been stored, the pattern generated by scanning a bill under test is compared by the CPU **30** with each of the 16 [or 18] master patterns of stored intensity signal samples to generate, for each comparison, a correlation number representing the extent of correlation, i.e., similarity between corresponding ones of the plurality of data samples, for the sets of data being compared.

According to one embodiment, in addition to the above set of 18 original green-side master patterns, five more sets of green-side master patterns are stored in memory. These sets are explained more fully in conjunction with FIGS. **18***a* and **18***b* below.

The CPU **30** is programmed to identify the denomination of the scanned bill as corresponding to the set of stored intensity signal samples for which the correlation number resulting from pattern comparison is found to be the highest. In order to preclude the possibility of mischaracterizing the denomination of a scanned bill, as well as to reduce the possibility of spurious notes being identified as belonging to a valid denomination, a bi-level threshold of correlation is used as the basis for making a "positive" call. If a "positive" call can not be made for a scanned bill, an error signal is generated.

According to one embodiment, master patterns are also stored for selected denominations corresponding to scans along the black side of U.S. bills. More particularly, according to one embodiment, multiple black-side master patterns are stored for $20, $50 and $100 bills. For each of these denominations, three master patterns are stored for scans in the forward and reverse directions for a total of six patterns for each denomination. For a given scan direction, black-side master patterns are generated by scanning a corresponding denominated bill along a segment located about the center of the narrow dimension of the bill, a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the left of center, and a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the right of center. When the scanned pattern generated from the green side of a test bill fails to sufficiently correlate with one of the green-side master patterns, the scanned pattern generated from the black side of a test bill is then compared to black-side master patterns in some situations as described in more detail below in conjunction with FIGS. **19***a*–**19***c*.

Using the above sensing and correlation approach, the CPU **30** is programmed to count the number of bills belonging to a particular currency denomination as part of a given set of bills that have been scanned for a given scan batch, and to determine the aggregate total of the currency amount represented by the bills scanned during a scan batch. The CPU **30** is also linked to an output unit **36** (FIGS. **2***a* and FIG. **2***b*) which is adapted to provide a display of the number of bills counted, the breakdown of the bills in terms of currency denomination, and the aggregate total of the currency value represented by counted bills. The output unit **36** can also be adapted to provide a print-out of the displayed information in a desired format.

Referring again to the embodiment depicted in FIG. **2***d*, as a result of the first comparison described above based on the reflected light intensity information retrieved by scanhead **18**, the CPU **30** will have either determined the denomination of the scanned bill **17** or determined that the first scanned signal samples fail to sufficiently correlate with any of the sets of stored intensity signal samples in which case an error is generated. Provided that an error has not been generated as a result of this first comparison based on reflected light intensity characteristics, a second comparison is performed. This second comparison is performed based on a second type of characteristic information, such as alternate reflected light properties, similar reflected light properties at alternate locations of a bill, light transmissivity properties, various magnetic properties of a bill, the presence of a security thread embedded within a bill, the color of a bill, the thickness or other dimension of a bill, etc. The second type of characteristic information is retrieved from a scanned bill by the second scanhead **39**. The scanning and processing by scanhead **39** may be controlled in a manner similar to that described above with regard to scanhead **18**.

In addition to the sets of stored first characteristic information, in this example stored intensity signal samples, the EPROM **34** stores sets of stored second characteristic information for genuine bills of the different denominations which the system **10** is capable of handling. Based on the denomination indicated by the first comparison, the CPU **30** retrieves the set or sets of stored second characteristic data for a genuine bill of the denomination so indicated and compares the retrieved information with the scanned second characteristic information. If sufficient correlation exists between the retrieved information and the scanned information, the CPU **30** verifies the genuineness of the scanned bill **17**. Otherwise, the CPU generates an error. While the embodiment illustrated in FIG. **2***d* depicts a single CPU **30** for making comparisons of first and second characteristic information and a single EPROM **34** for storing first and second characteristic information, it is understood that two or more CPUs and/or EPROMs could be used, including one CPU for making first characteristic information comparisons and a second CPU for making second characteristic information comparisons. Using the above sensing and correlation approach, the CPU **30** is programmed to count the number of bills belonging to a particular currency denomination whose genuineness has been verified as part of a given set of bills that have been scanned for a given scan batch, and to determine the aggregate total of the currency amount represented by the bills scanned during a scan batch.

Referring now to FIGS. **7***a* and **7***b*, there is shown a representation, in block diagram form, of one circuit arrangement for processing and correlating reflectance data according to the system of this invention. The CPU **30** accepts and processes a variety of input signals including those from the optical encoder **32**, the sensor **26** and the erasable programmable read only memory (EPROM) **60**.

The EPROM **60** has stored within it the correlation program on the basis of which patterns are generated and test patterns compared with stored master programs in order to identify the denomination of test currency. A crystal **40** serves as the time base for the CPU **30**, which is also provided with an external reference voltage V_{REF} **42** on the basis of which peak detection of sensed reflectance data is performed.

According to one embodiment, the CPU **30** also accepts a timer reset signal from a reset unit **44** which, as shown in FIG. **7***b*, accepts the output voltage from the photodetector **26** and compares it, by means of a threshold detector **44***a*, relative to a pre-set voltage threshold, typically 5.0 volts, to provide a reset signal which goes "high" when a reflectance value corresponding to the presence of paper is sensed. More specifically, reflectance sampling is based on the premise that no portion of the illuminated light strip (**24** in FIG. **2***a*) is reflected to the photodetector in the absence of a bill positioned below the scanhead. Under these conditions, the output of the photodetector represents a "dark" or "zero" level reading. The photodetector output changes to a "white" reading, typically set to have a value of about 5.0 volts, when the edge of a bill first becomes positioned below the scanhead and falls under the light strip **24**. When this occurs, the reset unit **44** provides a "high" signal to the CPU **30** and marks the initiation of the scanning procedure.

The machine-direction dimension, that is, the dimension parallel to the direction of bill movement, of the illuminated strip of light produced by the light sources within the scanhead is set to be relatively small for the initial stage of the scan when the thin borderline is being detected, according to one embodiment. The use of the narrow slit increases the sensitivity with which the reflected light is detected and allows minute variations in the "gray" level reflected off the bill surface to be sensed. This is important in ensuring that the thin borderline of the pattern, i.e., the starting point of the printed pattern on the bill, is accurately detected. Once the borderline has been detected, subsequent reflectance sampling is performed on the basis of a relatively wider light strip in order to completely scan across the narrow dimension of the bill and obtain the desired number of samples, at a rapid rate. The use of a wider slit for the actual sampling also smooths out the output characteristics of the photodetector and realizes the relatively large magnitude of analog voltage which is essential for accurate representation and processing of the detected reflectance values.

The CPU **30** processes the output of the sensor **26** through a peak detector **50** which essentially functions to sample the sensor output voltage and hold the highest, i.e., peak, voltage value encountered after the detector has been enabled. For U.S. currency, the peak detector is also adapted to define a scaled voltage on the basis of which the printed borderline on the currency bills is detected. The output of the peak detector **50** is fed to a voltage divider **54** which lowers the peak voltage down to a scaled voltage V_S representing a predefined percentage of this peak value. The voltage V_S is based upon the percentage drop in output voltage of the peak detector as it reflects the transition from the "high" reflectance value resulting from the scanning of the unprinted edge portions of a currency bill to the relatively lower "gray" reflectance value resulting when the thin borderline is encountered. Preferably, the scaled voltage V_S is set to be about 70–80 percent of the peak voltage.

The scaled voltage V_S is supplied to a line detector **56** which is also provided with the incoming instantaneous output of the sensor **26**. The line detector **56** compares the two voltages at its input side and generates a signal L_{DET} which normally stays "low" and goes "high" when the edge of the bill is scanned. The signal L_{DET} goes "low" when the incoming sensor output reaches the pre-defined percentage of the peak output up to that point, as represented by the voltage V_S. Thus, when the signal L_{DET} goes "low", it is an indication that the borderline of the bill pattern has been detected. At this point, the CPU **30** initiates the actual reflectance sampling under control of the encoder **32** and the desired fixed number of reflectance samples are obtained as the currency bill moves across the illuminated light strip and is scanned along the central section of its narrow dimension.

When master characteristic patterns are being generated, the reflectance samples resulting from the scanning of one or more genuine bills for each denomination are loaded into corresponding designated sections within a system memory **60**, which is preferably an EPROM. During currency discrimination, the reflectance values resulting from the scanning of a test bill are sequentially compared, under control of the correlation program stored within the EPROM **60**, with the corresponding master characteristic patterns stored within the EPROM **60**. A pattern averaging procedure for scanning bills and generating characteristic patterns is described below in connection with FIGS. **15***a*–**15***e*.

In addition to the optical scanheads, the bill-scanning system (e.g., FIGS. **2***a*–**2***d*) preferably includes a magnetic scanhead. A variety of currency characteristics can be measured using magnetic scanning. These include detection of patterns of changes in magnetic flux (U.S. Pat. No. 3,280,974), patterns of vertical grid lines in the portrait area of bills (U.S. Pat. No. 3,870,629), the presence of a security thread (U.S. Pat. No. 5,151,607), total amount of magnetizable material of a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,617,458), patterns from sensing the strength of magnetic fields along a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,593,184), and other patterns and counts from scanning different portions of the bill such as the area in which the denomination is written out (U.S. Pat. No. 4,356,473).

The interrelation between the use of the first and second type of characteristic information can be seen by considering FIGS. **8***a* and **8***b* which comprise a flowchart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in implementing a discrimination and authentication system according to one embodiment of the present invention. Upon the initiation of the sequence of operations (step **1748**), reflected light intensity information is retrieved from a bill being scanned (step **1750**). Similarly, second characteristic information is also retrieved from the bill being scanned (step **1752**). Denomination error and second characteristic error flags are cleared (steps **1753** and **1754**).

Next the scanned intensity information is compared to each set of stored intensity information corresponding to genuine bills of all denominations the system is programmed to accommodate (step **1758**). For each denomination, a correlation number is calculated. The system then, based on the correlation numbers calculated, determines either the denomination of the scanned bill or generates a denomination error by setting the denomination error flag steps **1760** and **1762**). In the case where the denomination error flag is set (step **1762**), the process is ended (step **1772**). Alternatively, if based on this first comparison, the system is able to determine the denomination of the scanned bill, the system proceeds to compare the scanned second characteristic information with the stored second characteristic information corresponding to the denomination determined by the first comparison (step **1764**).

For example, if as a result of the first comparison the scanned bill is determined to be a $20 bill, the scanned second characteristic information is compared to the stored

second characteristic information corresponding to a genuine $20 bill. In this manner, the system need not make comparisons with stored second characteristic information for the other denominations the system is programmed to accommodate. If based on this second comparison (step **1764**) it is determined that the scanned second characteristic information does not sufficiently match that of the stored second characteristic information (step **1766**), then a second characteristic error is generated by setting the second characteristic error flag (step **1768**) and the process is ended (step **1772**). If the second comparison results in a sufficient match between the scanned and stored second characteristic information (step **1766**), then the denomination of the scanned bill is indicated (step **1770**) and the process is ended (step **1772**).

An example of an interrelationship between authentication based on a first and second characteristic can be seen by considering Table 1. The denomination determined by optical scanning of a bill may be used to facilitate authentication of the bill by magnetic scanning, using the relationship set forth in Table 1.

TABLE 1

	Sensitivity				
Denomination	1	2	3	4	5
$1	200	250	300	375	450
$2	100	125	150	225	300
$5	200	250	300	350	400
$10	100	125	150	200	250
$20	120	150	180	270	360
$50	200	250	300	375	450
$100	100	125	150	250	350

Table 1 depicts relative total magnetic content thresholds for various denominations of genuine bills. Columns 1–5 represent varying degrees of sensitivity selectable by a user of a device employing the present invention. The values in Table 1 are set based on the scanning of genuine bills of varying denominations for total magnetic content and setting required thresholds based on the degree of sensitivity selected. The information in Table 1 is based on the total magnetic content of a genuine $1 being 1000. The following discussion is based on a sensitivity setting of 4. In this example it is assumed that magnetic content represents the second characteristic tested. If the comparison of first characteristic information, such as reflected light intensity, from a scanned billed and stored information corresponding to genuine bills results in an indication that the scanned bill is a $10 denomination, then the total magnetic content of the scanned bill is compared to the total magnetic content threshold of a genuine $10 bill, i.e., 200. If the magnetic content of the scanned bill is less than 200, the bill is rejected. Otherwise it is accepted as a $10 bill.

In order to avoid problems associated with re-feeding bills, counting bills by hand, and adding together separate totals, according to one embodiment of the present invention a number of selection elements associated with individual denominations are provided. In FIG. **1**, these selection elements are in the form of keys or buttons of a keypad. Other types of selection elements such as switches or displayed keys in a touch-screen environment may be employed. The operation of the selection elements and several of the operating modes of the discriminator **10** are described below in conjunction with FIGS. **56** and **59**.

Referring now to FIGS. **9**–**11***b*, there are shown flow charts illustrating the sequence of operations involved in implementing the above-described optical sensing and correlation technique. FIGS. **9** and **10**, in particular, illustrate the sequences involved in detecting the presence of a bill adjacent the scanheads and the borderlines on each side of the bill. Turning to FIG. **9**, at step **70**, the lower scanhead fine line interrupt is initiated upon the detection of the fine line by the lower scanhead. An encoder counter is maintained that is incremented for each encoder pulse. The encoder counter scrolls from 0–65,535 and then starts at 0 again. At step **71** the value of the encoder counter is stored in memory upon the detection of the fine line by the lower scanhead. At step **72** the lower scanhead fine line interrupt is disabled so that it will not be triggered again during the interrupt period. At step **73**, it is determined whether the magnetic sampling has been completed for the previous bill. If it has not, the magnetic total for the previous bill is stored in memory at step **74** and the magnetic sampling done flag is set at step **75** so that magnetic sampling of the present bill may thereafter be performed. Steps **74** and **75** are skipped if it is determined at step **73** that the magnetic sampling has been completed for the previous bill. At step **76**, a lower scanhead bit in the trigger flag is set. This bit is used to indicate that the lower scanhead has detected the fine line. The magnetic sampler is initialized at step **77** and the magnetic sampling interrupt is enabled at step **78**. A density sampler is initialized at step **79** and a density sampling interrupt is enabled at step **80**. The lower read data sampler is initialized at step **81** and a lower scanhead data sampling interrupt is enabled at step **82**. At step **83**, the lower scanhead fine line interrupt flag is reset and at step **84** the program returns from the interrupt.

Turning to FIG. **10**, at step **85**, the upper scanhead fine line interrupt is initiated upon the detection of the fine line by the upper scanhead. At step **86** the value of the encoder counter is stored in memory upon the detection of the fine line by the upper scanhead. This information in connection with the encoder counter value associated with the detection of the fme line by the lower scanhead may then be used to determine the face orientation of a bill, that is whether a bill is fed green side up or green side down in the case of U.S. bills as is described in more detail below in connection with FIG. **12**. At step **87** the upper scanhead fine line interrupt is disabled so that it will not be triggered again during the interrupt period. At step **88**, the upper scanhead bit in the trigger flag is set. This bit is used to indicate that the upper scanhead has detected the fine line. By checking the lower and upper scanhead bits in the trigger flag it can be determined whether each side has detected a respective fme line. Next, the upper scanhead data sampler is initialized at step **89** and the upper scanhead data sampling interrupt is enabled at step **90**. At step **91**, the upper scanhead fine line interrupt flag is reset and at step **92** the program returns from the interrupt.

Referring now to FIGS. **11***a* and **11***b* there are shown, respectively, the digitizing routines associated with the lower and upper scanheads. FIG. **11***a* is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the lower scanhead. The routine is started at step **93***a*. Next, the sample pointer is decremented at step **94***a* so as to maintain an indication of the number of samples remaining to be obtained. The sample pointer provides an indication of the sample being obtained and digitized at a given time. At step **95***a*, the digital data corresponding to the output of the photodetector associated with the lower scanhead for the current sample is read. The data is converted to its final form at step **96***a* and stored within a pre-defined memory segment as X_{IN-L} at step **97***a*.

Next, at step **98***a*, a check is made to see if the desired fixed number of samples "N" has been taken. If the answer is found to be negative, step **99***a* is accessed where the interrupt authorizing the digitization of the succeeding sample is enabled and the program returns from interrupt at step **100***a* for completing the rest of the digitizing process. However, if the answer at step **98***a* is found to be positive, i.e., the desired number of samples have already been obtained, a flag, namely the lower scanhead done flag bit, indicating the same is set at step **101***a* and the program returns from interrupt at step **102***a*.

FIG. **11***b* is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the upper scanhead. The routine is started at step **93***b*. Next, the sample pointer is decremented at step **94***b* so as to maintain an indication of the number of samples remaining to be obtained. The sample pointer provides an indication of the sample being obtained and digitized at a given time. At step **95***b*, the digital data corresponding to the output of the photodetector associated with the upper scanhead for the current sample is read. The data is converted to its final form at step **96***b* and stored within a pre-defined memory segment as $X_{IN\text{-}U}$ at step **97***b*.

Next, at step **98***b*, a check is made to see if the desired fixed number of samples "N" has been taken. If the answer is found to be negative, step **99***b* is accessed where the interrupt authorizing the digitization of the succeeding sample is enabled and the program returns from interrupt at step **100***b* for completing the rest of the digitizing process. However, if the answer at step **98***b* is found to be positive, i.e., the desired number of samples have already been obtained, a flag, namely the upper scanhead done flag bit, indicating the same is set at step **101***b* and the program returns from interrupt at step **102***b*.

The CPU **30** is programmed with the sequence of operations in FIG. **12** to correlate at least initially only the test pattern corresponding to the green surface of a scanned bill. As shown in FIGS. **6***c*–**6***d*, the upper scanhead **18***a* is located slightly upstream adjacent the bill transport path relative to the lower scanhead **18***b*. The distance between the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* in a direction parallel to the transport path corresponds to a predetermined number of encoder counts. It should be understood that the encoder **32** produces a repetitive tracking signal synchronized with incremental movements of the bill transport mechanism, and this repetitive tracking signal has a repetitive sequence of counts (e.g., 65,535 counts) associated therewith. As a bill is scanned by the upper and lower scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*, the CPU **30** monitors the output of the upper scanhead **18***a* to detect the borderline of a first bill surface facing the upper scanhead **18***a*. Once this borderline of the first surface is detected, the CPU **30** retrieves and stores a first encoder count in memory. Similarly, the CPU **30** monitors the output of the lower scanhead **18***b* to detect the borderline of a second bill surface facing the lower scanhead **18***b*. Once the borderline of the second surface is detected, the CPU **30** retrieves and stores a second encoder count in memory.

Referring to FIG. **12**, the CPU **30** is programmed to calculate the difference between the first and second encoder counts (step **105***a*). If this difference is greater than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* plus some safety factor number "X", e.g., 20 (step **106**), the bill is oriented with its black surface facing the upper scanhead **18***a* and its green surface facing the lower scanhead **18***b*. This can best be understood by reference to FIG. **6***c* which shows a bill with the foregoing orientation. In this situation, once the borderline B_1 of the black surface passes beneath the upper scanhead **18***a* and the first encoder count is stored, the borderline B_2 still must travel for a distance greater than the distance between the upper and lower scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* in order to pass over the lower scanhead **18***b*. As a result, the difference between the second encoder count associated with the borderline B_2 and the first encoder count associated with the borderline B_1 will be greater than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*. With the bill oriented with its green surface facing the lower scanhead, the CPU **30** sets a flag to indicate that the test pattern produced by the lower scanhead **18***b* should be correlated (step **107**). Next, this test pattern is correlated with the green-side master characteristic patterns stored in memory (step **109**).

If at step **106** the difference between the first and second encoder counts is less than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*, the CPU **30** is programmed to determine whether the difference between the first and second encoder counts is less than the predetermined number minus some safety number "X", e.g., 20 (step **108**). If the answer is negative, the orientation of the bill relative to the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* is uncertain so the CPU **30** is programmed to correlate the test patterns produced by both the upper and lower scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* with the green-side master characteristic patterns stored in memory (steps **109**, **110**, and **111**).

If the answer is affirmative, the bill is oriented with its green surface facing the upper scanhead **18***a* and its black surface facing the lower scanhead **18***b*. Tnis can best be understood by reference to FIG. **6***d*, which shows a bill with the foregoing orientation. In this situation, once the borderline B_2 of the green surface passes beneath the upper scanhead **18***a* and the first encoder count is stored, the borderline B_1 must travel for a distance less than the distance between the upper and lower scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* in order to pass over the lower scanhead **18***b*. As a result, the difference between the second encoder count associated with the borderline B_1 and the first encoder count associated with the borderline B_2 should be less than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*. To be on the safe side, it is required that the difference between first and second encoder counts be less than the predetermined number minus the safety number "X". Therefore, the CPU **30** is programmed to correlate the test pattern produced by the upper scanhead **18***a* with the green-side master characteristic patterns stored in memory (step **111**).

After correlating the test pattern associated with either the upper scanhead **18***a*, the lower scanhead **18***b*, or both scanheads **18***a*, **18***b*, the CPU **30** is programmed to perform the bi-level threshold check (step **112**).

A simple correlation procedure is utilized for processing digitized reflectance values into a form which is conveniently and accurately compared to corresponding values pre-stored in an identical format. More specifically, as a first step, the mean value $\bar{X}$ for the set of digitized reflectance samples (comparing "n" samples) obtained for a bill scan run is first obtained as below:

$$\bar{X} = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \frac{X_i}{n} \quad (1)$$

Subsequently, a normalizing factor Sigma ("σ") is determined as being equivalent to the sum of the square of the

difference between each sample and the mean, as normalized by the total number n of samples. More specifically, the normalizing factor is calculated as below:

$$\sigma = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \frac{|X_i - \overline{X}|^2}{n} \quad (2)$$

In the final step, each reflectance sample is normalized by obtaining the difference between the sample and the above-calculated mean value and dividing it by the square root of the normalizing factor a as defined by the following equation:

$$X_n = \frac{X_i - \overline{X}}{(\sigma)^{1/2}} \quad (3)$$

The result of using the above correlation equations is that, subsequent to the normalizing process, a relationship of correlation exists between a test pattern and a master pattern such that the aggregate sum of the products of corresponding samples in a test pattern and any master pattern, when divided by the total number of samples, equals unity if the patterns are identical. Otherwise, a value less than unity is obtained. Accordingly, the correlation number or factor resulting from the comparison of normalized samples within a test pattern to those of a stored master pattern provides a clear indication of the degree of similarity or correlation between the two patterns.

According to one embodiment of this invention, the fixed number of reflectance samples which are digitized and normalized for a bill scan is selected to be 64. It has experimentally been found that the use of higher binary orders of samples (such as 128, 256, etc.) does not provide a correspondingly increased discrimination efficiency relative to the increased processing time involved in implementing the above-described correlation procedure. It has also been found that the use of a binary order of samples lower than 64, such as 32, produces a substantial drop in discrimination efficiency.

The correlation factor can be represented conveniently in binary terms for ease of correlation. In one embodiment, for instance, the factor of unity which results when a hundred percent correlation exists is represented in terms of the binary number 2^{10}, which is equal to a decimal value of 1024. Using the above procedure, the normalized samples within a test pattern are compared to the master characteristic patterns stored within the system memory in order to determine the particular stored pattern to which the test pattern corresponds most closely by identifying the comparison which yields a correlation number closest to 1024.

A bi-level threshold of correlation is required to be satisfied before a particular call is made, for at least certain denominations of bills. More specifically, the correlation procedure is adapted to identify the two highest correlation numbers resulting from the comparison of the test pattern to one of the stored patterns. At that point, a minimum threshold of correlation is required to be satisfied by these two correlation numbers. It has experimentally been found that a correlation number of about 850 serves as a good cut-off threshold above which positive calls may be made with a high degree of confidence and below which the designation of a test pattern as corresponding to any of the stored patterns is uncertain. As a second threshold level, a minimum separation is prescribed between the two highest correlation numbers before making a call. This ensures that a positive call is made only when a test pattern does not correspond, within a given range of correlation, to more than one stored master pattern. Preferably, the minimum separation between correlation numbers is set to be 150 when the highest correlation number is between 800 and 850. When the highest correlation number is below 800, no call is made.

The procedure involved in comparing test patterns to master patterns is discussed below in connection with FIG. 18*a*.

Next a routine designated as "CORRES" is initiated. The procedure involved in executing the routine CORRES is illustrated at FIG. **13** which shows the routine as starting at step **114**. Step **115** determines whether the bill has been identified as a $2 bill, and, if the answer is negative, step **116** determines whether the best correlation number ("call #1") is greater than 799. If the answer is negative, the correlation number is too low to identify the denomination of the bill with certainty, and thus step **117** generates a "no call" code. A "no call previous bill" flag is then set at step **118**, and the routine returns to the main program at step **119**.

An affirmative answer at step **116** advances the system to step **120**, which determines whether the sample data passes an ink stain test (described below). If the answer is negative, a "no call" code is generated at step **117**. If the answer is affirmative, the system advances to step **121** which determines whether the best correlation number is greater than 849. An affirmative answer at step **121** indicates that the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "denomination" code identifying the denomination represented by the stored pattern resulting in the highest correlation number is generated at step **122**, and the system returns to the main program at step **119**.

A negative answer at step **121** indicates that the correlation number is between 800 and 850. It has been found that correlation numbers within this range are sufficient to identify all bills except the $2 bill. Accordingly, a negative response at step **121** advances the system to step **123** which determines whether the difference between the two highest correlation numbers ("call #1" and "call #2") is greater than 149. If the answer is affirmative, the denomination identified by the highest correlation number is acceptable, and thus the "denomination" code is generated at step **122**. If the difference between the two highest correlation numbers is less than 150, step **123** produces a negative response which advances the system to step **117** to generate a "no call" code.

Returning to step **115**, an affirmative response at this step indicates that the initial call is a $2 bill. This affirmative response initiates a series of steps **124–127** which are identical to steps **116, 120, 121** and **123** described above, except that the numbers 799 and 849 used in steps **116** and **121** are changed to 849 and 899, respectively, in steps **124** and **126**. The result is either the generation of a "no call" code at step **117** or the generation of a $2 "denomination" code at step **122**.

One problem encountered in currency recognition and counting systems is the difficulty involved in interrupting (for a variety of reasons) and resuming the scanning and counting procedure as a stack of bills is being scanned. If a particular currency recognition unit (CRU) has to be halted in operation due to a "major" system error, such as a bill being jammed along the transport path, there is generally no concern about the outstanding transitional status of the overall recognition and counting process. However, where

the CRU has to be halted due to a "minor" error, such as the identification of a scanned bill as being a counterfeit (based on a variety of monitored parameters) or a "no call" (a bill which is not identifiable as belonging to a specific currency denomination based on the plurality of stored master patterns and/or other criteria), it is desirable that the transitional status of the overall recognition and counting process be retained so that the CRU may be restarted without any effective disruptions of the recognition/counting process.

More specifically, once a scanned bill has been identified as a "no call" bill (B_1) based on some set of predefined criteria, it is desirable that this bill B_1 be transported directly to the system stacker and the CRU brought to a halt with bill B_1 being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle, while at the same time ensuring that the following bills are maintained in positions along the bill transport path whereby CRU operation can be conveniently resumed without any disruption of the recognition/counting process.

Since the bill processing speeds at which currency recognition systems must operate are substantially high (speeds of the order of 800 to 1500 bills per minute), it is practically impossible to totally halt the system following a "no call" without the following bill B_2 already overlapping the optical scanhead and being partially scanned. As a result, it is virtually impossible for the CRU system to retain the transitional status of the recognition/counting process (particularly with respect to bill B_2) in order that the process may be resumed once the bad bill B_1 has been transported to the stacker, conveniently removed therefrom, and the system restarted. The basic problem is that if the CRU is halted with bill B_2 only partially scanned, it is difficult to reference the data reflectance samples extracted therefrom in such a way that the scanning may be later continued (when the CRU is restarted) from exactly the same point where the sample extraction process was interrupted when the CRU was stopped.

Even if an attempt were made at immediately halting the CRU system following a "no call," any subsequent scanning of bills would be totally unreliable because of mechanical backlash effects and the resultant disruption of the optical encoder routine used for bill scanning. Consequently, when the CRU is restarted, the call for the following bill is also likely to be bad and the overall recognition/counting process is totally disrupted as a result of an endless loop of "no calls."

The above problems are solved by the use of a currency detecting and counting technique whereby a scanned bill identified as a "no call" is transported directly to the top of the system stacker and the CRU is halted without adversely affecting the data collection and processing steps for a succeeding bill. Accordingly, when the CRU is restarted, the overall bill recognition and counting procedure can be resumed without any disruption as if the CRU had never been halted at all.

According to one technique, if the bill is identified as a "no call" based on any of a variety of conventionally defined bill criteria, the CRU is subjected to a controlled deceleration process whereby the speed at which bills are moved across the scanhead is reduced from the normal operating speed. During this deceleration process the "no call" bill (B_1) is transported to the top of the stacker and, at the same time, the following bill B_2 is subjected to the standard scanning procedure in order to identify the denomination.

The rate of deceleration is such that optical scanning of bill B_2 is completed by the time the CRU operating speed is reduced to a predefined operating speed. While the exact operating speed at the end of the scanning of bill B_2 is not critical, the objective is to permit complete scanning of bill B_2 without subjecting it to backlash effects that would result if the ramping were too fast, while at the same time ensuring that bill B_1 has in fact been transported to the stacker.

It has been experimentally determined that at nominal operating speeds of the order of 1000 bills per minute, the deceleration is preferably such that the CRU operating speed is reduced to about one-fifth of its normal operating speed at the end of the deceleration phase, i.e., by the time optical scanning of bill B_2 has been completed. It has been determined that at these speed levels, positive calls can be made as to the denomination of bill B_2 based on reflectance samples gathered during the deceleration phase with a relatively high degree of certainty (i.e., with a correlation number exceeding about 850).

Once the optical scanning of bill B_2 has been completed, the speed is reduced to an even slower speed until the bill B_2 has passed bill-edge sensors S1 and S2 described below, and the bill B_2 is then brought to a complete stop. At the same time, the results of the processing of scanned data corresponding to bill B_2 are stored in system memory. The ultimate result of this stopping procedure is that the CRU is brought to a complete halt following the point where the scanning of bill B_2 has been reliably completed, and the scan procedure is not subjected to the disruptive effects (backlash, etc.) which would result if a complete halt were attempted immediately after bill B_1 is identified as a "no call."

The reduced operating speed of the machine at the end of the deceleration phase is such that the CRU can be brought to a total halt before the next following bill B_3 has been transported over the optical scanhead. Thus, when the CRU is in fact halted, bill B_1 is positioned at the top of the system stacker, bill B_2 is maintained in transit between the optical scanhead and the stacker after it has been subjected to scanning, and the following bill B_3 is stopped short of the optical scanhead.

When the CRU is restarted, presumably after corrective action has been taken in response to the "minor" error which led to the CRU being stopped (such as the removal of the "no call" bill from the output receptacle), the overall scanning operation can be resumed in an uninterrupted fashion by using the stored call results for bill B_2 as the basis for updating the system count appropriately, moving bill B_2 from its earlier transitional position along the transport path into the stacker, and moving bill B_3 along the transport path into the optical scanhead area where it can be subjected to normal scanning and processing. A routine for executing the deceleration/stopping procedure described above is illustrated by the flow chart in FIG. **14**. This routine is initiated at step **170** with the CRU in its normal operating mode. At step **171**, a test bill B_1 is scanned and the data reflectance samples resulting therefrom are processed. Next, at step **172**, a determination is made as to whether or not test bill B_1 is a "no call" using predefined criteria in combination with the overall bill recognition procedure, such as the routine of FIG. **13**. If the answer at step **172** is negative, i.e., the test bill B_1 can be identified, step **173** is accessed where normal bill processing is continued in accordance with the procedures described above. If, however, the test bill B_1 is found to be a "no call" at step **172**, step **174** is accessed where CRU deceleration is initiated, e.g., the transport drive motor speed is reduced to about one-fifth its normal speed.

Subsequently, the "no call" bill B_1 is guided to the stacker while, at the same time, the following test bill B_2 is brought under the optical scanhead and subjected to the scanning and

processing steps. The call resulting from the scanning and processing of bill B_2 is stored in system memory at this point. Step **175** determines whether the scanning of bill B_2 is complete. When the answer is negative, step **176** determines whether a preselected "bill timeout" period has expired so that the system does not wait for the scanning of a bill that is not present. An affirmative answer at step **176** results in the transport drive motor being stopped at step **179** while a negative answer at step **176** causes steps **175** and **176** to be reiterated until one of them produces an affirmative response.

After the scanning of bill B_2 is complete and before stopping the transport drive motor, step **178** determines whether either of the sensors S1 or S2 (described below) is covered by a bill. A negative answer at step **178** indicates that the bill has cleared both sensors S1 and S2, and thus the transport drive motor is stopped at step **179**. This signifies the end of the deceleration/stopping process. At this point in time, bill B_2 remains in transit while the following bill B_3 is stopped on the transport path just short of the optical scanhead.

Following step **179**, corrective action responsive to the identification of a "no call" bill is conveniently undertaken; the top-most bill in the stacker is easily removed therefrom and the CRU is then in condition for resuming the scanning process. Accordingly, the CRU can be restarted and the stored results corresponding to bill B_2, are used to appropriately update the system count. Next, the identified bill B_2 is guided along the transport path to the stacker, and the CRU continues with its normal processing routine. While the above deceleration process has been described in a context of a "no call" error, other minor errors (e.g., suspect bills, stranger bills in stranger mode, etc.) are handled in the same manner.

In currency discrimination systems in which discrimination is based on the comparison of a pattern obtained from scanning a subject bill to stored master patterns corresponding to various denominations, the patterns which are designated as master patterns significantly influence the performance characteristics of a discrimination system. For example, in the system described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196, the correlation procedure and the accuracy with which a denomination is identified directly relates to the degree of correspondence between reflectance samples on the test pattern and corresponding samples on the stored master patterns. In other systems, master patterns have been produced by scanning a genuine bill for a given denomination and storing the resulting pattern as the master pattern for that denomination. However, due to variations among genuine bills, this method is likely to result in poor performance of the discrimination system by rejecting an unacceptable number of genuine bills. It has been found that the relative crispness, age, shrinkage, usage, and other characteristics of a genuine bill can effect the resulting pattern generated by scanning. These factors are often interrelated. For example, it has been found that currency bills which have experienced a high degree of usage exhibit a reduction in both the narrow and wide dimensions of the bills. This shrinkage of "used" bills which, in turn, causes corresponding reductions in their narrow dimensions, can possibly produce a drop in the degree of correlation between such used bills of a given denomination and the corresponding master patterns.

As a result, a discrimination system which generates a master pattern based on a single scan of a genuine bill is not likely to perform satisfactorily. For example, if the $20 master pattern is generated by scanning a crisp, genuine $20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but worn $20 bills. Likewise, if the $20 master pattern is generated using a very worn, genuine $20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but crisp $20 bills.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns. Each component pattern is generated by scanning a genuine bill of the given denomination.

According to a first method, master patterns are generated by scanning a standard bill a plurality of times, typically three (3) times, and obtaining the average of corresponding data samples before storing the average as representing a master pattern. In other words, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein all of the component patterns are generated by scanning a single genuine bill of "standard" quality of the given denomination. The "standard" bill is a slightly used bill, as opposed to a crisp new bill or one which has been subject to a high degree of usage. Rather, the standard bill is a bill of good to average quality. Component patterns generated according to this first methods are illustrated in FIGS. **15***a*–**15***c*. More specifically, FIGS. **15***a*–**15***c* show three test patterns generated, respectively, for the forward scanning of a $1 bill along its green side, the reverse scanning of a $2 bill on its green side, and the forward scanning of a $100 bill on its green side. It should be noted that, for purposes of clarity the test patterns in FIGS. **15***a*–**15***c* were generated by using 128 reflectance samples per bill scan, as opposed to the preferred use of only 64 samples. The marked difference existing among corresponding samples for these three test patterns is indicative of the high degree of confidence with which currency denominations may be called using the foregoing optical sensing and correlation procedure.

According to a second method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by scanning two or more standard bills of standard quality and obtaining a plurality of component patterns. These component patterns are then averaged in deriving a master pattern. For example, it has been found that some genuine $5 bills have dark stairs on the Lincoln Memorial while other genuine $5 bills have light stairs. To compensate for this variation, standard bills for which component patterns are derived may be chosen with at least one standard bill scanned having dark stairs and with at least one standard bill having light stairs.

It has been found that an alternate method can lead to improved performance in a discrimination systems, especially with regards to certain denominations. For example, it has been found that the printed indicia on a $10 bill has changed slightly with 1990 series bills incorporating security threads. More specifically, 1990 series $10 bills have a borderline-to-borderline dimension which is slightly greater than previous series $10 bills. Likewise it has been found that the scanned pattern of an old, semi-shrunken $5 bill can differ significantly from the scanned pattern of a new $5 bill.

According to a third method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more new bills of the given denomination and some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more old bills of the given denomination. New bills are bills of good quality which have been printed in recent years and have a security thread incorporated therein (for those denominations in which security threads are placed). New bills are preferably rela-

tively crisp. A new $10 bill is preferably a 1990 series or later bill of very high quality, meaning that the bill is in near mint condition. Old bills are bills exhibiting some shrinkage and often some discoloration. Shrinkage may result from a bill having been subjected to a relatively high degree of use. A new bill utilized in this third method is of higher quality than a standard bill of the previous methods, while an old bill in this third method is of lower quality than a standard bill.

The third method can be understood by considering Table 2 which summarizes the manner in which component patterns are generated for a variety of denominations.

TABLE 2

Component Scans by Denomination

Denomination	Scan Direction	CP1	CP2	CP3
$1	Forward	−0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
$1	Reverse	−0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
$2, left	Forward	−0.2 std	−0.15 std	−0.1 std
$2, left	Reverse	−0.2 std	−0.15 std	−0.1 std
$2, right	Forward	0.0 std	+0.1 std	+0.2 std
$2, right	Reverse	0.0 std	+0.1 std	+0.2 std
$5	Forward	−0.2 old (lt str)	0.0 new (dk str)	+0.2 old (lt str)
$5	Reverse	−0.2 old (lt str)	0.0 new (dk str)	+0.2 old (lt str)
$10, left	Forward	−0.2 old	−0.1 new	0.0 old
$10, left	Reverse	0.0 old	+0.1 new	+0.2 old
$10, right	Forward	+0.1 old	+0.2 new	+0.3 old
$10, right	Reverse	−0.2 old	−0.15 new	−0.1 old
$20	Forward	−0.2 old	0.0 new	+0.2 old
$20	Reverse	−0.2 old	0.0 new	+0.2 old
$50	Forward	−0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
$50	Reverse	−0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
$100	Forward	−0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
$100	Reverse	−0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std

Table 2 summarizes the position of the scanhead relative to the center of the green surface of United States currency as well as the type of bill to be scanned for generating component patterns for various denominations. The three component patterns ("CP") for a given denomination and for a given scan direction are averaged to yield a corresponding master pattern. The eighteen (18) rows correspond to the method of storing eighteen (18) master patterns. The scanhead position is indicated relative to the center of the borderlined area of the bill. Thus a position of "0.0" indicates that the scanhead is centered over the center of the borderlined area of the bill. Displacements to the left of center are indicated by negative numbers, while displacements to the right are indicated by positive numbers. Thus a position of "−0.2" indicates a displacement of 2/10ths of an inch to the left of the center of a bill, while a position of "+0.1" indicates a displacement of 1/10ths of an inch to the right of the center of a bill.

Accordingly, Table 2 indicates that component patterns for a $20 bill scanned in the forward direction are obtained by scanning an old $20 bill 2/10ths of a inch to the right and to the left of the center of the bill and by scanning a new $20 bill directly down the center of the bill. FIG. **15***d* is a graph illustrating these three patterns. These three patterns are then averaged to obtain the master pattern for a $20 bill scanned in the forward direction. FIG. **15***e* is a graph illustrating an pattern for a $20 bill scanned in the forward direction derived by averaging the patterns of FIG. **15***d*. This pattern becomes the corresponding $20 master pattern after undergoing normalization. In generating the master patterns, one may use a scanning device in which a bill to be scanned is held stationary and a scanhead is moved over the bill. Such a device permits the scanhead to be moved laterally, left and right, over a bill to be scanned and thus permits the scanhead to be positioned over the area of the bill which one wishes to scan, for example, 2/10ths of inch to the left of the center of the borderlined area.

As discussed above, for $10 bills two patterns are obtained in each scan direction with one pattern being scanned slightly to the left of the center and one pattern being scanned slightly to the right of the center. For $5 bills, it has been found that some $5 bills are printed with darker stairs ("dk str") on the picture of the Lincoln Memorial while others are printed with lighter stairs ("lt str"). The effect of this variance is averaged out by using an old bill having light stairs and a new bill having dark stairs.

As can be seen from Table 2, for some bills, the third method of using old and new bills is not used; rather, a standard ("std") bill is used for generating all three component patterns as with the first method. Thus, the master pattern for a $1 bill scanned in the forward direction is obtained by averaging three component patterns generated by scanning a standard bill three times, once 2/10ths of an inch to the left, once down the center, and once 2/10ths of an inch to the right.

As illustrated by Table 2, a discrimination system may employ a combination of the developed methods of this invention wherein, for example, some master patterns are generated according the first method and some master patterns are generated according to the third method. Likewise, a discrimination system may combine the scanning of new, standard, and old bills to generate component patterns to be averaged in obtaining a master pattern. Additionally, a discrimination system may generate master patterns by scanning bills of various qualities and/or having various characteristics and then averaging the resultant patterns. Alternatively, a discrimination system may scan multiple bills of a given quality for a given denomination, e.g., three new $50 bills, while scanning one or more bills of a different quality for a different denomination, e.g., three old and worn $1 bills, to generate component patterns to be averaged in obtaining master patterns.

The optical sensing and correlation technique described above permits identification of pre-programmed currency denominations with a high degree of accuracy and is based upon a relatively low processing time for digitizing sampled reflectance values and comparing them to the master characteristic patterns. The approach is used to scan currency bills, normalize the scanned data and generate master patterns in such a way that bill scans during operation have a direct correspondence between compared sample points in portions of the bills which possess the most distinguishable printed indicia. A relatively low number of reflectance samples is required in order to be able to adequately distinguish among several currency denominations.

An advantage with this approach is that it is not required that currency bills be scanned along their wide dimensions. Further, the reduction in the number of samples reduces the processing time to such an extent that additional comparisons can be made during the time available between the scanning of successive bills. More specifically, as described above, it becomes possible to compare a test pattern with multiple stored master characteristic patterns so that the system is made capable of identifying currency which is scanned in the "forward" or "reverse" directions along the green surface of the bill.

Another advantage accruing from the reduction in processing time realized by the sensing and correlation scheme

is that the response time involved in either stopping the transport of a bill that has been identified as "spurious", i.e., not corresponding to any of the stored master characteristic patterns, or diverting such a bill to a separate stacker bin, is correspondingly shortened. Accordingly, the system can conveniently be programmed to set a flag when a scanned pattern does not correspond to any of the master patterns. The identification of such a condition can be used to stop the bill transport drive motor for the mechanism. Since the optical encoder is tied to the rotational movement of the drive motor, synchronism can be maintained between pre- and post-stop conditions.

The correlation procedure and the accuracy with which a denomination is identified directly relates to the degree of correspondence between reflectance samples on the test pattern and corresponding samples on the stored master patterns. Thus, shrinkage of "used" bills which, in turn, causes corresponding reductions in both their narrow and wide dimensions, can possibly produce a drop in the degree of correlation between such used bills of a given denomination and the corresponding master patterns. Currency bills which have experienced a high degree of usage exhibit such a reduction in both the narrow and wide dimensions of the bills. While the illustrated sensing and correlation technique remains relatively independent of any changes in the non-preselected dimension of bills, reduction along the preselected dimension can affect correlation factors by realizing a relative displacement of reflectance samples obtained as the "shrunk" bills are transported across the scanhead. Thus, if the bills are transported and scanned along their wide dimension, the sensing and correlation technique will remain relatively independent of any changes in the narrow dimension of bills and reduction along the wide dimension can affect correlation factors. Similarly, if the bills are transported and scanned along their narrow dimension, the sensing and correlation technique will remain relatively independent of any changes in the wide dimension of bills and reduction along the narrow dimension can affect correlation factors.

In order to accommodate or nullify the effect of such bill shrinking, the above-described correlation technique can be modified by use of a progressive shifting approach whereby a test pattern which does not correspond to any of the master patterns is partitioned into predefined sections, and samples in successive sections are progressively shifted and compared again to the stored patterns in order to identify the denomination. It has experimentally been determined that such progressive shifting effectively counteracts any sample displacement resulting from shrinkage of a bill along the preselected dimension.

The progressive shifting effect is best illustrated by the correlation patterns shown in FIGS. **16***a–e*. For purposes of clarity, the illustrated patterns were generated using 128 samples for each bill scan as compared to the preferred use of 64 samples. FIG. **16***a* shows the correlation between a test pattern (represented by a heavy line) and a corresponding master pattern (represented by a thin line). It is clear from FIG. **16***a* that the degree of correlation between the two patterns is relatively low and exhibits a correlation factor of 606.

The manner in which the correlation between these patterns is increased by employing progressive shifting is best illustrated by considering the correlation at the reference points designated as A–E along the axis defining the number of samples. The effect on correlation produced by "single" progressive shifting is shown in FIG. **16***b* which shows "single" shifting of the test pattern of FIG. **16***a*. This is effected by dividing the test pattern into two equal segments each comprising 64 samples. The first segment is retained without any shift, whereas the second segment is shifted by a factor of one data sample. Under these conditions, it is found that the correlation factor at the reference points located in the shifted section, particularly at point E, is improved.

FIG. **16***c* shows the effect produced by "double" progressive shifting whereby sections of the test pattern are shifted in three stages. This is accomplished by dividing the overall pattern into three approximately equal sized sections. Section one is not shifted, section two is shifted by one data sample (as in FIG. **16***b*), and section three is shifted by a factor of two data samples. With "double" shifting, it can be seen that the correlation factor at point E is further increased.

On a similar basis, FIG. **16***d* shows the effect on correlation produced by "triple" progressive shifting where the overall pattern is first divided into four (4) approximately equal sized sections. Subsequently, section one is retained without any shift, section two is shifted by one data sample, section three is shifted by two data samples, and section four is shifted by three data samples. Under these conditions, the correlation factor at point E is seen to have increased again.

FIG. **16***e* shows the effect on correlation produced by "quadruple" shifting, where the pattern is first divided into five (5) approximately equal sized sections. The first four (4) sections are shifted in accordance with the "triple" shifting approach of FIG. **16***d*, whereas the fifth section is shifted by a factor of four (4) data samples. From FIG. **16***e* it is clear that the correlation at point E is increased almost to the point of superimposition of the compared data samples.

In an alternative progressive shifting approach, the degree of shrinkage of a scanned bill is determined by comparing the length of the scanned bill, as measured by the scanhead, with the length of an "unshrunk" bill. This "unshrunk" length is pre-stored in the system memory. The type of progressive shifting, e.g., "single", "double", "triple", etc., applied to the test pattern is then directly based upon the measured degree of shrinkage. The greater the degree of shrinkage, the greater the number of sections into which the test pattern is divided. An advantage of this approach is that only one correlation factor is calculated, as opposed to potentially calculating several correlation factors for different types of progressive shifting.

In yet another progressive shifting approach, instead of applying progressive shifting to the test pattern, progressive shifting is applied to each of the master patterns. The master patterns in the system memory are partitioned into predefined sections, and samples in successive sections are progressively shifted and compared again to the scanned test pattern in order to identify the denomination. To reduce the amount of processing time, the degree of progressive shifting which should be applied to the master patterns may be determined by first measuring the degree of shrinkage of the scanned bill. By first measuring the degree of shrinkage, only one type of progressive shifting is applied to the stored master patterns.

Instead of rearranging the scanned test pattern or the stored master patterns, the system memory may contain pre-stored patterns corresponding to various types of progressive shifting. The scanned test pattern is then compared to all of these stored patterns in the system memory. However, to reduce the time required for processing the data, this approach may be modified to first measure the degree of shrinkage and to then select only those stored patterns from the system memory which correspond to the

measure degree of shrinkage for comparison with the scanned test pattern.

The advantage of using the progressive shifting approach, as opposed to merely shifting by a set amount of data samples across the overall test pattern, is that the improvement in correlation achieved in the initial sections of the pattern as a result of shifting is not neutralized or offset by any subsequent shifts in the test pattern. It is apparent from the above figures that the degree of correlation for sample points falling within the progressively shifted sections increases correspondingly.

More importantly, the progressive shifting realizes substantial increases in the overall correlation factor resulting from pattern comparison. For instance, the original correlation factor of 606 (FIG. **16***a*) is increased to 681 by the "single" shifting shown in FIG. **16***b*. The "double" shifting shown in FIG. **16***c* increases the correlation number to 793, the "triple" shifting of FIG. **16***d* increases the correlation number to 906, and, finally, the "quadruple" shifting shown in FIG. **16***e* increases the overall correlation number to 960. Using the above approach, it has been determined that used currency bills which exhibit a high degree of shrinkage and which cannot be accurately identified as belonging to the correct currency denomination when the correlation is performed without any shifting, can be identified with a high degree of certainty by using progressive shifting approach, preferably by adopting "triple" or "quadruple" shifting.

In currency discrimination systems in which discrimination is based on the comparison of a pattern obtained from scanning a subject bill to stored master patterns corresponding to various denominations, the patterns which are compared to each other significantly influence the performance characteristics of a discrimination system. For example, in the system described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196, the correlation procedure and the accuracy with which a denomination is identified directly relates to the degree of correspondence between reflectance samples on the test pattern and corresponding samples on the stored master patterns. In accordance with method described above, the identity of a bill under test is determined by comparing a scanned pattern generated by scanning the bill under test with one or more master patterns associated with genuine bills. If the scanned pattern sufficiently correlates to one of the master pattern, the identity of the bill may be called. The process of identifying a bill under test may be subjected to a bi-level threshold test as described above.

However, the degree of correlation between a scanned and a master pattern may be negatively impacted if the two patterns are not properly aligned with each other. Such misalignment between patterns may in turn negatively impact upon the performance of a currency identification system. Misalignment between patterns may result from a number of factors. For example, if a system is designed so that the scanning process is initiated in response to the detection of the thin borderline surrounding U.S. currency or the detection of some other printed indicia such as the edge of printed indicia on a bill, stray marks may cause initiation of the scanning process at an improper time. This is especially true for stray marks in the area between the edge of a bill and the edge of the printed indicia on the bill. Such stray marks may cause the scanning process to be initiated too soon, resulting in a scanned pattern which leads a corresponding master pattern. Alternatively, where the detection of the edge of a bill is used to trigger the scanning process, misalignment between patterns may result from variances between the location of printed indicia on a bill relative to the edges of a bill. Such variances may result from tolerances permitted during the printing and/or cutting processes in the manufacture of currency. For example, it has been found that location of the leading edge of printed indicia on Canadian currency relative to the edge of Canadian currency may vary up to approximately 0.2 inches (approximately 0.5 cm).

According to one embodiment of the present invention, the problems associated with misaligned patterns are overcome by employing an improved method of generating multiple scanned and/or master patterns and comparing the multiple scanned and master patterns with each other. Briefly, one embodiment of the improved pattern generation method involves removing data samples from one end of a pattern to be modified and adding data values on the opposite end equal to the data values contained in the corresponding sequence positions of the pattern to which the modified pattern is to be compared. This process may be repeated, up to a predetermined number of times, until a sufficiently high correlation is obtained between the two patterns so as to permit the identity of a bill under test to be called.

One embodiment of the present invention can be further understood by considering Table 3. Table 3 contains data samples generated by scanning the narrow dimension of Canadian $2 bills along a segment positioned about the center of the bill on the side opposite the portrait side. More specifically, the second column of Table 3 represents a scanned pattern generated by scanning a test Canadian $2 bill. The scanned pattern comprises 64 data samples arranged in a sequence. Each data sample has a sequence position, 1–64, associated therewith. The fifth column represents a master pattern associated with a Canadian $2 bill. The master pattern likewise comprises a sequence of 64 data samples. The third and fourth columns represent the scanned pattern after it has been modified in the forward direction one and two times, respectively. In the embodiment depicted in Table 3, one data sample is removed from the beginning of the preceding pattern during each modification.

TABLE 3

Sequence Position	Scanned Pattern	Scanned Pattern Modified Once	Scanned Pattern Modified Twice	Master Pattern
1	93	50	-21	161
2	50	-21	50	100
3	-21	50	93	171
4	50	93	65	191
5	93	65	22	252
6	65	22	79	403
7	22	79	136	312
8	79	136	193	434
9	136	193	278	90
10	193	278	164	0
11	278	164	136	20
12	164	136	278	444
.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.
52	490	-518	-447	-1090
53	-518	-447	-646	-767
54	447	-646	-348	-575
55	-646	-348	-92	-514
56	-348	-92	-63	-545
57	-92	-63	-205	-40
58	-63	-205	605	1665
59	-205	605	1756	1705
60	605	1756	1401	1685
61	1756	1401	1671	2160
62	1401	1671	2154	2271
63	1671	2154	*2240	2240
64	2154	*2210	*2210	2210

The modified pattern represented in the third column is generated by adding an additional data value to the end of the original scanned pattern sequence which effectively removes the first data sample of the original pattern, e.g., 93, from the modified pattern. The added data value in the last

sequence position, 64, is set equal to the data value contained in the 64th sequence position of the master pattern, e.g., 2210. This copying of the 64th data sample is indicated by an asterisk in the third column. The second modified pattern represented in the fourth column is generated by adding two additional data values to the end of the original scanned pattern which effectively removes the first two data samples of the original scanned, e.g., 93 and 50, from the second modified pattern. The last two sequence positions, 63 and 64, are filled with the data value contained in the 63rd and 64th sequence positions of the master pattern, e.g., 2240 and 2210, respectively. The copying of the 63rd and 64th data samples is indicated by asterisks in the fourth column.

In the example of Table 3, the printed area of the bill under test from which the scanned pattern was generated was farther away from the leading edge of the bill than was the printed area of the bill from which the master pattern was generated. As a result, the scanned pattern trailed the master pattern. The embodiment of the pattern generation method described in conjunction with Table 3 compensates for the variance of the distance between the edge of the bill and the edge of the printed indicia by modifying the scanned pattern in the forward direction. As a result of the modification method employed, the correlation between the original and modified versions of the scanned pattern and the master pattern increased from 705 for the original, unmodified scanned pattern to 855 for the first modified pattern and to 988 for the second modified pattern. Accordingly, the bill under test which would otherwise have been rejected may now be properly called as a genuine $2 Canadian bill through the employment of the pattern generation method discussed above.

Another embodiment of the present invention can be understood with reference to the flowchart of FIGS. **17***a*–**17***c*. The process of FIGS. **17***a*–**17***c* involves a method of identifying a bill under test by comparing a scanned pattern retrieved from a bill under test with one or more master patterns associated with one or more genuine bills. After the process begins at step **128***a*, the scanned pattern is compared with one or more master patterns associated with genuine bills (step **128***b*). At step **129** it is determined whether the bill under test can be identified based on the comparison at step **128***b*. This may be accomplished by evaluating the correlation between the scanned pattern and each of the master patterns. If the bill can be identified, the process is ended at step **130**. Otherwise, one or more of the master patterns are designated for further processing at step **131**. For example, all of the master patterns may be designated for further processing. Alternatively, less than all of the master patterns may be designated based on a preliminary assessment about the identity of the bill under test. For example, only the master patterns which had the four highest correlation values with respect to the scanned pattern at step **128***b* might be chosen for further processing. In any case, the number of master patterns designated for further processing is M1.

At step **132**, either the scanned pattern is designated for modification or the M1 master patterns designated at step **131** are designated for modification. In one embodiment of the present invention, the scanned pattern is designated for modification and the master patterns remain unmodified. At step **133**, it is designated whether forward modification or reverse modification is to be performed. This determination may be made, for example, by analyzing the beginning or ending data samples of the scanned pattern to determine whether the scanned pattern trails or leads the master patterns.

At step **134**, the iteration counter, I, is set equal to one. The iteration counter is used to keep track of how many times the working patterns have been modified. Then at step **135**, the number of incremental data samples, R, to be removed during each iteration is set. For example, in one embodiment of the present invention, only one additional data sample is removed from each working pattern during each iteration in which case R is set equal to one.

At step **136**, it is determined whether the scanned pattern has been designated for modification. If it has, then the scanned pattern is replicated M1 times and the M1 replicated patterns, one for each of the M1 master patterns, are designated as working patterns at step **137**. If the scanned pattern has not been designated for modification, then the M1 master patterns have been so designated, and the M1 master patterns are replicated and designated as working patterns at step **138**. Regardless of which pattern or patterns were designated for modification, at step **139**, it is determined whether forward or reverse modification is to be performed on the working patterns.

If forward modification is to be performed, the first R×I data samples from each working pattern are removed at step **140**. The first R×I data samples may either be explicitly removed from the working patterns or be removed as a result of adding additional data samples (step **141**) to the end of the pattern and designating the beginning of the modified pattern to be the R×I+1 sequence position of the original pattern. As a result of the modification, the data sample which was in the 64th sequence position in the original working pattern will be in the 64–(R×I) sequence position. The added data values in the last R×I sequence positions of a working pattern are copied from the data samples in the last R×I sequence positions of a corresponding non-designated pattern at step **141**. After the above described modification, the working patterns are compared with either respective ones of the non-designated patterns (scanned pattern modified/M1 master patterns not designated for modification) or the non-designated pattern (M1 master patterns designated for modification/scanned pattern not designated for modification) at step **142**.

Alternatively, if reverse modification is to be performed, the last R×I data samples from each working pattern are removed at step **143**. The last R×I data samples may either be explicitly removed from the working patterns or be removed as a result of adding additional data samples (step **144**) to the beginning of the pattern and designating the beginning of the modified pattern to start with the added data samples. As a result of the modification, the data sample which was in the 1st sequence position in the original working pattern will be in the (R×I)+1 sequence position. The added data samples in first R×I sequence positions of a working pattern are copied from the data samples in the first R×I sequence positions of a corresponding non-designated pattern at step **144**. After the above described modification, the working patterns are compared with either respective ones of the non-designated patterns (scanned pattern modified/M1 master patterns not designated for modification) or the non-designated pattern (M1 master patterns designated for modification/scanned pattern not designated for modification) at step **142**.

For example, if the scanned pattern is designated for forward modification and four master patterns are designated for further processing, four working patterns are generated from the scanned pattern at step **137**, one for each of the four master patterns. If R is set to two at step **135**, during the first iteration the last two data samples from each of the M1 master patterns are copied and added to the end

of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last two sequence positions of the M1 working patterns, one working pattern being associated with each of the M1 master patterns. As a result, after the first iteration, four different working patterns are generated with each working pattern corresponding to a modified version of the scanned pattern but with each having data values in its last two sequence positions copied from the last two sequence positions of a respective one of the M1 master patterns. After a second iteration, the last four sequence positions of each of the M1 master patterns are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last four sequence positions of a respective one of the M1 working patterns.

As another example, if four master patterns are designated for further processing and the four designated master patterns are designated for forward modification, four working patterns are generated at step **138**, one from each of the four designated master patterns. If R is set to two at step **135**, during the first iteration the last two data samples of the scanned pattern are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last two sequence positions of the M1 working patterns, one working pattern being associated with each of the M1 master patterns. As a result, after the first iteration, four different working patterns are generated with each working pattern corresponding to a modified version of a corresponding master pattern but with each having data values in its last two sequence position copied from the last two sequence positions of the scanned pattern. After a second iteration, the last four sequence positions of the scanned pattern are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last four sequence positions of the M1 working patterns.

After the comparison at step **142**, it is determined whether the bill under test can be identified at step **145**. If the bill can be identified the process is ended at step **146**. Otherwise, the iteration counter, I, is incremented by one (step **147**) and the incremented iteration counter is compared to a maximum iteration number, T (step **148**). If the iteration counter, I, is greater than the maximum iteration number, T, then a no call is issued (step **149***a*), meaning that a match sufficient to identify the bill under test was not obtained, and the process is ended (step **149***b*). Otherwise, if the iteration is not greater than the maximum iteration number, the modification process is repeated beginning with step **136**.

The flowchart of FIGS. **17***a*–**17***c* is intended to illustrate one embodiment of the present invention. However, it is recognized that there are numerous ways in which the steps of the flowchart of FIGS. **17***a*–**17***c* may be rearranged or altered and yet still result in the comparison of the same patterns as would be compared if the steps of FIGS. **17***a*–**17***c* were followed exactly. For example, instead of generating multiple working patterns, a single working pattern may be generated and the leading or trailing sequence positions successively altered before comparisons to corresponding non-designated patterns. Likewise, instead of generating multiple modified patterns directly from unmodified patterns, multiple modified patterns may be generated from the preceding modified patterns. For example, instead of generating a twice forward modified scanned pattern by removing the first two data samples from the original scanned pattern and copying the last 2R sequence positions of a corresponding master pattern and adding these data values to the end of the original scanned pattern, the first data sample of the single forward modified scanned pattern may be removed and one data sample added to the end of the single modified scanned pattern and then the data samples in the last two sequence positions may be set equal to the data samples in the last 2R sequence positions of a corresponding master pattern.

In an alternate embodiment of the present invention, instead of copying data values from a scanned pattern into corresponding sequence positions of modified master patterns, leading or trailing sequence positions of modified master patterns are filled with zeros.

In an alternate embodiment of the present invention, modified master patterns are stored, for example in EPROM **60** of FIG. **7***a*, before a bill under test is scanned. In such an embodiment, a scanned pattern retrieved from a bill under test is compared to the modified master patterns stored in memory. Modified master patterns are generated by modifying a corresponding master pattern in either the forward or backward direction, or both, and filling in any trailing or leading sequence positions with zeros. An advantage of such one embodiment is that no modification needs to be performed during the normal operation of an identification device incorporating such an embodiment.

An example of a procedure involved in comparing test patterns to master patterns is illustrated at FIG. **18***a* which shows the routine as starting at step **150***a*. At step **151***a*, the best and second best correlation results (referred to in FIG. **18***a* as the "#1 and #2 answers") are initialized to zero and, at step **152***a*, the test pattern is compared with each of the sixteen or eighteen original master patterns stored in the memory. At step **153***a*, the calls corresponding to the two highest correlation numbers obtained up to that point are determined and saved. At step **154***a*, a post-processing flag is set. At step **155***a* the test pattern is compared with each of a second set of 16 or 18 master patterns stored in the memory. This second set of master patterns is the same as the 16 or 18 original master patterns except that the last sample is dropped and a zero is inserted in front of the first sample. If any of the resulting correlation numbers is higher than the two highest numbers previously saved, the #1 and #2 answers are updated at step **156**.

Steps **155***a* and **156***a* are repeated at steps **157***a* and **158***a*, using a third set of master patterns formed by dropping the last two samples from each of the 16 original master patterns and inserting two zeros in front of the first sample. At steps **159***a* and **160***a* the same steps are repeated again, but using only $50 and $100 master patterns formed by dropping the last three samples from the original master patterns and adding three zeros in front of the first sample. Steps **161***a* and **162***a* repeat the procedure once again, using only $1, $5, $10 and $20 master patterns formed by dropping the 33rd sample whereby original samples 34–64 become samples 33–63 and inserting a 0 as the new last sample. Finally, steps **163***a* and **164***a* repeat the same procedure, using master patterns for $10 and $50 bills printed in 1950, which differ significantly from bills of the same denominations printed in later years. This routine then returns to the main program at step **165***a*. The above multiple sets of master patterns may be pre-stored in EPROM **60**.

A modified procedure involved in comparing test patterns to green-side master patterns is illustrated at FIG. **18***b* which shows the routine as starting at step **150***b*. At step **151***b*, the best and second best correlation results (referred to in FIG. **18***b* as the "#1 and #2 answers") are initialized to zero and, at step **152***b*, the test pattern is compared with each of the eighteen original green-side master patterns stored in the memory. At step **153***b*, the calls corresponding to the two highest correlation numbers obtained up to that point are determined and saved. At step **154***b*, a post-processing flag is set. At step **155***b* the test pattern is compared with each of a second set of 18 green-side master patterns stored in the

memory. This second set of master patterns is the same as the 18 original green-side master patterns except that the last sample is dropped and a zero is inserted in front of the first sample. If any of the resulting correlation numbers is higher than the two highest numbers previously saved, the #1 and #2 answers are updated at step **156***b*.

Steps **155***b* and **156***b* are repeated at steps **157***b* and **158***b*, using a third set of green-side master patterns formed by dropping the last two samples from each of the 18 original master patterns and inserting two zeros in front of the first sample. At steps **159***b* and **160***b* the same steps are repeated again, but using only $50 and $100 master patterns (two patterns for the $50 and four patterns for the $100) formed by dropping the last three samples from the original master patterns and adding three zeros in front of the first sample. Steps **161***b* and **162***b* repeat the procedure once again, using only $1, $5, $10, $20 and $50 master patterns (four patterns for the $10 and two patterns for the other denominations) formed by dropping the 33rd sample whereby original samples 34–64 become samples 33–63 and inserting a 0 as the new last sample. Finally, steps **163***b* and **164***b* repeat the same procedure, using master patterns for $10 and $50 bills printed in 1950 (two patterns scanned along a center segment for each denomination), which differ significantly from bills of the same denominations printed in later years. This routine then returns to the main program at step **165***b*. The above multiple sets of master patterns may be pre-stored in EPROM **60**.

In one embodiment where conditional black-side correlation is to be performed a modified version of the routine designated as "CORRES" is initiated. The procedure involved in executing the modified version of CORRES is illustrated at FIG. **19***a* which shows the routine as starting at step **180**. Step **181** determines whether the bill has been identified as a $2 bill, and, if the answer is negative, step **182** determines whether the best correlation number ("call #1") is greater than 799. If the answer is negative, the correlation number is too low to identify the denomination of the bill with certainty, and at step **183***b* a black side correlation routine is called (described in more detail below in conjunction with FIGS. **19***b*–**19***c*).

An affirmative answer at step **182** advances the system to step **186**, which determines whether the sample data passes an ink stain test (described below). If the answer is negative, a "no call" bit is set in a correlation result flag at step **183***a*. A "no call previous bill" flag is then set at step **184**, and the routine returns to the main program at step **185**. If the answer at step **186** is affirmative, the system advances to step **187** which determines whether the best correlation number is greater than 849. An affirmative answer at step **187** indicates that the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **188**. A separate register associated with the best correlation number (#1) may then be used to identify the denomination represented by the stored pattern resulting in the highest correlation number. The system returns to the main program at step **185**.

A negative answer at step **187** indicates that the correlation number is between 800 and 850. It has been found that correlation numbers within this range are sufficient to identify all bills except the $2 bill. Accordingly, a negative response at step **187** advances the system to step **189** which determines whether the difference between the two highest correlation numbers ("call #1" and "call #2") is greater than 149. If the answer is affirmative, the denomination identified by the highest correlation number is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **188**. If the difference between the two highest correlation numbers is less than 150, step **189** produces a negative response which advances the system to step **183***b* where the black side correlation routine is called.

Returning to step **181**, an affirmative response at this step indicates that the initial call is a $2 bill. This affirmative response initiates a series of steps **190**–**193** which are similar to steps **182**, **186**, **187** and **189** described above, except that the numbers 799 and 849 used in steps **182** and **187** are changed to 849 and 899, respectively, in steps **190** and **192**. The result is either the setting of a "no call" bit in a correlation result flag at step **183***a*, the setting of the "good call" bit in the correlation result flag at step **188**, or the calling of the black side correlation routine at step **183***b*.

Turning now to FIGS. **19***b* and **19***c* there is shown a flowchart illustrating the steps of the black side correlation routine called at step **183***b* of FIG. **19***a*. After the black side correlation routine is initiated at step **600**, it is determined at step **602** whether the lower read head was the read head that scanned the black side of the test bill. If it was, the lower read head data is normalized at step **604**. Otherwise, it is determined at step **606** whether the upper read head was the read head that scanned the black side of the test bill. If it was, the upper read head data is normalized at step **608**. If it cannot be determined which read head scanned the black side of the bill, then the patterns generated from both sides of the test bill were correlated against the green-side master patterns (see e.g., step **110** of FIG. **12**). Under such a circumstance, the no call bit in the correlation result flag is set at step **610**, the no call previous bill flag is set at step **611**, and the program returns to the calling point at step **612**.

After the lower read head data is normalized at step **604**, or the upper read head data is normalized at step **608**, it is determined whether the best green-side correlation number is greater than 700 at step **614**. A negative response at step **614** results in the no call bit in the correlation result flag being set at step **610**, the no call previous bill flag being set at step **611**, and the program returning to the calling point at step **612**. An affirmative response at step **614** results in a determination being made as to whether the best call from the green side correlation corresponds to a $20, $50, or $100 bill at step **616**. A negative response at step **616** results in the no call bit in the correlation result flag being set at step **610**, the no call previous bill flag being set at step **611**, and thee program returning to the calling point at step **612**.

If it determined at step **616** that the best call from the green side correlation corresponds to a $20, $50, or $100 bill, the scanned pattern from the black side is correlated against the black-side master patterns associated with the specific denomination and scan direction associated the best call from the green side. According to one embodiment, multiple black-side master patterns are stored for $20, $50 and $100 bills. For each of these denominations, three master patterns are stored for scans in the forward and three master patterns are stored for scans in the reverse direction for a total of six patterns for each denomination. For a given scan direction, black-side master patterns are generated by scanning a corresponding denominated bill along a segment located about the center of the narrow dimension of the bill, a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the left of center, and a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the right of center.

For example, at step **618**, it is determined whether the best call from the green side is associated with a forward scan of a $20 bill and, if it is, the normalized data from the black side

of the test bill is correlated against the black-side master patterns associated with a forward scan of a $20 bill at step **620**. Next it is determined whether the black-side correlation number is greater than 900 at step **622**. If it is, the good call bit in the correlation result flag is set at step **648** and the program returns to the calling point at step **646**. If the black-side correlation number is not greater than 900, then the no call bit in the correlation result flag is set at step **642**, the no call previous bill flag is set at step **644**, and the program returns to the calling point at step **646**. If it is determined that the best call from the green side is not associated with a forward scan of $20 bill at step **618**, the program branches accordingly at steps **624–640** so that the normalized data from the black side of the test bill is correlated against the appropriate black-side master patterns.

Referring now to FIGS. **20***a*–**22**, the mechanical portions of the currency discrimination and counting machine include a rigid frame formed by a pair of side plates **201** and **202**, a pair of top plates **203***a* and **203***b*, and a lower front plate **204**. The input receptacle for receiving a stack of bills to be processed is formed by downwardly sloping and converging walls **205** and **206** formed by a pair of removable covers **207** and **208** which snap onto the frame. The rear wall **206** supports a removable hopper **209** which includes a pair of vertically disposed side walls **210***a* and **210***b* which complete the receptacle for the stack of currency bills to be processed.

From the input receptacle, the currency bills are moved in seriatim from the bottom of the stack along a curved guideway **211** which receives bills moving downwardly and rearwardly and changes the direction of travel to a forward direction. The curvature of the guideway **211** corresponds substantially to the curved periphery of the drive roll **223** so as to form a narrow passageway for the bills along the rear side of the drive roll. The exit end of the guideway **211** directs the bills onto a linear path where the bills are scanned and stacked. The bills are transported and stacked with the narrow dimension of the bills maintained parallel to the transport path and the direction of movement at all times.

Stacking of the bills is effected at the forward end of the linear path, where the bills are fed into a pair of driven stacking wheels **212** and **213**. These wheels project upwardly through a pair of openings in a stacker plate **214** to receive the bills as they are advanced across the downwardly sloping upper surface of the plate. The stacker wheels **212** and **213** are supported for rotational movement about a shaft **215** journalled on the rigid frame and driven by a motor **216**. The flexible blades of the stacker wheels deliver the bills into an output receptacle **217** at the forward end of the stacker plate **214**. During operation, a currency bill which is delivered to the stacker plate **214** is picked up by the flexible blades and becomes lodged between a pair of adjacent blades which, in combination, define a curved enclosure which decelerates a bill entering therein and serves as a means for supporting and transferring the bill into the output receptacle **217** as the stacker wheels **212**, **213** rotate. The mechanical configuration of the stacker wheels, as well as the manner in which they cooperate with the stacker plate, is conventional and, accordingly, is not described in detail herein.

Returning now to the input region of the machine as shown in FIGS. **20***a*–**22**, bills that are stacked on the bottom wall **205** of the input receptacle are stripped, one at a time, from the bottom of the stack. The bills are stripped by a pair of stripping wheels **220** mounted on a drive shaft **221** which, in turn, is supported across the side walls **201**, **202**. The stripping wheels **220** project through a pair of slots formed in the cover **207**. Part of the periphery of each wheel **220** is provided with a raised high-friction, serrated surface **222** which engages the bottom bill of the input stack as the wheels **220** rotate, to initiate feeding movement of the bottom bill from the stack. The serrated surfaces **222** project radially beyond the rest of the wheel peripheries so that the wheels "jog" the bill stack during each revolution so as to agitate and loosen the bottom currency bill within the stack, thereby facilitating the stripping of the bottom bill from the stack.

The stripping wheels **220** feed each stripped bill B (FIG. **21***a*) onto a drive roll **223** mounted on a driven shaft **224** supported across the side walls **201** and **202**. As can be seen most clearly in FIGS. **21***a* and **21***b*, the drive roll **223** includes a central smooth friction surface **225** formed of a material such as rubber or hard plastic. This smooth friction surface **225** is sandwiched between a pair of grooved surfaces **226** and **227** having serrated portions **228** and **229** formed from a high-friction material.

The serrated surfaces **228**, **229** engage each bill after it is fed onto the drive roll **223** by the stripping wheels **220**, to frictionally advance the bill into the narrow arcuate passageway formed by the curved guideway **211** adjacent the rear side of the drive roll **223**. The rotational movement of the drive roll **223** and the stripping wheels **220** is synchronized so that the serrated surfaces on the drive roll and the stripping wheels maintain a constant relationship to each other. Moreover, the drive roll **223** is dimensioned so that the circumference of the outermost portions of the grooved surfaces is greater than the width W of a bill, so that the bills advanced by the drive roll **223** are spaced apart from each other, for the reasons discussed above. That is, each bill fed to the drive roll **223** is advanced by that roll only when the serrated surfaces **228**, **229** come into engagement with the bill, so that the circumference of the drive roll **223** determines the spacing between the leading edges of successive bills.

To avoid the simultaneous removal of multiple bills from the stack in the input receptacle, particularly when small stacks of bills are loaded into the machine, the stripping wheels **220** are always stopped with the raised, serrated portions **222** positioned below the bottom wall **205** of the input receptacle. This is accomplished by continuously monitoring the angular position of the serrated portions of the stripping wheels **220** via the encoder **32**, and then controlling the stopping time of the drive motor so that the motor always stops the stripping wheels in a position where the serrated portions **222** are located beneath the bottom wall **205** of the input receptacle. Thus, each time a new stack of bills is loaded into the machine, those bills will rest on the smooth portions of the stripping wheels. This has been found to significantly reduce the simultaneous feeding of double or triple bills, particularly when small stacks of bills are involved.

In order to ensure firm engagement between the drive roll **223** and the currency bill being fed, an idler roll **230** urges each incoming bill against the smooth central surface **225** of the drive roll **223**. The idler roll **230** is journalled on a pair of arms **231** which are pivotally mounted on a support shaft **232**. Also mounted on the shaft **232**, on opposite sides of the idler roll **230**, are a pair of grooved guide wheels **233** and **234**. The grooves in these two wheels **233**, **234** are registered with the central ribs in the two grooved surfaces **226**, **227** of the drive roll **223**. The wheels **233**, **234** are locked to the shaft **232**, which in turn is locked against movement in the direction of the bill movement (clockwise as view in FIG. **20***a*) by a one-way spring clutch **235**. Each time a bill is fed

into the nip between the guide wheels **233, 234** and the drive roll **223**, the clutch **235** is energized to turn the shaft **232** just a few degrees in a direction opposite the direction of bill movement. These repeated incremental movements distribute the wear uniformly around the circumferences of the guide wheels **233, 234**. Although the idler roll **230** and the guide wheels **233, 234** are mounted behind the guideway **211**, the guideway is apertured to allow the roll **230** and the wheels **233, 234** to engage the bills on the front side of the guideway.

Beneath the idler roll **230**, a spring-loaded pressure roll **236** (FIGS. **20***a* and **21***b*) presses the bills into firm engagement with the smooth friction surface **225** of the drive roll as the bills curve downwardly along the guideway **211**. This pressure roll **236** is journalled on a pair of arms **237** pivoted on a stationary shaft **238**. A spring **239** attached to the lower ends of the arms **237** urges the roll **236** against the drive roll **223**, through an aperture in the curved guideway **211**.

At the lower end of the curved guideway **211**, the bill being transported by the drive roll **223** engages a flat guide plate **240** which carries a lower scan head **18**. Currency bills are positively driven along the flat plate **240** by means of a transport roll arrangement which includes the drive roll **223** at one end of the plate and a smaller driven roll **241** at the other end of the plate. Both the driver roll **223** and the smaller roll **241** include pairs of smooth raised cylindrical surfaces **242** and **243** which hold the bill flat against the plate **240**. A pair of O rings **244** and **245** fit into grooves formed in both the roll **241** and the roll **223** to engage the bill continuously between the two rolls **223** and **241** to transport the bill while helping to hold the bill flat against the guide plate **240**.

The flat guide plate **240** is provided with openings through which the raised surfaces **242** and **243** of both the drive roll **223** and the smaller driven roll **241** are subjected to counter-rotating contact with corresponding pairs of passive transport rolls **250** and **251** having high-friction rubber surfaces. The passive rolls **250, 251** are mounted on the underside of the flat plate **240** in such a manner as to be freewheeling about their axes **254** and **255** and biased into counter-rotating contact with the corresponding upper rolls **223** and **241**. The passive rolls **250** and **251** are biased into contact with the driven rolls **223** and **241** by means of a pair of H-shaped leaf springs **252** and **253** (see FIGS. **23** and **24**). Each of the four rolls **250, 251** is cradled between a pair of parallel arms of one of the H-shaped leaf springs **252** and **253**. The central portion of each leaf spring is fastened to the plate **240**, which is fastened rigidly to the machine frame, so that the relatively stiff arms of the H-shaped springs exert a constant biasing pressure against the rolls and push them against the upper rolls **223** and **241**.

The points of contact between the driven and passive transport rolls are preferably coplanar with the flat upper surface of the plate **240** so that currency bills can be positively driven along the top surface of the plate in a flat manner. The distance between the axes of the two driven transport rolls, and the corresponding counter-rotating passive rolls, is selected to be just short of the length of the narrow dimension of the currency bills. Accordingly, the bills are firmly gripped under uniform pressure between the upper and lower transport rolls within the scanhead area, thereby minimizing the possibility of bill skew and enhancing the reliability of the overall scanning and recognition process.

The positive guiding arrangement described above is advantageous in that uniform guiding pressure is maintained on the bills as they are transported through the optical scanhead area, and twisting or skewing of the bills is substantially reduced. This positive action is supplemented by the use of the H-springs **252, 253** for uniformly biasing the passive rollers into contact with the active rollers so that bill twisting or skew resulting from differential pressure applied to the bills along the transport path is avoided. The O-rings **244, 245** function as simple, yet extremely effective means for ensuring that the central portions of the bills are held flat.

The location of a magnetic head **256** and a magnetic head adjustment screw **257** are illustrated in FIG. **23**. The adjustment screw **257** adjusts the proximity of the magnetic head **256** relative to a passing bill and thereby adjusts the strength of the magnetic field in the vicinity of the bill.

FIG. **22** shows the mechanical arrangement for driving the various means for transporting currency bills through the machine. A motor **260** drives a shaft **261** carrying a pair of pulleys **262** and **263**. The pulley **262** drives the roll **241** through a belt **264** and pulley **265**, and the pulley **263** drives the roll **223** through a belt **266** and pulley **267**. Both pulleys **265** and **267** are larger than pulleys **262** and **263** in order to achieve the desired speed reduction from the typically high speed at which the motor **260** operates.

The shaft **221** of the stripping wheels **220** is driven by means of a pulley **268** provided thereon and linked to a corresponding pulley **269** on the shaft **224** through a belt **270**. The pulleys **268** and **269** are of the same diameter so that the shafts **221** and **224** rotate in unison.

As shown in FIG. **20***b*, the optical encoder **32** is mounted on the shaft of the roller **241** for precisely tracking the position of each bill as it is transported through the machine, as discussed in detail above in connection with the optical sensing and correlation technique.

The upper and lower scanhead assemblies are shown most clearly in FIGS. **25–28**. It can be seen that the housing for each scanhead is formed as an integral part of a unitary molded plastic support member **280** or **281** that also forms the housings for the light sources and photodetectors of the photosensors PS1 and PS2. The lower member **281** also forms the flat guide plate **240** that receives the bills from the drive roll **223** and supports the bills as they are driven past the scanheads **18***a* and **18***b*.

The two support members **280** and **281** are mounted facing each other so that the lenses **282** and **283** of the two scanheads **18***a*, **18***b* define a narrow gap through which each bill is transported. Similar, but slightly larger, gaps are formed by the opposed lenses of the light sources and photodetectors of the photosensors PS1 and PS2. The upper support member **280** includes a tapered entry guide **280***a* which guides an incoming bill into the gaps between the various pairs of opposed lenses.

The lower support member **281** is attached rigidly to the machine frame. The upper support member **280**, however, is mounted for limited vertical movement when it is lifted manually by a handle **284**, to facilitate the clearing of any paper jams that occur beneath the member **280**. To allow for such vertical movement, the member **280** is slidably mounted on a pair of posts **285** and **286** on the machine frame, with a pair of springs **287** and **288** biasing the member **280** to its lowermost position.

Each of the two optical scanheads **18***a* and **18***b* housed in the support members **280, 281** includes a pair of light sources acting in combination to uniformly illuminate light strips of the desired dimension on opposite sides of a bill as it is transported across the plate **240**. Thus, the upper scanhead **18***a* includes a pair of LEDs **22***a*, directing light downwardly through an optical mask on top of the lens **282**

onto a bill traversing the flat guide plate **240** beneath the scanhead. The LEDs **22***a* are angularly disposed relative to the vertical axis of the scanhead so that their respective light beams combine to illuminate the desired light strip defined by an aperture in the mask. The scanhead **18***a* also includes a photodetector **26***a* mounted directly over the center of the illuminated strip for sensing the light reflected off the strip. The photodetector **26***a* is linked to the CPU **30** through the ADC **28** for processing the sensed data as described above.

When the photodetector **26***a* is positioned on an axis passing through the center of the illuminated strip, the illumination by the LED's as a function of the distance from the central point "0" along the X axis, should optimally approximate a step function as illustrated by the curve A in FIG. **29**. With the use of a single light source angularly displaced relative to a vertical axis through the center of the illuminated strip, the variation in illumination by an LED typically approximates a Gaussian function, as illustrated by the curve B in FIG. **29**.

The two LEDs **22***a* are angularly disposed relative to the vertical axis by angles α and β, respectively. The angles α and β are selected to be such that the resultant strip illumination by the LED's is as close as possible to the optimum distribution curve A in FIG. **29**. The LED illumination distribution realized by this arrangement is illustrated by the curve designated as "C" in FIG. **29** which effectively merges the individual Gaussian distributions of each light source to yield a composite distribution which sufficiently approximates the optimum curve A.

In the particular embodiment of the scanheads **18***a* and **18***b* illustrated in the drawings, each scanhead includes two pairs of LEDs and two photodetectors for illuminating, and detecting light reflected from, strips of two different sizes. Thus, each mask also includes two slits which are formed to allow light from the LEDs to pass through and illuminate light strips of the desired dimensions. More specifically, one slit illuminates a relatively wide strip used for obtaining the reflectance samples which correspond to the characteristic pattern for a test bill. In one embodiment, the wide slit has a length of about 0.500" and a width of about 0.050". The second slit forms a relatively narrow illuminated strip used for detecting the thin borderline surrounding the printed indicia on currency bills, as described above in detail. In one embodiment, the narrow slit **283** has a length of about 0.300" and a width of about 0.010".

In order to prevent dust from fouling the operation of the scanheads, each scanhead includes three resilient seals or gaskets **290, 291,** and **292**. The two side seals **290** and **291** seal the outer ends of the LEDs **22**, while the center seal **292** seals the outer end of the photodetector **26**. Thus, dust cannot collect on either the light sources or the photodetectors, and cannot accumulate and block the slits through which light is transmitted from the sources to the bill, and from the bill to the photodetectors.

Doubling or overlapping of bills in the illustrative transport system is detected by two photosensors PS1 and PS2 which are located on a common transverse axis that is perpendicular to the direction of bill flow (see e.g., FIGS. **30***a* and **30***b*). The photosensors PS1 and PS2 include photodetectors **293** and **294** mounted within the lower support member **281** in immediate opposition to corresponding light sources **295** and **296** mounted in the upper support member **280**. The photodetectors **293, 294** detect beams of light directed downwardly onto the bill transport path from the light sources **295, 296** and generate analog outputs which correspond to the sensed light passing through the bill. Each such output is converted into a digital signal by a conventional ADC convertor unit (not shown) whose output is fed as a digital input to and processed by the system CPU.

The presence of a bill adjacent the photosensors PS1 and PS2 causes a change in the intensity of the detected light, and the corresponding changes in the analog outputs of the photodetectors **293** and **294** serve as a convenient means for density-based measurements for detecting the presence of "doubles" (two or more overlaid or overlapped bills) during the currency scanning process. For instance, the photosensors may be used to collect a predefined number of density measurements on a test bill, and the average density value for a bill may be compared to predetermined density thresholds (based, for instance, on standardized density readings for master bills) to determine the presence of overlaid bills or doubles.

In order to prevent the accumulation of dirt on the light sources **295** and **296** and/or the photodetectors **293, 294** of the photosensors PS1 and PS2, both the light sources and the photodetectors are enclosed by lenses mounted so close to the bill path that they are continually wiped by the bills. This provides a self-cleaning action which reduces maintenance problems and improves the reliability of the outputs from the photosensors over long periods of operation.

The CPU **30**, under control of software stored in the EPROM **34**, monitors and controls the speed at which the bill transport mechanism **16** transports bills from the bill separating station **14** to the bill stacking unit. Flowcharts of the speed control routines stored in the EPROM **34** are depicted in FIGS. **31–35**. To execute more than the first step in any given routine, the currency discriminating system **10** must be operating in a mode requiring the execution of the routine.

Referring first to FIG. **31**, when a user places a stack of bills in the bill accepting station **12** for counting, the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** must accelerate or "ramp up" from zero to top speed. Therefore, in response to receiving the stack of bills in the bill accepting station **12**, the CPU **30** sets a ramp-up bit in a motor flag stored in the memory unit **38**. Setting the ramp-up bit causes the CPU **30** to proceed beyond step **300***b* of the ramp-up routine. If the ramp-up bit is set, the CPU **30** utilizes a ramp-up counter and a fixed parameter "ramp-up step" to incrementally increase the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** until the bill transport mechanism **16** reaches its top speed. The "ramp-up step" is equal to the incremental increase in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**, and the ramp-up counter determines the amount of time between incremental increases in the bill transport speed. The greater the value of the "ramp-up step", the greater the increase in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** at each increment. The greater the maximum value of the ramp-up counter, the greater the amount of time between increments. Thus, the greater the value of the "ramp-up step" and the lesser the maximum value of the ramp-up counter, the lesser the time it takes the bill transport mechanism **16** to reach its top speed.

The ramp-up routine in FIG. **31** employs a variable parameter "new speed", a fixed parameter "full speed", and the variable parameter "transport speed". The "full speed" represents the top speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**, while the "new speed" and "transport speed" represent the desired current speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**. To account for operating offsets of the bill transport mechanism **16**, the "transport speed" of the bill transport mechanism **16** actually differs from the "new speed" by a "speed offset value". Outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism **16** causes the bill transport mechanism **16** to operate at the transport speed.

To incrementally increase the speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**, the CPU **30** first decrements the ramp-up counter from its maximum value (step **301**). If the maximum value of the ramp-up counter is greater than one at step **302**, the CPU **30** exits the speed control software in FIGS. **31–35** and repeats steps **300***b*, **301**, and **302** during subsequent iterations of the ramp-up routine until the ramp-up counter is equal to zero. When the ramp-up counter is equal to zero, the CPU **30** resets the ramp-up counter to its maximum value (step **303**). Next, the CPU **30** increases the "new speed" by the "ramp-up step" (step **304**). If the "new speed" is not yet equal to the "full speed" at step **305**, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **306**). The "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** at step **307** of the routine in FIG. **31** to change the speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** to the "transport speed". During subsequent iterations of the ramp-up routine, the CPU **30** repeats steps **300***b***–306** until the "new speed" is greater than or equal to the "full speed".

Once the "new speed" is greater than or equal to the "full speed" at step **305**, the ramp-up bit in the motor flag is cleared (step **308**), a pause-after-ramp bit in the motor flag is set (step **309**), a pause-after-ramp counter is set to its maximum value (step **310**), and the parameter "new speed" is set equal to the "full speed" (step **311**). Finally, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **306**). Since the "new speed" is equal to the "fall speed", outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism **16** causes the bill transport mechanism **16** to operate at its top speed. The ramp-up routine in FIG. **31** smoothly increases the speed of the bill transport mechanism without causing jerking or motor spikes. Motor spikes could cause false triggering of the optical scanhead **18** such that the scanhead **18** scans non-existent bills.

During normal counting, the bill transport mechanism **16** transports bills from the bill separating station **14** to the bill stacking unit at its top speed. In response to the optical scanhead **18** detecting a stranger, suspect or no call bill, however, the CPU **30** sets a ramp-to-slow-speed bit in the motor flag. Setting the ramp-to-slow-speed bit causes the CPU **30** to proceed beyond step **312** of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32** on the next iteration of the software in FIGS. **31–35**. Using the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32**, the CPU **30** causes the bill transport mechanism **16** to controllably decelerate or "ramp down" from its top speed to a slow speed. As the ramp-to-slow speed routine in FIG. **32** is similar to the ramp-up routine in FIG. **31**, it is not described in detail herein.

It suffices to state that if the ramp-to-slow-speed bit is set in the motor flag, the CPU **30** decrements a ramp-down counter (step **313**) and determines whether or not the ramp-down counter is equal to zero (step **314**). If the ramp-down counter is not equal to zero, the CPU **30** exits the speed control software in FIGS. **31–35** and repeats steps **312**, **313**, and **314** of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32** during subsequent iterations of the speed control software until the ramp-down counter is equal to zero. Once the ramp-down counter is equal to zero, the CPU **30** resets the ramp-down counter to its maximum value (step **315**) and subtracts a "ramp-down step" from the variable parameter "new speed" (step **316**). The "new speed" is equal to the fixed parameter "full speed" prior to initiating the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32**.

After subtracting the "ramp-down step" from the "new speed", the "new speed" is compared to a fixed parameter "slow speed" (step **317**). If the "new speed" is greater than the "slow speed", the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **318**) and this "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** (step **307** of FIG. **31**). During subsequent iterations of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine, the CPU **30** continues to decrement the "new speed" by the "ramp-down step" until the "new speed" is less than or equal to the "slow speed". Once the "new speed" is less than or equal to the "slow speed" at step **317**, the CPU **30** clears the ramp-to-slow-speed bit in the motor flag (step **319**), sets the pause-after-ramp bit in the motor flag (step **320**), sets the pause-after-ramp counter (step **321**), and sets the "new speed" equal to the "slow speed" (step **322**). Finally, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **318**). Since the "new speed" is equal to the "slow speed", outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism **16** causes the bill transport mechanism **16** to operate at its slow speed. The ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32** smoothly decreases the speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** without causing jerking or motor spikes.

FIG. **33** depicts a ramp-to-zero-speed routine in which the CPU **30** ramps down the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** to zero either from its top speed or its slow speed. In response to completion of counting of a stack of bills, the CPU **30** enters this routine to ramp down the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** from its top speed to zero. Similarly, in response to the optical scanhead **18** detecting a stranger, suspect, or no call bill and the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32** causing the transport speed to be equal to a slow speed, the CPU **30** enters the ramp-to-zero-speed routine to ramp down the transport speed from the slow speed to zero.

With the ramp-to-zero-speed bit set at step **323**, the CPU **30** determines whether or not an initial-braking bit is set in the motor flag (step **324**). Prior to ramping down the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**, the initial-braking bit is clear. Therefore, flow proceeds to the left branch of the ramp-to-zero-speed routine in FIG. **33**. In this left branch, the CPU **30** sets the initial-braking bit in the motor flag (step **325**), resets the ramp-down counter to its maximum value (step **326**), and subtracts an "initial-braking step" from the variable parameter "new speed" (step **327**). Next, the CPU **30** determines whether or not the "new speed" is greater than zero (step **328**). If the "new speed" is greater than zero at step **328**, the variable parameter "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **329**) and this "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** at step **307** in FIG. **31**.

During the next iteration of the ramp-to-zero-speed routine in FIG. **33**, the CPU **30** enters the right branch of the routine at step **324** because the initial-braking bit was set during the previous iteration of the ramp-to-zero-speed routine. With the initial-braking bit set, the CPU **30** decrements the ramp-down counter from its maximum value (step **330**) and determines whether or not the ramp-down counter is equal to zero (step **331**). If the ramp-down counter is not equal to zero, the CPU **30** immediately exits the speed control software in FIGS. **31–35** and repeats steps **323**, **324**, **330**, and **331** of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine during subsequent iterations of the speed control software until the ramp-down counter is equal to zero. Once the ramp-down counter is equal to zero, the CPU **30** resets the ramp-down counter to its maximum value (step **332**) and subtracts a "ramp-down step" from the variable parameter "new speed" (step **333**). This "ramp-down step" is smaller than the "initial-braking step" so that the "initial-braking step" causes a larger decremental change in the transport speed of

the bill transport mechanism **16** than that caused by the "ramp-down step".

Next, the CPU **30** determines whether or not the "new speed" is greater than zero (step **328**). If the "new speed" is greater than zero, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **329**) and this "transport speed" is outputted to the bill transport mechanism **16** (step **307** in FIG. **31**). During subsequent iterations of the speed control software, the CPU **30** continues to decrement the "new speed" by the "ramp-down step" at step **333** until the "new speed" is less than or equal to zero at step **328**. Once the "new speed" is less than or equal to the zero at step **328**, the CPU **30** clears the ramp-to-zero-speed bit and the initial-braking bit in the motor flag (step **334**), sets a motor-at-rest bit in the motor flag (step **335**), and sets the "new speed" equal to zero (step **336**). Finally, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step **329**). Since the "new speed" is equal to zero, outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism **16** at step **307** in FIG. **31** halts the bill transport mechanism **16**.

Using the feedback loop routine in FIG. **35**, the CPU **30** monitors and stabilizes the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** when the bill transport mechanism **16** is operating at its top speed or at slow speed. To measure the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**, the CPU **30** monitors the optical encoder **32**. While monitoring the optical encoder **32**, it is important to synchronize the feedback loop routine with any transport speed changes of the bill transport mechanism **16**. To account for the time lag between execution of the ramp-up or ramp-to-slow-speed routines in FIGS. **31–32** and the actual change in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**, the CPU **30** enters a pause-after-ramp routine in FIG. **34** prior to entering the feedback loop routine in FIG. **35** if the bill transport mechanism **16** completed ramping up to its top speed or ramping down to slow speed during the previous iteration of the speed control software in FIGS. **31–35**.

The pause-after-ramp routine in FIG. **34** allows the bill transport mechanism **16** to "catch up" to the CPU **30** so that the CPU **30** does not enter the feedback loop routine in FIG. **35** prior to the bill transport mechanism **16** changing speeds. As stated previously, the CPU **30** sets a pause-after-ramp bit during step **309** of the ramp-up routine in FIG. **31** or step **320** of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. **32**. With the pause-after-ramp bit set, flow proceeds from step **337** of the pause-after-ramp routine to step **338**, where the CPU **30** decrements a pause-after-ramp counter from its maximum value. If the pause-after-ramp counter is not equal to zero at step **339**, the CPU **30** exits the pause-after-ramp routine in FIG. **34** and repeats steps **337**, **338**, and **339** of the pause-after-ramp routine during subsequent iterations of the speed control software until the pause-after-ramp counter is equal to zero. Once the pause-after-ramp counter decrements to zero, the CPU **30** clears the pause-after-ramp bit in the motor flag (step **340**) and sets the feedback loop counter to its maximum value (step **341**). The maximum value of the pause-after-ramp counter is selected to delay the CPU **30** by an amount of time sufficient to permit the bill transport mechanism **16** to adjust to a new transport speed prior to the CPU **30** monitoring the new transport speed with the feedback loop routine in FIG. **35**.

Referring now to the feedback loop routine in FIG. **35**, if the motor-at-rest bit in the motor flag is not set at step **342**, the CPU **30** decrements a feedback loop counter from its maximum value (step **343**). If the feedback loop counter is not equal to zero at step **344**, the CPU **30** immediately exits the feedback loop routine in FIG. **35** and repeats steps **342**, **343**, and **344** of the feedback loop routine during subsequent iterations of the speed control software in FIGS. **31–36** until the feedback loop counter is equal to zero. Once the feedback loop counter is decremented to zero, the CPU **30** resets the feedback loop counter to its maximum value (step **345**), stores the present count of the optical encoder **32** (step **346**), and calculates a variable parameter "actual difference" between the present count and a previous count of the optical encoder **32** (step **347**). The "actual difference" between the present and previous encoder counts represents the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16**. The larger the "actual difference" between the present and previous encoder counts, the greater the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism. The CPU **30** subtracts the "actual difference" from a fixed parameter "requested difference" to obtain a variable parameter "speed difference" (step **348**).

If the "speed difference" is greater than zero at step **349**, the bill transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** is too slow. To counteract slower than ideal bill transport speeds, the CPU **30** multiplies the "speed difference" by a "gain constant" (step **354**) and sets the variable parameter "transport speed" equal to the multiplied difference from step **354** plus the "speed offset value" plus a fixed parameter "target speed" (step **355**). The "target speed" is a value that, when added to the "speed offset value", produces the ideal transport speed. The calculated "transport speed" is greater than this ideal transport speed by the amount of the multiplied difference. If the calculated "transport speed" is nonetheless less than or equal to a fixed parameter "maximum allowable speed" at step **356**, the calculated "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** at step **307** so that the bill transport mechanism **16** operates at the calculated "transport speed". If, however, the calculated "transport speed" is greater than the "maximum allowable speed" at step **356**, the parameter "transport speed" is set equal to the "maximum allowable speed" (step **357**) and is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** (step **307**).

If the "speed difference" is less than or equal to zero at step **349**, the bill transport speed of the bill transport mechanism **16** is too fast or is ideal. To counteract faster than ideal bill transport speeds, the CPU **30** multiplies the "speed difference" by a "gain constant" (step **350**) and sets the variable parameter "transport speed" equal to the multiplied difference from step **350** plus the "speed offset value" plus a fixed parameter "target speed" (step **351**). The calculated "transport speed" is less than this ideal transport speed by the amount of the multiplied difference. If the calculated "transport speed" is nonetheless greater than or equal to a fixed parameter "minimum allowable speed" at step **352**, the calculated "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** at step **307** so that the bill transport mechanism **16** operates at the calculated "transport speed". If, however, the calculated "transport speed" is less than the "minimum allowable speed" at step **352**, the parameter "transport speed" is set equal to the "minimum allowable speed" (step **353**) and is output to the bill transport mechanism **16** (step **307**).

It should be apparent that the smaller the value of the "gain constant", the smaller the variations of the bill transport speed between successive iterations of the feedback control routine in FIG. **35** and, accordingly, the less quickly the bill transport speed is adjusted toward the ideal transport speed. Despite these slower adjustments in the bill transport speed, it is generally preferred to use a relatively small "gain constant" to prevent abrupt fluctuations in the bill transport speed and to prevent overshooting the ideal bill transport speed.

A routine for using the outputs of the two photosensors PS1 and PS2 to detect any doubling or overlapping of bills is illustrated in FIG. **36** by sensing the optical density of each bill as it is scanned. This routine starts at step **401** and retrieves the denomination determined for the previously scanned bill at step **402**. This previously determined denomination is used for detecting doubles in the event that the newly scanned bill is a "no call", as described below. Step **403** determines whether the current bill is a "no call," and if the answer is negative, the denomination determined for the new bill is retrieved at step **404**.

If the answer at step **403** is affirmative, the system jumps to step **405**, so that the previous denomination retrieved at step **402** is used in subsequent steps. To permit variations in the sensitivity of the density measurement, a "density setting" is retrieved from memory at step **405**. The operator makes this choice manually, according to whether the bills being scanned are new bills, requiring a high degree of sensitivity, or used bills, requiring a lower level of sensitivity. If the "density setting" has been turned off, this condition is sensed at step **406**, and the system returns to the main program at step **413**. If the "density setting" is not turned off, a denominational density comparison value is retrieved from memory at step **407**.

The memory according to one embodiment contains five different density values (for five different density settings, i.e., degrees of sensitivity) for each denomination. Thus, for a currency set containing seven different denominations, the memory contains 35 different values. The denomination retrieved at step **404** (or step **402** in the event of a "no call"), and the density setting retrieved st step **405**, determine which of the 35 stored values is retrieved at step **407** for use in the comparison steps described below.

At step **408**, the density comparison value retrieved at step **407** is compared to the average density represented by the output of the photosensor PS1. The result of this comparison is evaluated at step **409** to determine whether the output of sensor S1 identifies a doubling of bills for the particular denomination of bill determined at step **402** or **404**. If the answer is negative, the system returns to the main program at step **413**. If the answer is affirmative, step **410** then compares the retrieved density comparison value to the average density represented by the output of the second sensor PS2. The result of this comparison is evaluated at step **411** to determine whether the output of the photosensor PS2 identifies a doubling of bills. Affirmative answers at both step **409** and step **411** result in the setting of a "doubles error" flag at step **412**, and the system then returns to the main program at step **413**. The "doubles error" flag can, of course, be used to stop the bill transport motor.

FIG. **37** illustrates a routine that enables the system to detect bills which have been badly defaced by dark marks such as ink blotches, felt-tip pen marks and the like. Such severe defacing of a bill can result in such distorted scan data that the data can be interpreted to indicate the wrong denomination for the bill. Consequently, it is desirable to detect such severely defaced bills and then stop the bill transport mechanism so that the bill in question can be examined by the operator.

The routine of FIG. **37** retrieves each successive data sample at step **450***b* and then advances to step **451** to determine whether that sample is too dark. As described above, the output voltage from the photodetector **26** decreases as the darkness of the scanned area increases. Thus, the lower the output voltage from the photodetector, the darker the scanned area. For the evaluation carried out at step **451**, a preselected threshold level for the photodetector output voltage, such as a threshold level of about 1 volt, is used to designate a sample that is "too dark."

An affirmative answer at step **451** advances the system to step **452** where a "bad sample" count is incremented by one. A single sample that is too dark is not enough to designate the bill as seriously defaced. Thus, the "bad sample" count is used to determine when a preselected number of consecutive samples, e.g., ten consecutive samples, are determined to be too dark. From step **452**, the system advances to step **453** to determine whether ten consecutive bad samples have been received. If the answer is affirmative, the system advances to step **454** where an error flag is set. This represents a "no call" condition, which causes the bill transport system to be stopped in the same manner discussed above.

When a negative response is obtained at step **451**, the system advances to step **455** where the "bad sample" count is reset to zero, so that this count always represents the number of consecutive bad samples received. From step **455** the system advances to step **456** which determines when all the samples for a given bill have been checked. As long as step **456** yields a negative answer, the system continues to retrieve successive samples at step **450***b*. When an affirmative answer is produced at step **456**, the system returns to the main program at step **457**.

A routine for automatically monitoring and making any necessary corrections in various line voltages is illustrated in FIG. **38**. This routine is useful in automatically compensating for voltage drifts due to temperature changes, aging of components and the like. The routine starts at step **550** and reads the output of a line sensor which is monitoring a selected voltage at step **550***b*. Step **551** determines whether the reading is below 0.60, and if the answer is affirmative, step **552** determines whether the reading is above 0.40. If step **552** also produces an affirmative response, the voltage is within the required range and thus the system returns to the main program step **553**. If step **551** produces a negative response, an incremental correction is made at step **554** to reduce the voltage in an attempt to return it to the desired range. Similarly, if a negative response is obtained at step **552**, an incremental correction is made at step **555** to increase the voltage toward the desired range.

Now that a currency scanner has been described in connection with scanning U.S. currency, an additional currency discrimination system of the present invention will be described.

First of all, because currencies come in a variety of sizes, sensors are added to determine the size of a bill to be scanned. These sensors are placed upstream of the scanheads to be described below. One embodiment of size determining sensors is illustrated in FIG. **39**. Two leading/trailing edge sensors **1062** detect the leading and trailing edges of a bill **1064** as it passing along the transport path. These sensors in conjunction with the encoder **32** (FIG. **2***a*–**2***b*) may be used to determine the dimension of the bill along a direction parallel to the scan direction which in FIG. **39** is the narrow dimension (or width) of the bill **1064**. Additionally, two side edge sensors **1066** are used to detect the dimension of a bill **1064** transverse to the scan direction which in FIG. **39** is the wide dimension (or length) of the bill **1064**. While the sensors **1062** and **1066** of FIG. **39** are optical sensors, other means of determining the size of a bill may be employed.

Once the size of a bill is determined, the potential identity of the bill is limited to those bills having the same size. Accordingly, the area to be scanned can be tailored to the area or areas best suited for identifying the denomination and country of origin of a bill having the measured dimensions.

Secondly, while the printed indicia on U.S. currency is enclosed within a thin borderline, the sensing of which may serve as a trigger to begin scanning using a wider slit, most currencies of other currency systems such as those from other countries do not have such a borderline. Thus the system described above may be modified to begin scanning relative to the edge of a bill for currencies lacking such a borderline. Referring to FIG. **40**, two leading edge detectors **1068** are shown. The detection of the leading edge **1069** of a bill **1070** by leading edge sensors **1068** triggers scanning in an area a given distance away from the leading edge of the bill **1070**, e.g., D_1 or D_2, which may vary depending upon the preliminary indication of the identity of a bill based on the dimensions of a bill. Alternatively, the leading edge **1069** of a bill may be detected by one or more of the scanheads (to be described below) in a similar manner as that described with respect to FIGS. *7a* and *7b*. Alternatively, the beginning of scanning may be triggered by positional information provided by the encoder **32** of FIG. *2a–2b*, for example, in conjunction with the signals provided by sensors **1062** of FIG. **39**, thus eliminating the need for leading edge sensors **1068**.

However, when the initiation of scanning is triggered by the detection of the leading edge of a bill, the chance that a scanned pattern will be offset relative to a corresponding master pattern increases. Offsets can result from the existence of manufacturing tolerances which permit the location of printed indicia of a document to vary relative to the edges of the document. For example, the printed indicia on U.S. bills may vary relative to the leading edge of a bill by as much as 50 mils which is 0.05 inches (1.27 mm). Thus when scanning is triggered relative to the edge of a bill (rather than the detection of a certain part of the printed indicia itself, such as the printed borderline of U.S. bills), a scanned pattern can be offset from a corresponding master pattern by one or more samples. Such offsets can lead to erroneous rejections of genuine bills due to poor correlation between scanned and master patterns. To compensate, overall scanned patterns and master patterns can be shifted relative to each other as illustrated in FIGS. **41***a* and **41***b*. More particularly, FIG. **41***a* illustrates a scanned pattern which is offset from a corresponding master pattern. FIG. **41***b* illustrates the same patterns after the scanned pattern is shifted relative to the master pattern, thereby increasing the correlation between the two patterns. Alternatively, instead of shifting either scanned patterns or master patterns, master patterns may be stored in memory corresponding to different offset amounts.

Thirdly, while it has been determined that the scanning of the central area on the green side of a U.S. bill (see segment S of FIG. **4**) provides sufficiently distinct patterns to enable discrimination among the plurality of U.S. denominations, the central area may not be suitable for bills originating in other countries. For example, for bills originating from Country **1**, it may be determined that segment S_1 (FIG. **40**) provides a more preferable area to be scanned, while segment S_2 (FIG. **40**) is more preferable for bills originating from Country **2**. Alternatively, in order to sufficiently discriminate among a given set of bills, it may be necessary to scan bills which are potentially from such set along more than one segment, e.g., scanning a single bill along both S_1 and S_2. To accommodate scanning in areas other than the central portion of a bill, multiple scanheads may be positioned next to each other. One embodiment of such a multiple scanhead system is depicted in FIG. **42**. Multiple scanheads **1072***a–c* and **1072***d–f* are positioned next to each other along a direction lateral to the direction of bill movement. Such a system permits a bill **1074** to be scanned along different segments. Multiple scanheads **1072***a–f* are arranged on each side of the transport path, thus permitting both sides of a bill **1074** to be scanned.

Two-sided scanning may be used to permit bills to be fed into a currency discrimination system according to the present invention with either side face up. An example of a two-sided scanhead arrangement is described above in connection with FIGS. *2a, 6c,* and *6d*. Master patterns generated by scanning genuine bills may be stored for segments on one or both sides. In the case where master patterns are stored from the scanning of only one side of a genuine bill, the patterns retrieved by scanning both sides of a bill under test may be compared to a master set of single-sided master patterns. In such a case, a pattern retrieved from one side of a bill under test should match one of the stored master patterns, while a pattern retrieved from the other side of the bill under test should not match one of the master patterns. Alternatively, master patterns may be stored for both sides of genuine bills. In such a two-sided system, a pattern retrieved by scanning one side of a bill under test should match with one of the master patterns of one side (Match 1) and a pattern retrieved from scanning the opposite side of a bill under test should match the master pattern associated with the opposite side of a genuine bill identified by Match 1.

Alternatively, in situations where the face orientation of a bill (i.e., whether a bill is "face up" or "face down") may be determined prior to or during characteristic pattern scanning, the number of comparisons may be reduced by limiting comparisons to patterns corresponding to the same side of a bill. That is, for example, when it is known that a bill is "face up", scanned patterns associated with scanheads above the transport path need only be compared to master patterns generated by scanning the "face" of genuine bills. By "face" of a bill it is meant a side which is designated as the front surface of the bill. For example, the front or "face" of a U.S. bill may be designated as the "black" surface while the back of a U.S. bill may be designated as the "green" surface. The face orientation may be determinable in some situations by sensing the color of the surfaces of a bill. An alternative method of determining the face orientation of U.S. bills by detecting the borderline on each side of a bill is described above in connection with FIGS. *6c, 6d,* and **12**. The implementation of color sensing is discussed in more detailed below.

According to the embodiment of FIG. **42**, the bill transport mechanism operates in such a fashion that the central area C of a bill **1074** is transported between central scanheads **1072***b* and **1072***e*. Scanheads **1072***a* and **1072***c* and likewise scanheads **1072***d* and **1072***f* are displaced the same distance from central scanheads **1072***b* and **1072***e*, respectively. By symmetrically arranging the scanheads about the central region of a bill, a bill may be scanned in either direction, e.g., top edge first (forward direction) or bottom edge first (reverse direction). As described above with respect to FIGS. **1–7***b*, master patterns are stored from the scanning of genuine bills in both the forward and reverse directions. While a symmetrical arrangement is preferred, it is not essential provided appropriate master patterns are stored for a non-symmetrical system.

While FIG. **42** illustrates a system having three scanheads per side, any number of scanheads per side may be utilized. Likewise, it is not necessary that there be a scanhead positioned over the central region of a bill. For example, FIG. **43** illustrates another embodiment of the present invention capable of scanning the segments S_1 and S_2 of FIG. **40**.

Scanheads **1076***a*, **1076***d*, **1076***e*, and **1076***h* scan a bill **1078** along segment S_1 while scanheads **1076***b*, **1076***c*, **1076***f*, and **1076***g* scan segment S_2.

FIG. **44** depicts another embodiment of a scanning system according to the present invention having laterally moveable scanheads **1080***a–b*. Similar scanheads may be positioned on the opposite side of the transport path. Moveable scanheads **1080***a–b* may provide more flexibility that may be desirable in certain scanning situations. Upon the determination of the dimensions of a bill as described in connection with FIG. **39**, a preliminary determination of the identity of a bill may be made. Based on this preliminary determination, the moveable scanheads **1080***a–b* may be positioned over the area of the bill which is most appropriate for retrieving discrimination information. For example, if based on the size of a scanned bill, it is preliminarily determined that the bill is a Japanese 5000 Yen bill-type, and if it has been determined that a suitable characteristic pattern for a 5000 Yen bill-type is obtained by scanning a segment 2.0 cm to the left of center of the bill fed in the forward direction, scanheads **1080***a* and **1080***b* may be appropriately positioned for scanning such a segment, e.g., scanhead **1080***a* positioned 2.0 cm left of center and scanhead **1080***b* positioned 2.0 cm right of center. Such positioning permits proper discrimination regardless of the whether the scanned bill is being fed in the forward or reverse direction. Likewise scanheads on the opposite side of the transport path (not shown) could be appropriately positioned. Alternatively, a single moveable scanhead may be used on one or both sides of the transport path. In such a system, size and color information (to be described in more detail below) may be used to properly position a single laterally moveable scanhead, especially where the orientation of a bill may be determined before scanning.

FIG. **44** depicts a system in which the transport mechanism is designed to deliver a bill **1082** to be scanned centered within the area in which scanheads **1080***a–b* are located. Accordingly, scanheads **1080***a–b* are designed to move relative to the center of the transport path with scanhead **1080***a* being moveable within the range R_1 and scanhead **1080***b* being moveable within range R_2.

FIG. **45** depicts another embodiment of a scanning system according to the present invention wherein bills to be scanned are transported in a left justified manner along the transport path, that is wherein the left edge L of a bill **1084** is positioned in the same lateral location relative to the transport path. Based on the dimensions of the bill, the position of the center of the bill may be determined and the scanheads **1086***a–b* may in turn be positioned accordingly. As depicted in FIG. **45**, scanhead **1086***a* has a range of motion R_3 and scanhead **1086***b* has a range of motion R_4. The ranges of motion of scanheads **1086***a–b* may be influenced by the range of dimensions of bills which the discrimination system is designed to accommodate. Similar scanheads may be positioned on the opposite side of the transport path.

Alternatively, the transport mechanism may be designed such that scanned bills are not necessarily centered or justified along the lateral dimension of the transport path. Rather the design of the transport mechanism may permit the position of bills to vary left and right within the lateral dimension of the transport path. In such a case, the edge sensors **1066** of FIG. **39** may be used to locate the edges and center of a bill, and thus provide positional information in a moveable scanhead system and selection criteria in a stationary scanhead system.

In addition to the stationary scanhead and moveable scanhead systems described above, a hybrid system having both stationary and moveable scanheads may be used. Likewise, it should be noted that the laterally displaced scanheads described above need not lie along the same lateral axis. That is, the scanheads may be, for example, staggered upstream and downstream from each other. FIG. **46** is a top view of a staggered scanhead arrangement according to one embodiment of the present invention. As illustrated in FIG. **46**, a bill **1130** is transported in a centered manner along the transport path **1132** so that the center **1134** of the bill **1130** is aligned with the center **1136** of the transport path **1132**. Scanheads **1140***a–h* are arranged in a staggered manner so as to permit scanning of the entire width of the transport path **1132**. The areas illuminated by each scanhead are illustrated by strips **1142***a*, **1142***b*, **1142***e*, and **1142***f* for scanheads **1140***a*, **1140***b*, **1140***e*, and **1140***f*, respectively. Based on size determination sensors, scanheads **1140***a* and **1140***h* may either not be activated or their output ignored.

In general, if prior to scanning a document, preliminary information about a document can be obtained, such as its size or color, appropriately positioned stationary scanheads may be activated or laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned provided the preliminary information provides some indication as to the potential identity of the document. Alternatively, especially in systems having scanheads positioned over a significant portion of the transport path, many or all of the scanheads of a system may be activated to scan a document. Then subsequently, after some preliminary determination as to a document's identity has been made, only the output or derivations thereof of appropriately located scanheads may be used to generate scanned patterns. Derivations of output signals include, for example, data samples stored in memory generated by sampling output signals. Under such an alternative embodiment, information enabling a preliminary determination as to a document's identity may be obtained by analyzing information either from sensors separate from the scanheads or from one or more of the scanheads themselves. An advantage of such preliminary determinations is that the number of scanned patterns which have to be generated or compared to a set of master patterns is reduced. Likewise the number of master patterns to which scanned patterns must be compared may also be reduced.

While the scanheads **1140***a–h* of FIG. **46** are arranged in a non-overlapping manner, they may alternatively be arranged in an overlapping manner. By providing additional lateral positions, an overlapping scanhead arrangement may provide greater selectivity in the segments to be scanned. This increase in scanable segments may be beneficial in compensating for currency manufacturing tolerances which result in positional variances of the printed indicia on bills relative to their edges.

Additionally, in one embodiment, scanheads positioned above the transport path are positioned upstream relative to their corresponding scanheads positioned below the transport path.

FIGS. **47***a* and **47***b* illustrate another embodiment of the present in invention wherein a plurality of analog sensors **1150** such as photodetectors are laterally displaced from each other and are arranged in a linear array within a single scanhead **1152**. FIG. **47***a* is a top view while FIG. **47***b* is a side elevation view of such a linear array embodiment. The output of individual sensors **1150** are connected to analog-to-digital converters (not shown) through the use of graded index fibers, such as a "lens array" manufactured by MSG America, Inc., part number SLA20A1675702A3, and subsequently to a CPU (not shown) in a manner similar to that

depicted in FIGS. **1** and **6***a*. As depicted in FIGS. **47***a* and **47***b*, a bill **1154** is transported past the linear array scanhead **1152** in a centered fashion. One length for the linear array scanhead is about 6–7 inches (15 cm–17 cm).

In a manner similar to that described above, based on the determination of the size of a bill, appropriate sensors may be activated and their output used to generate scanned patterns. Alternatively many or all of the sensors may be activated with only the output or derivations thereof of appropriately located sensors being used to generate scanned patterns. Derivations of output signals include, for example, data samples stored in memory generated by sampling output signals. As a result, a discriminating system incorporating a linear array scanhead according the present invention would be capable of accommodating a wide variety of bill-types. Additionally, a linear array scanhead provides a great deal of flexibility in how information may be read and processed with respect to various bills. In addition to the ability to generate scanned patterns along segments in a direction parallel to the direction of bill movement, by appropriately processing scanned samples, scanned patterns may be "generated" or approximated in a direction perpendicular to the direction of bill movement. For example, if the linear array scanhead **1152** comprises one hundred and sixty (160) sensors **1150** over a length of 7 inches (17.78 cm) instead of taking samples for 64 encoder pulses from say 30 sensors, samples may be taken for 5 encoder pulses from all 160 cells (or all those positioned over the bill **1154**). Alternatively, 160 scanned patterns (or selected ones thereof) of 5 data samples each may be used for pattern comparisons. Accordingly, it can be seen that the data acquisition time is significantly reduced from 64 encoder pulses to only 5 encoder pulses. The time saved in acquiring data can be used to permit more time to be spent processing data and/or to reduce the total scanning time per bill thus enabling increased throughput of the identification system. Additionally, the linear array scanhead permits a great deal of flexibility in tailoring the areas to be scanned. For example, it has been found that the leading edge of Canadian bills contain valuable graphic information. Accordingly, when it is determined that a test bill may be a Canadian bill (or when the identification system is set to a Canadian currency setting), the scanning area can be limited to the leading edge area of bills, for example, by activating many laterally displaced sensors for a relatively few number of encoder pulses.

FIG. **48** is a top view of another embodiment of a linear array scanhead **1170** having a plurality of analog sensors **1172** such as photodetectors wherein a bill **1174** is transported past the scanhead **1170** in a non-centered manner. As discussed above, positional information from size determining sensors may be used to select appropriate sensors. Alternatively, the linear array scanhead itself may be employed to determine the size of a bill, thus eliminating the need for separate size determining sensors. For example, all sensors may be activated, data samples derived from sensors located on the ends of the linear array scanhead may be preliminarily processed to determine the lateral position and the length of a bill. The width of a bill may be determined either by employing separate leading/trailing edge sensors or pre-processing data samples derived from initial and ending cycle encoder pulses. Once size information is obtained about a bill under test, only the data samples retrieved from appropriate areas of a bill need be further processed.

FIG. **49** is a top view of another embodiment of a linear scanhead **1180** according to the present invention illustrating the ability to compensate for skewing of bills. Scanhead **1180** has a plurality of analog sensors **1182** and a bill **1184** is transported past scanhead **1180** in a skewed manner. Once the skew of a bill has been determined, for example through the use of leading edge sensors, readings from sensors **1182** along the scanhead **1180** may be appropriately delayed. For example, suppose it is determined that a bill is being fed past scanhead **1180** so that the left front corner of the bill reaches the scanhead five encoder pulses before the right front corner of the bill. In such a case, sensor readings along the right edge of the bill can be delayed for 5 encoder pulses to compensate for the skew. Where scanned patterns are to be generated over only a few encoder pulses, the bill may be treated as being fed in a non-skewed manner since the amount of lateral deviation between a scan along a skewed angle and a scan along a non-skewed angle is minimal for a scan of only a few encoder pulses. However, where it is desired to obtain a scan over a large number of encoder pulses, a single scanned pattern may be generated from the outputs of more than one sensor. For example, a scanned pattern may be generated by taking data samples from sensor **1186***a* for a given number of encoder pulses, then taking data samples from sensor **1186***b* for a next given number of encoder pulses, and then taking data samples from sensor **1186***c* for a next given number of encoder pulses. The number of given encoder pulses for which data samples may be taken from the same sensor is influenced by the degree of skew, the greater the degree of skew of the bill, the fewer the number of data samples which may be obtained before switching to the next sensor. Alternatively, master patterns may be generated and stored for various degrees of skew, thus permitting a single sensor to generate a scanned pattern from a bill under test.

With regards to FIGS. **47–49**, while only a single linear array scanhead is shown, another linear array scanhead may be positioned on the opposite side of the transport path to permit scanning of either or both sides of a bill. Likewise, the benefits of using a linear array scanhead may also be obtainable using a multiple scanhead arrangement which is configured appropriately, for example such as depicted in FIG. **46** or a linear arrangement of multiple scanheads.

In addition to size and scanned characteristic patterns, color may also be used to discriminate bills. For example, while all U.S. bills are printed in the same colors, e.g., a green side and a black side, bills from other countries often vary in color with the denomination of the bill. For example, a German 50 deutsche mark bill-type is brown in color while a German 100 deutsche mark bill-type is blue in color. Alternatively, color detection may be used to determine the face orientation of a bill, such as where the color of each side of a bill varies. For example, color detection may be used to determine the face orientation of U.S. bills by detecting whether or not the "green" side of a U.S. bill is facing upwards. Separate color sensors may be added upstream of the scanheads described above. According to such an embodiment, color information may be used in addition to size information to preliminarily identify a bill. Likewise, color information may be used to determine the face orientation of a bill which determination may be used to select upper or lower scanheads for scanning a bill accordingly or compare scanned patterns retrieved from upper scanheads with a set of master patterns generated by scanning a corresponding face while the scanned patterns retrieved from the lower scanheads are compared with a set of master patterns generated by scanning an opposing face. Alternatively, color sensing may be incorporated into the scanheads described above. Such color sensing may be achieved by, for example, incorporating color filters, colored

light sources, and/or dichroic beamsplitters into the currency discrimination system of the present invention. Color information acquisition is described in more detail in co-pending U.S. application Ser. No. 08/219,093 filed Mar. 29, 1994, for a "Currency Discriminator and Authenticator" incorporated herein by reference. Various color information acquisition techniques are described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,841,358; 4,658,289; 4,716,456; 4,825,246; and 4,992,860.

The operation of a currency discriminator according to one embodiment of the present invention may be further understood by referring to the flowchart of FIGS. **50***a* and **50***b*. In the process beginning at step **1100**, a bill is fed along a transport path (step **1102**) past sensors which measure the length and width of the bill (step **1104**). These size determining sensors may be, for example, those illustrated in FIG. **39**. Next at step **1106**, it is determined whether the measured dimensions of the bill match the dimensions of at least one bill stored in memory, such as EPROM **60** of FIG. **7***a*. If no match is found, an appropriate error is generated at step **1108**. If a match is found, the color of the bill is scanned for at step **1110**. At step **1112**, it is determined whether the color of the bill matches a color associated with a genuine bill having the dimensions measured at step **1104**. An error is generated at step **1114** if no such match is found. However, if a match is found, a preliminary set of potentially matching bills is generated at step **1116**. Often, only one possible identity will exist for a bill having a given color and dimensions. However, the preliminary set of step **1116** is not limited to the identification of a single bill-type, that is, a specific denomination of a specific currency system; but rather, the preliminary set may comprise a number of potential bill-types. For example, all U.S. bills have the same size and color. Therefore, the preliminary set generated by scanning a U.S. $5 bill would include U.S. bills of all denominations.

Based on the preliminary set (step **1116**), selected scanheads in a stationary scanhead system may be activated (step **1118**). For example, if the preliminary identification indicates that a bill being scanned has the color and dimensions of a German 100 deutsche mark, the scanheads over regions associated with the scanning of an appropriate segment for a German 100 deutsche mark may be activated. Then upon detection of the leading edge of the bill by sensors **1068** of FIG. **40**, the appropriate segment may be scanned. Alternatively, all scanheads may be active with only the scanning information from selected scanheads being processed. Alternatively, based on the preliminary identification of a bill (step **1116**), moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned (step **1118**).

Subsequently, the bill is scanned for a characteristic pattern (step **1120**). At step **1122**, the scanned patterns produced by the scanheads are compared with the stored master patterns associated with genuine bills as dictated by the preliminary set. By only making comparisons with master patterns of bills within the preliminary set, processing time may be reduced. Thus for example, if the preliminary set indicated that the scanned bill could only possibly be a German 100 deutsche mark, then only the master pattern or patterns associated with a German 100 deutsche mark need be compared to the scanned patterns. If no match is found, an appropriate error is generated (step **1124**). If a scanned pattern does match an appropriate master pattern, the identity of the bill is accordingly indicated (step **1126**) and the process is ended (step **1128**).

While some of the embodiments discussed above entailed a system capable of identifying a plurality of bill-types, the system may be adapted to identify a bill under test as either belonging to a specific bill-type or not. For example, the system may be adapted to store master information associated with only a single bill-type such as a United Kingdom 5 pound bill. Such a system would identify bills under test which were United Kingdom 5 pound bills and would reject all other bill-types.

The scanheads of the present invention may be incorporated into a document identification system capable of identifying a variety of documents. For example, the system may be designed to accommodate a number of currencies from different countries. Such a system may be designed to permit operation in a number of modes. For example, the system may be designed to permit an operator to select one or more of a plurality of bill-types which the system is designed to accommodate. Such a selection may be used to limit the number of master patterns with which scanned patterns are to be compared. Likewise, the operator may be permitted to select the manner in which bills will be fed, such as all bills face up, all bills top edge first, random face orientation, and/or random top edge orientation. Additionally, the system may be designed to permit output information to be displayed in a variety of formats to a variety of peripherals, such as a monitor, LCD display, or printer. For example, the system may be designed to count the number of each specific bill-types identified and to tabulate the total amount of currency counted for each of a plurality of currency systems. For example, a stack of bills could be placed in the bill accepting station **12** of FIG. **2***a*–**2***b*, and the output unit **36** of FIG. **2***a*–**2***b* may indicate that a total of 370 British pounds and 650 German marks were counted. Alternatively, the output from scanning the same batch of bills may provide more detailed information about the specific denominations counted, for example one 100 pound bill, five 50 pound bills, and one 20 pound bill and thirteen 50 deutsche mark bills. Such a device would be useful in a bank teller environment. A bank customer could hand the teller the above stack of bills. The teller could then place the stack of bills in the device. The device quickly scans the bills and indicates that a total of 370 British pounds and 650 German marks were counted. The teller could then issue the customer a receipt. At some point after the above transaction, the teller could separate the bills either by hand and/or by using an automatic sorter device located, for example, in a back room. The above transaction could then be performed rapidly without the customer being detained while the bills are being sorted.

In a document identification system capable of identifying a variety of bills from a number of countries, a manual selection device, such as a switch or a scrolling selection display, may be provided so that the operator may designate what type of currency is to be discriminated. For example, in a system designed to accommodate both Canadian and German currency, the operator could turn a dial to the Canadian bill setting or scroll through a displayed menu and designate Canadian bills. By pre-declaring what type of currency is to be discriminated, scanned patterns need only be compared to master patterns corresponding to the indicated type of currency, e.g., Canadian bills. By reducing the number of master patterns which have to be compared to scanned patterns, the processing time can be reduced.

Alternatively, a system may be designed to compare scanned patterns to all stored master patterns. In such a system, the operator need not pre-declare what type of currency is to be scanned. This reduces the demands on the operator of the device. Furthermore, such a system would permit the inputting of a mixture of bills from a number of countries. The system would scan each bill and automatically determine the issuing country and the denomination.

In addition to the manual and automatic bill-type discriminating systems, an alternate system employs a semi-automatic bill-type discriminating method. Such a system would work in a manner similar to the stranger mode described above. In such a system, a stack of bills is placed in the input hopper. The first bill is scanned and the generated scanned pattern is compared with the master patterns associated with bills from a number of different countries. The discriminator identifies the country-type and the denomination of the bill. Then the discriminator compares all subsequent bills in the stack to the master patterns associated with bills only from the same country as the first bill. For example, if a stack of U.S. bills were placed in the input hopper and the first bill was a $5 bill, the first bill would be scanned. The scanned pattern would be compared to master patterns associated with bills from a number of countries, e.g., U.S., Canadian, and German bills. Upon determining that the first bill is a U.S. $5 bill, scanned patterns from the remaining bills in the stack are compared only to master patterns associated with U.S. bills, e.g., $1, $2, $5, $10, $20, $50, and $100 bills. When a bill fails to sufficiently match one of the compared patterns, the bill may be flagged as described above such as by stopping the transport mechanism with the flagged bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle.

A currency discriminating device designed to accommodate both Canadian and German currency bills will now be described. According to this embodiment, a currency discriminating device similar to that described above in connection with scanning U.S. currency (see, e.g., FIGS. **1–38** and accompanying description) is modified so as to be able to accept both Canadian and German currency bills. According to one embodiment when Canadian bills are being discriminated, no magnetic sampling or authentication is performed.

Canadian bills have one side with a portrait (the portrait side) and a reverse side with a picture (the picture side). Likewise, German bills also have one side with a portrait (the portrait side) and a reverse side with a picture (the picture side). In one embodiment, the discriminator is designed to accept either stacks of Canadian bills or stacks of German bills, the bills in the stacks being faced so that the picture side of all the bills will be scanned by a triple scanhead arrangement to be described in connection with FIG. **51**. In one embodiment, this triple scanhead replaces the single scanhead arrangement housed in the unitary molded plastic support member **280** (see, e.g., FIGS. **25** and **26**).

FIG. **51** is a top view of a triple scanhead arrangement **1200**. The triple scanhead arrangement **1200** comprises a center scanhead **1202**, a left scanhead **1204**, and a right scanhead **1206** housed in a unitary molded plastic support member **1208**. A bill **1210** passes under the arrangement **1200** in the direction shown. O-rings are positioned near each scanhead, preferably two O-rings per scanhead, one on each side of a respective scanhead, to engage the bill continuously while transporting the bill between rolls **223** and **241** (FIG. **20***a*) and to help hold the bill flat against the guide plate **240** (FIG. **20***a*). The left **1204** and right **1206** scanhead are placed slightly upstream of the center scanhead **1202** by a distance D_3. In one embodiment, D_3 is 0.083 inches (0.21 cm). The center scanhead **1202** is centered over the center C of the transport path **1216**. The center L_C of the left scanhead **1204** and the center R_C of the right scanhead **1206** are displaced laterally from center C of the transport path in a symmetrical fashion by a distance D_4. In one embodiment D_4 is 1.625 inches (4.128 cm).

The scanheads **1202**, **1204**, and **1206** are each similar to the scanheads describe above connection with FIGS. **1–38**, except only a wide slit having a length of about 0.500" and a width of about 0.050" is utilized. The wide slit of each scanhead is used both to detect the leading edge of a bill and to scan a bill after the leading edge has been detected.

Two photosensors **1212** and **1214** are located along the lateral axis of the left and right scanheads **1204** and **1206**, one on either side of the center scanhead **1202**. Photosensors **1212** and **1214** are same as the photosensors PS1 and PS2 describe above (see, e.g., FIGS. **26** and **30**). Photosensors **1212** and **1214** are used to detect doubles and also to measure the dimension of bills in the direction of bill movement which in the embodiment depicted in FIG. **51** is the narrow dimension of bills. Photosensors **1212** and **1214** are used to measure the narrow dimension of a bill by indicating when the leading and trailing edges of a bill passes by the photosensors **1212** and **1214**. This information in combination with the encoder information permits the narrow dimension of a bill to be measured.

All Canadian bills are 6" (15.24 cm) in their long dimension and 2.75" (6.985 cm) in their narrow dimension. German bills vary in size according to denomination. In one embodiment of the currency discriminating system, the discriminating device is designed to accept and discriminate $2, $5, $10, $20, $50, and $100 Canadian bills and 10 DM, 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM German bills. These German bills vary in size from 13.0 cm (5.12") in the long dimension by 6.0 cm (2.36") in the narrow dimension for 10 DM bills to 16.0 cm (6.30") in the long dimension by 8.0 cm (3.15") in the narrow dimension for 100 DM bills. The input hopper of the discriminating device is made sufficiently wide to accommodate all the above listed Canadian and German bills, e.g., 6.3" (16.0 cm) wide.

FIG. **52** is a top view of a Canadian bill illustrating the areas scanned by the triple scanhead arrangement of FIG. **51**. In generating scanned patterns from a Canadian bill **1300** traveling along a transport path **1301**, segments SL_1, SC_1, and SR_1 are scanned by the left **1204**, center **1202**, and right **1206** scanheads, respectively, on the picture side of the bill **1300**. These segments are similar to segment S in FIG. **4**. Each segment begins a predetermined distance D_5 inboard of the leading edge of the bill. In one embodiment D_5 is 0.5" (1.27 cm). Segments SL_1, SC_1, and SR_1 each comprise 64 samples as shown in FIGS. **3** and **5**. In one embodiment Canadian bills are scanned at a rate of 1000 bills per minute. The lateral location of segments SL_1, SC_1, and SR_1 is fixed relative to the transport path **1301** but may vary left to right relative to bill **1300** since the lateral position of bill **1300** may vary left to right within the transport path **1301**.

A set of eighteen (18) master Canadian patterns are stored for each type of Canadian bill that the system is designed to discriminate, three (3) for each scanhead in both the forward and reverse directions. For example, three patterns are generated by scanning a given genuine Canadian bill in the forward direction with the center scanhead. One pattern is generated by scanning down the center of the bill along segment SC_1, a second is generated by scanning along a segment SC_2 initiated 1.5 samples before the beginning of SC_1, and a third is generated by scanning along a segment SC_3 initiated 1.5 samples after the beginning of SC_1. The second and third patterns are generated to compensate for the problems associated with triggering off the edge of a bill as discussed above.

To compensate for possible lateral displacement of bills to be scanned along a direction transverse to the direction of bill movement, the exact lateral location alone which each of

the above master patterns is generated is chosen after considering the correlation results achieved when a bill is displaced slightly to the left or to the right of the center of each scanhead, i.e., lines L_C, S_C, and R_C. For example, in generating a master pattern associated with segment SC_1, a scan of a genuine bill may be taken down the center of a bill, a second scan may be taken along a segment 0.15" to the right of center (+0.15"), and a third scan may be taken along a segment 0.15" to the left of center (−0.15"). Based on the correlation result achieved, the actual scan location may be adjusted slightly to the right or left so the effect of the lateral displacement of a bill on the correlation results is minimized. Thus, for example, the master pattern associated with a forward scan of a Canadian $2 bill using the center scanhead **1202** may be taken along a line 0.05" to the right of the center of the bill.

Furthermore, the above stored master patterns are generated either by scanning both a relatively new crisp genuine bill and an older yellowed genuine bill and averaging the patterns generated from each or, alternatively, by scanning an average looking bill.

Master patterns are stored for nine (9) types of Canadian bills, namely, the newer series $2, $5, $10, $20, $50, and $100 bills and the older series $20, $50, and $100 bills. Accordingly, a total of 162 Canadian master patterns are stored (9 types×18 per type).

FIG. **53** is a flowchart of the threshold test utilized in calling the denomination of a Canadian bill. When Canadian bills are being discriminated the flowchart of FIG. **53** replaces the flowchart of FIG. **13**. The correlation results associated with correlating a scanned pattern to a master pattern of a given type of Canadian bill in a given scan direction and a given offset in the direction of bill movement from each of the three scanheads are summed. The highest of the resulting 54 summations is designated the #1 correlation and the second highest is preliminarily designated the #2 correlation. The #1 and #2 correlations each have a given bill type associated with them. If the bill type associated with the #2 correlation is merely a different series from, but the same denomination as, the bill type associated with the #1 denomination, the preliminarily designated #2 correlation is substituted with the next highest correlation where the bill denomination is different from the denomination of the bill type associated with the #1 correlation.

The threshold test of FIG. **53** begins at step **1302**. Step **1304** checks the denomination associated with the #1 correlation. If the denomination associated with the #1 correlation is not a $50 or $100, the #1 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1900 at step **1306**. If the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 1900, the correlation number is too low to identify the denomination of the bill with certainty. Therefore, step **1308** sets a "no call" bit in a correlation result flag and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**. If, however, the #1 correlation is greater than 1900 at step **1306**, the system advances to step **1312** which determines whether the #1 correlation is greater than 2000. If the #1 correlation is greater than 2000, the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1314** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**.

If the #1 correlation is not greater than 2000 at step **1312**, step **1316** checks the denomination associated with the #2 correlation. If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is not a $50 or $100, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1900 at step **1318**. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1900, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1314** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1900 at step **1318**, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty because the #1 and #2 correlations are both above 1900 and, yet, are associated with different denominations. Accordingly, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1308**.

If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is a $50 or $100 at step **1316**, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1500 at step **1320**. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1500, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1314** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1500 at step **1320**, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty. As a result, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1308**.

If the denomination associated with the #1 correlation is a $50 or $100 at step **1304**, the #1 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1500 at step **1322**. If the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 1500, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty and, therefore, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1308**. If, however, the #1 correlation at step **1322** is greater than 1500, the system advances to step **1312** which determines whether the #1 correlation is greater than 2000. If the #1 correlation is greater than 2000, the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1314** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**.

If the #1 correlation is not greater than 2000 at step **1312**, step **1316** checks the denomination associated with the #2 correlation. If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is not a $50 or $100, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1900 at step **1318**. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1900, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1314** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1900 at step **1318**, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty. Accordingly, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1308**.

If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is a $50 or $100 at step **1316**, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1500 at step **1320**. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1500, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1314** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1500 at step **1320**, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty. As a result, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step **1308** and the system returns to the main program at step **1310**.

Now the use of the triple scanhead arrangement **1200** in scanning and discriminating German currency will be described. When scanning German bills, only the output of the center scanhead **1202** is utilized to generate scanned patterns. A segment similar to segment S of FIG. **4** is scanned over the center of the transport path at a predeter-

mined distance D_6 inboard after the leading edge of a bill is detected. In one embodiment D_6 is 0.25" (0.635 cm). The scanned segment comprises 64 samples as shown in FIGS. **3** and **5**. In one embodiment German bills are scanned at a rate of 1000 bills per minute. The lateral location of the scanned segment is fixed relative to the transport path **1216** but may vary left to right relative to bill **1210** since the lateral position of bill **1210** may vary left to right within the transport path **1216**.

FIG. **54***a* illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 10 DM German patterns. Due to the short length of 10 DM bills in their long dimension relative to the width of the transport path, thirty (30) 10 DM master patterns are stored. A first set of five patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 10 DM bill **1400** in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments all beginning a predetermined distance D_6 inboard of the leading edge of the bill **1400**. Each of these five laterally displaced segments is centered about a respective one of lines L_1–L_5. One such segment $S10_1$ centered about line L_1 is illustrated in FIG. **54***a*. Line L_1 is disposed down the center C of the bill **1400**. In one embodiment lines L_2–L_5 are disposed in a symmetrical fashion about the center C of the bill **1400**. In one embodiment lines L_2 and L_3 are laterally displaced from L_1 by a distance D_7 where D_7 is 0.24" (0.61 cm) and lines L_4 and L_5 are laterally displaced from L_1 by a distance D_8 where D_8 is 0.48" (1.22 cm).

A second set of five patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 10 DM bill **1400** in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines L_1–L_5 all beginning at a second predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill **1400**, the second predetermined distance being less than the predetermined distance D_6. One such segment $S10_2$ centered about line L_1 is illustrated in FIG. **54***a*. In one embodiment the second predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample earlier than D_6, that is about 30 mils before the initiation of the patterns in the first set of five patterns.

A third set of five patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 10 DM bill **1400** in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines L_1–L_5 all beginning at a third predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill **1400**, the third predetermined distance being greater than the predetermined distance D_6. One such segment $S10_3$ centered about line L_1 is illustrated in FIG. **54***a*. In one embodiment the third predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample later than D_6, that is about 30 mils after the initiation of the patterns in the first set of five patterns.

The above three sets of five patterns yield fifteen patterns in the forward direction. Fifteen additional **10** DM master patterns taken in the manner described above but in the reverse direction are also stored.

FIG. **54***b* illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM German patterns. Due to the lengths of 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM bills in their long dimension being shorter than the width of the transport path, eighteen (18) 20 DM master patterns, eighteen (18) 50 DM master patterns, and eighteen (18) 100 DM master patterns are stored. The 50 DM master patterns and the 100 DM master patterns are taken in the same manner as the 20 DM master patterns except that the 50 DM master patterns and 100 DM master patterns are generated from respective genuine 50 DM bills and 100 DM bills while the 20 DM master patterns are generated from genuine 20 DM bills. Therefore, only the generation of the 20 DM master patterns will be described in detail.

A first set of three patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 20 DM bill **1402** in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments all beginning a predetermined distance D_6 inboard of the leading edge of the bill **1402**. Each of these three laterally displaced segments is centered about a respective one of lines L_6–L_8. One such segment $S20_1$ centered about line L_6 is illustrated in FIG. **54***b*. Line L_6 is disposed down the center C of the bill **1402**. In one embodiment lines L_7–L_8 are disposed in a symmetrical fashion about the center C of the bill **1402**. In one embodiment lines L_7 and L_8 are laterally displaced from L_6 by a distance D_9 where D_9 is 0.30" (0.76 cm) for the 20 DM bill. The value of D_9 is 0.20" (0.51 cm) for the 50 DM bill and 0.10" (0.25 cm) for the 100 DM bill.

A second set of three patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 20 DM bill **1402** in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines L_6–L_8 all beginning at a second predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill **1402**, the second predetermined distance being less than the predetermined distance D_6. One such segment $S20_2$ centered about line L_6 is illustrated in FIG. **54***b*. In one embodiment the second predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample earlier than D_6, that is about 30 mils before the initiation of the patterns in the first set of three patterns.

A third set of three patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 20 DM bill **1402** in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines L_6–L_8 all beginning at a third predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill **1402**, the third predetermined distance being greater than the predetermined distance D_6. One such segment $S20_3$ centered about line L_6 is illustrated in FIG. **54***b*. In one embodiment the third predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample later than D_6, that is about 30 mils after the initiation of the patterns in the first set of three patterns.

The above three sets of three patterns yield nine patterns in the forward direction. Nine additional 20 DM master patterns taken in the manner described above but in the reverse direction are also stored. Furthermore, the above stored master patterns are generated either by scanning both a relatively new crisp genuine bill and an older yellowed genuine bill and averaging the patterns generated from each or, alternatively, by scanning an average looking bill.

This yields a total of 84 German master patterns (30 for 10 DM bills, 18 for 20 DM bills, 18 for 50 DM bills, and 18 for 100 DM bills). To reduce the number of master patterns that must compared to a given scanned pattern, the narrow dimension of a scanned bill is measured using photosensors **1212** and **1214**. After a given bill has been scanned by the center scanhead **1202**, the generated scanned pattern is correlated only against certain ones of above described 84 master patterns based on the size of the narrow dimension of the bill as determined by the photosensors **1212** and **1214**. The narrow dimension of each bill is measured independently by photosensors **1212** and **1214** and then averaged to indicate the length of the narrow dimension of a bill. In particular, a first number of encoder pulses occur between the detection of the leading and trailing edges of a bill by the photosensor **1212**. Likewise, a second number of encoder pulses occur between the detection of the leading and trailing edges of the bill by the photosensor **1214**. These first and second numbers of encoder pulses are averaged to indicate the length of the narrow dimension of the bill in terms of encoder pulses.

The photosensors **1212** and **1214** can also determine the degree of skew of a bill as it passes by the triple scanhead

arrangement **1200**. By counting the number of encoder pulses between the time when photosensors **1212** and **1214** detect the leading edge of a bill, the degree of skew can be determined in terms of encoder pulses. If no or little skew is measured, a generated scanned pattern is only compared to master patterns associated with genuine bills having the same narrow dimension length. If a relatively large degree of skew is detected, a scanned pattern will be compared with master patterns associated with genuine bills having the next smaller denominational amount than would be indicated by the measured narrow dimension length.

Table 4 indicates which denominational set of master patterns are chosen for comparison to the scanned pattern based on the measured narrow dimension length in terms of encoder pulses and the measured degree of skew in terms of encoder pulses:

TABLE 4

Narrow Dimension Length in Encoder Pulses	Degree of Skew in Encoder Pulses	Selected Set of Master Patterns
<1515	Not applicable	10 DM
≧1515 and <1550	≧175	10 DM
≧1515 and <1550	<175	20 DM
≧1550 and <1585	≧300	10 DM
≧1550 and <1585	<300	20 DM
≧1585 and <1620	≧200	20 DM
≧1585 and <1620	<200	50 DM
≧1620 and <1655	≧300	20 DM
≧1620 and <1655	<300	50 DM
≧1655 and <1690	≧150	50 DM
≧1655 and <1690	<150	100 DM
≧1690 and <1725	≧300	50 DM
≧1690 and <1725	<300	100 DM
≧1725	Not applicable	100 DM

FIG. **55** is a flowchart of the threshold test utilized in calling the denomination of a German bill. It should be understood that this threshold test compares the scanned bill pattern only to the set of master patterns selected in accordance with Table 4. Therefore, the selection made in accordance with Table 4 provides a preliminary indication as to the denomination of the scanned bill. The threshold test in FIG. **55**, in effect, serves to confirm or overturn the preliminary indication given by Table 4.

The threshold test of FIG. **55** begins at step **1324**. Step **1326** checks the narrow dimension length of the scanned bill in terms of encoder pulses. If the narrow dimension length is less than 1515 at step **1326**, the preliminary indication is that the denomination of the scanned bill is a 10 DM bill. In order to confirm this preliminary indication, the #1 correlation is compared to 550 at step **1328**. If the #1 correlation is greater than 550, the correlation number is sufficiently high to identify the denomination of the bill as a 10 DM bill. Accordingly, a "good call" bit is set in a correlation result flag at step **1330**, and the system returns to the main program at step **1332**. If, however, the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 550 at step **1328**, the preliminary indication that the scanned bill is a 10 DM bill is effectively overturned. The system advances to step **1334** which sets a "no call" bit in the correlation result flag.

If step **1326** determines that the narrow dimension length is greater than or equal to 1515, a correlation threshold of 800 is required to confirm the preliminary denominational indication provided by Table 4. Therefore, if the #1 correlation is greater than 800 at step **1336**, the preliminary indication provided by Table 4 is confirmed. To confirm the preliminary indication, the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag. If, however, the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 800 at step **1336**, the preliminary indication is rejected and the "no call" bit in the correlation result flag is set at step **1334**. The system then returns to the main program at step **1332**.

According to one embodiment, the operator of the above described currency discriminating device designed to accommodate both Canadian and German currency bills pre-declares whether Canadian or German bills are to be discriminated. By depressing an appropriate key on the keypad **62** (FIG. **59**), the display **63** will scroll through five different modes: a count mode, a Canadian stranger mode, a Canadian mixed mode, a German stranger mode, and a German mixed mode. In the count mode, the device acts like a simply bill counter (counting the number of bills in a stack but not discriminating them by denomination). Canadian stranger mode is similar to the stranger mode described below in connection with FIG. **59** but bills are scanned as described above in connection with FIG. **52** and scanned patterns are correlated against Canadian master patterns. Likewise, Canadian mixed mode is similar to the mixed mode described below in connection with FIG. **59** but bills are scanned as described above in connection with FIG. **52** and scanned patterns are correlated against Canadian master patterns. Likewise German stranger and German mixed mode are similar to the stranger and mixed modes described below in connection with FIG. **59** but bills are scanned as described above in connection with the scanning of German bills and scanned patterns are correlated against German master patterns.

FIG. **56** is a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a currency discriminator system **1662** according to the present invention. The discriminator system **1662** comprises an input receptacle **1664** for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism defining a transport path (as represented by arrows A and B) transports the bills in the input receptacle past one or more sensors of an authenticating and discriminating unit **1666** to an output receptacle **1668** where the bills are re-stacked such that each bill is stacked on top of or behind the previous bill so that the most recent bill is the top-most or rear-most bill. The authenticating and discriminating unit scans and determines the denomination of each passing bill. Any variety of discriminating techniques may be used. For example, the discriminating method disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196 (incorporated herein in its entirety) may be employed to optically scan each bill. Depending on the characteristics of the discriminating unit employed, the discriminator may be able to recognize bills only if fed face up or face down, regardless of whether fed face up or face down, only if fed in a forward orientation or reverse orientation, regardless of whether fed in a forward or reverse orientation, or some combination thereof. Additionally, the discriminating unit may be able to scan only one side or both sides of a bill. In addition to determining the denomination of each scanned bill, the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666** may additionally include various authenticating tests such as an ultraviolet authentication test as disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/317,349 filed on Oct. 4, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Authenticating Documents Including Currency."

Signals from the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666** are sent to a signal processor such as a central processor unit ("CPU") **1670**. The CPU **1670** records of results of the authenticating and discriminating tests in a memory **1672**. When the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666** is able to confirm the genuineness and denomination of a bill, the value of the bill is added to a total value counter in memory **1672** that keeps track of the total value

of the stack of bills that were inserted in the input receptacle **1664** and scanned by the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666**. Additionally, depending on the mode of operation of the discriminator system **1662**, counters associated with one or more denominations are maintained in the memory **1672**. For example, a $1 counter may be maintained to record how many $1 bills were scanned by the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666**. Likewise, a $5 counter may be maintained to record how many $5 bills were scanned, and so on. In an operating mode where individual denomination counters are maintained, the total value of the scanned bills may be determined without maintaining a separate total value counter. The total value of the scanned bills and/or the number of each individual denomination may be displayed on a display **1674** such as a monitor or LCD display.

As discussed above, a discriminating unit such as the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666** may not be able to identify the denomination of one or more bills in the stack of bills loaded into the input receptacle **1664**. For example, if a bill is excessively worn or soiled or if the bill is torn a discriminating unit may not be able to identify the bill. Furthermore, some known discrimination methods do not have a high discrimination efficiency and thus are unable to identify bills which vary even somewhat from an "ideal" bill condition or which are even somewhat displaced by the transport mechanism relative to the scanning mechanism used to discriminate bills. Accordingly, such poorer performing discriminating units may yield a relatively large number of bills which are not identified. Alternatively, some discriminating units may be capable of identifying bills only when they are fed in a predetermined manner. For example, some discriminators may require a bill to be faced in a predetermined manner. Accordingly, when a bill is fed face down past a discriminating unit which can only identify bills fed face up, the discriminating unit can not identify the bill. Likewise, other discriminators require a specific edge of a bill to be fed first, for example, the top edge of a bill. Accordingly, bills which are not fed in the forward direction, that is, those that are fed in the reverse direction, are not identified by such a discriminating unit.

According to one embodiment, the discriminator system **1662** is designed so that when the authenticating and discriminating unit is unable to identify a bill, the transport mechanism is stopped so that the unidentified bill is the last bill transported to the output receptacle. After the transport mechanism stops, the unidentified bill is then, for example, positioned at the top of or at the rear of the stack of bills in the output receptacle **1668**. The output receptacle **1668** is preferably positioned within the discriminator system **1662** so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection. Accordingly, the operator is able to easily see the bill which has not been identified by the authenticating and discriminating unit **1666**. The operator may then either visually inspect the flagged bill while it is resting on the top of or at the rear of the stack, or alternatively, the operator may chose to remove the bill from the output receptacle in order to examine the flagged bill more closely. The discriminator system **1662** may be designed to continue operation automatically when a flagged bill is removed from the output receptacle or, according to one embodiment of the present invention, may be designed to require a selection element to be depressed. Upon examination of a flagged bill by the operator, it may be found that the flagged bill is genuine even though is was not identified by the discriminating unit. However, because the bill was not identified, the total value and/or denomination counters in the memory **1672** will not reflect its value. According to one embodiment, such an unidentified bill is removed from the output stack and either re-fed through the discriminator or set aside. In the latter case, any genuine set aside bills are counted by hand.

In some discriminators, unidentified bills are routed to a separate reject receptacle. In prior such systems, an unidentified genuine bill would have to be removed from a reject receptacle and re-fed through the discriminator or the stack of rejected bills would have to be counted by hand and the results separately recorded. Furthermore, because re-fed bills have gone unidentified once, they are more likely to go unidentified again and ultimately may have to be counted by hand. However, as discussed above, such procedures may increase the chance for human error or at least lower the efficiency of the discriminator and the operator.

In order to avoid problems associated with re-feeding bills, counting bills by hand, and adding together separate totals, according to one embodiment of the present invention a number of selection elements associated with individual denominations are provided. In FIG. **56**, these selection elements are in the form of keys or buttons of a keypad **1676** or **62**. Other types of selection elements such as switches or displayed keys in a touch-screen environment may be employed. The operation of the selection elements will be described in more detail in connection with FIG. **59** but briefly when an operator determines that a flagged bill is acceptable, the operator may simply depress the selection element associated with the denomination of the flagged bill and the corresponding denomination counter and/or the total value counter are appropriately incremented and the discriminator system **1662** or **10** resumes operating again. As discussed above, a bill may be flagged for any number of reasons including the bill being a no call or suspect bill. In non-automatic restart discriminators, where an operator has removed a genuine flagged bill from the output receptacle for closer examination, the bill is first replaced into the output receptacle before a corresponding selection element is chosen. An advantage of the above described procedure is that appropriate counters are incremented and the discriminator is restarted with the touch of a single key, greatly simplifying the operation of the discriminator system **1662** or **10** while reducing the opportunities for human error. When an operator determines that a flagged bill is not acceptable, the operator may remove the unacceptable flagged bill from the output receptacle without replacement and depress a continuation key on the keypad **1676** or **62**. When the continuation key is selected the denomination counters and the total value counter are not affected and the discriminator system **1662** or **10** will resume operating again. In automatic restart discriminators, the removal of a bill from the output receptacle is treated as an indication that the bill is unacceptable and the discriminator automatically resumes operation without affecting the denomination counters and/or total value counters.

Turning now to FIG. **57**, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system **1680** comprises an input receptacle **1682** for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism defining a transport path (as represented by arrow C) transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, past one or more sensors of an authenticating and discriminating unit **1684**. Based on the results of the authenticating and discriminating unit **1684**, a bill is either transported to one of a plurality of output receptacles **1686** (arrow D), to a reject receptacle **1688**

(arrow E), or to an operator inspection station **1690** (arrow F). When is bill is determined to be genuine and its denomination has been identified, the bill is transported to one of a plurality of output receptacles. For example, the discriminator system **1680** may comprise seven output receptacles **1686**, one associated with each of seven U.S. denominations, i.e., $1, $2, $5, $10, $20, $50, and $100. The transport mechanism directs (arrow D) the identified bill to the corresponding output receptacle. Alternatively, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines that a bill is a fake, the bill is immediately routed (arrow E) to the reject receptacle **1688**. Finally, if a bill is not determined to be fake but for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit **1684** is not able to identify the denomination of the bill, the flagged bill is routed (arrow F) to an inspection station and the discriminator system **1680** stops operating. The inspection station is preferably positioned within the discriminator system **1680** so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection. If the operator determines that the bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system **1680** resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow G) to the output receptacle associated with the chosen selection element. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system **1680** resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow H) to the reject receptacle **1688** without incrementing the counters associated with the various denomination and/or the total value counters. Alternatively, the discriminator system **1680** may permit the operator to place any unacceptable unidentified bills aside or into the reject receptacle by hand. While transport paths D and G and paths E and H are illustrated as separate paths, paths D and G and paths E and H, respectively, may be the same path so that all bills proceeding to either one of the output receptacles **1686** or the reject receptacle **1688**, respectively, are routed through the inspection station **1690**.

Turning now to FIG. **58***a*, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system **1692** comprises an input receptacle **1694** for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism (as represented by arrow I) transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, past one or more sensors of an authenticating and discriminating unit **1696**. Based on the results of the authenticating and discriminating unit **1696**, a bill is either transported to a single output receptacle **1698** (arrow J) or to an operator inspection station **1699** (arrow K). When is bill is determined to be genuine and its denomination has been identified, the bill is transported to the single output receptacle. Alternatively, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines that a bill is a fake or for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit **1696** is not able to identify the denomination of the bill, the flagged bill is routed (arrow K) to an inspection station and the discriminator system **1692** stops operating. The inspection station is preferably positioned within the discriminator system **1692** so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection. Where a bill has been positively determined to be a fake by the authenticating and discriminating unit **1696**, an appropriate indication, for example, via a message in a display or the illumination of a light, can be given to the operator as to the lack of genuineness of the bill. The operator may then remove the bill without replacement from the inspection station **1699** and select a continuation element. Where a bill has not been positively identified as a fake nor has had its denomination identified and where the operator determines that the bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system **1692** resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow L) to the single output receptacle **1698**. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator removes the bill without replacement form the inspection station and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system **1692** resumes operation without incrementing the counters associated with the various denomination and/or the total value counters. While transport paths J and L are illustrated as separate paths, they may be the same path so that all bills proceeding to the single output receptacle **1698** are routed through the inspection station **1699**.

Turning now to FIG. **58***b*, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system **1693** comprises an input receptacle **1694'** for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism (as represented by arrow I') transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, past one or more sensors of an authenticating and discriminating unit **1696'**. Based on the results of the authenticating and discriminating unit **1696'**, a bill is either transported to one of two output receptacles **1698'** (arrow J') or **1698"** (arrow J") or to an operator inspection station **1699'** (arrow K'). When is bill is determined to be genuine and its denomination has been identified, the bill is transported to one of the two output receptacles. Alternatively, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines that a bill is a fake or for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit **1696'** is not able to identify the denomination of the bill, the flagged bill is routed (arrow K') to an inspection station and the discriminator system **1693** stops operating. The inspection station is preferably positioned within the discriminator system **1693** so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection. Where a bill has been positively determined to be a fake by the authenticating and discriminating unit **1696'**, an appropriate indication, for example, via a message in a display or the illumination of a light, can be given to the operator as to the lack of genuineness of the bill. The operator may then remove the bill without replacement from the inspection station **1699'** and select a continuation element. Where a bill has not been positively identified as a fake nor has had its denomination identified and where the operator determines that the bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system **1693** resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow L' or arrow L") to one of the two output receptacles **1698'** and **1698"**. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator removes the bill without replacement form the inspection station and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system

1693 resumes operation without incrementing the counters associated with the various denomination and/or the total value counters. While transport paths J', J" and L', L" are illustrated as separate paths, they may be the same path so that all bills proceeding to one of the two output receptacles 1698', 1698" are routed through the inspection station 1699'.

Turning now to FIG. 58*c*, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system 2202 comprises an input receptacle 2204 for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism defining a transport path (as represented by arrow M) transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, past one or more sensors of an authenticating and discriminating unit 2206. Bills are then transported to one of a plurality of output receptacles 2208 (arrow N). In one embodiment, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines that a bill is a fake, the flagged bill is routed to a separate one of said output receptacles. The operation of the discriminator may or may not then be suspended. When a bill is not determined to be fake but for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit 2206 is not able to identify the denomination of the bill, the no call bill may be transported one of the output receptacles. In one embodiment, no call bills are transported to a separate one of the output receptacles. In another embodiment, no calls are not delivered to a special separate output receptacle. The operation of the discriminator may or may not then be suspended. For example, in a two output pocket discriminator, all bills may be transported to the same output receptacle regardless of whether they are determined to be suspect, no call, or properly identified. In this example, the operation of the discriminator may be suspended and an appropriate message displayed when a suspect or no call bill is encountered. Alternatively, suspect bills may be delivered to one of the output receptacles (i.e., a reject receptacle) and no calls and identified bills may be sent to the other output receptacle. In this example, the operation of the discriminator need not be suspended when a suspect bill is encountered but may be suspended when a no call bill is encountered. If the operation is suspended at the time the no call bill is detected and the operator determines that the no call bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the output receptacle from which it was removed (if it was removed) and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system 2202 resumes operation. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator removes the bill without replacement form the output receptacle and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system 2202 resumes operation without incrementing the counters associated with the various denomination and/or the total value counters. In another embodiment, no call bills are delivered to on output receptacle separate from the one or more output receptacles receiving identified bills. The operation of the discriminator need not be suspended until all the bills placed in the input receptacle have been processed. The value of any no call bills may then be added to the appropriate counters after the stack of bills has been processed through a reconciliation process. The entering of the value of no call bills is discussed in more detail below in connection with FIGS. 62–67.

Turning now to FIG. 58*d*, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system 2203 comprises an input receptacle 2204' for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism defining a transport path (as represented by arrow M') transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, past one or more sensors of an authenticating and discriminating unit 2206'. Bills are then transported to one of two output receptacles 2208', 2208" (arrows N', N"). In one embodiment, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines that a bill is a fake, the flagged bill is routed to a specific one of said output receptacles. The operation of the discriminator may or may not then be suspended. When a bill is not determined to be fake but for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit 2206' is not able to identify the denomination of the bill, the no call bill may be transported one of the output receptacles. In one embodiment, no call bills are transported to a specific one of the output receptacles. In another embodiment, no calls are not delivered to a special separate output receptacle. The operation of the discriminator may or may not then be suspended. For example, in a two output pocket discriminator, all bills may be transported to the same output receptacle regardless of whether they are determined to be suspect, no call, or properly identified. In this example, the operation of the discriminator may be suspended and an appropriate message displayed when a suspect or no call bill is encountered. Alternatively, suspect bills may be delivered to a specific one of the two output receptacles (i.e., a reject receptacle) and no calls and identified bills may be sent to the other output receptacle. In this example, the operation of the discriminator need not be suspended when a suspect bill is encountered but may be suspended when a no call bill is encountered. If the operation is suspended at the time the no call bill is detected and the operator determines that the no call bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the output receptacle from which it was removed (if it was removed) and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system 2203 resumes operation. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator removes the bill without replacement form the output receptacle and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system 2203 resumes operation without incrementing the counters associated with the various denomination and/or the total value counters. In another embodiment, no call bills are delivered to a specific output receptacle separate from the output receptacle receiving identified bills. The operation of the discriminator need not be suspended until all the bills placed in the input receptacle have been processed. Alternatively, the operation of the discriminator need not be suspended when a no call is encountered but may be suspended when a suspect bill is detected so that the operator may remove any suspect bills from the discriminator. The value of any no call bills may then be added to the appropriate counters after the stack of bills has been processed through a reconciliation process. The entering of the value of no call bills is discussed in more detail below in connection with FIGS. 62–67.

The operation of the selection elements according to one embodiment will now be described in more detail in conjunction with FIG. 59 which is a front view of a control panel 61 of one embodiment of the present invention. The control panel 61 comprises a keypad 62 and a display section 63. The keypad 62 comprises a plurality of keys including seven denomination selection elements 64*a*–64*g*, each associated with one of seven U.S. currency denominations, i.e., $1, $2, $5, $10, $20, $50, and $100. For foreign bill discriminators, the denomination selection elements may be

labeled according to the currency system which a discriminator is designed to handle and accordingly, there may be more or less than seven denomination selection elements. The $1 denomination selection key **64***a* also serves as a mode selection key. The keypad **62** also comprises a "Continuation" selection element **65**. Various information such as instructions, mode selection information, authentication and discrimination information, individual denomination counter values, and total batch counter value are communicated to the operator via an LCD **66** in the display section **63**. A discriminator according to one embodiment of the present invention has a number of operating modes including a mixed mode, a stranger mode, a sort mode, a face mode, and a forward/reverse orientation mode. The operation of a discriminator having the denomination selection elements **64***a*–**64***g* and the continuation element **65** will now be discussed in connection with several operating modes.

(A) MIXED MODE

Mixed mode is designed to accept a stack of bills of mixed denomination, total the aggregate value of all the bills in the stack and display the aggregate value in the display **63**. Information regarding the number of bills of each individual denomination in a stack may also be stored in denomination counters. When an otherwise acceptable bill remains unidentified after passing through the authenticating and discriminating unit, operation of the discriminator may be resumed and the corresponding denomination counter and/or the aggregate value counter may be appropriately incremented by selecting the denomination selection key **64***a*–**64***g* associated with the denomination of the unidentified bill. For example, if the discriminator system **62** of FIG. **56** or **10** of FIG. **1** stops operation with an otherwise acceptable $5 bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle, the operator may simply select key **64***b*. When key **64***b* is depressed, the operation of the discriminator is resumed and the $5 denomination counter is incremented and/or the aggregate value counter is incremented by $5. Furthermore, in the discriminator systems **1680** of FIG. **57** and **1692** of FIG. **58**, the flagged bill may be routed from the inspection station to an appropriate output receptacle. Otherwise, if the operator determines the flagged bill is unacceptable, the bill may be removed from the output receptacle of FIGS. **1** or **56** or the inspection station of FIGS. **8** and **9** (or in the system **1680** of FIG. **57**, the flagged bill may be routed to the reject receptacle **1688**). The continuation key **65** is depressed after the unacceptable bill is removed, and the discriminator resumes operation without affecting the total value counter and/or the individual denomination counters.

(B) STRANGER MODE

Stranger mode is designed to accommodate a stack of bills all having the same denomination, such as a stack of $10 bills. In such a mode, when a stack of bills is processed by the discriminator the denomination of the first bill in the stack is determined and subsequent bills are flagged if they are not of the same denomination. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to permit the operator to designate the denomination against which bills will be evaluated with those of a different denomination being flagged. Assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant denomination and assuming the first bill is a $10 bill, then provided all the bills in the stack are $10 bills, the display **63** will indicate the aggregate value of the bills in the stack and/or the number of $10 bills in the stack. However, if a bill having a denomination other than $10 is included in the stack, the discriminator will stop operating with the non-$10 bill or "stranger bill" being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle in the case of the discriminator system **62** of FIG. **56** or **10** of FIG. **1** (or the inspection station of FIGS. **8** and **9**). The stranger bill may then be removed from the output receptacle and the discriminator is started again either automatically or by depression of the "Continuation" key **65** depending on the set up of the discriminator system. An unidentified but otherwise acceptable $10 bill may be handled in a manner similar to that described above in connection with the mixed mode, e.g., by depressing the $10 denomination selection element **64***c*, or alternatively, the unidentified but otherwise acceptable $10 bill may be removed from the output receptacle and placed into the input hopper to be re-scanned. Upon the completion of processing the entire stack, the display **63** will indicate the aggregate value of the $10 bills in the stack and/or the number of $10 bills in the stack. All bills having a denomination other than $10 will have been set aside and will not be included in the totals. Alternatively, these stranger bills can be included in the totals via operator selection choices. For example, if a $5 stranger bill is detected and flagged in a stack of $10 bills, the operator may be prompted via the display as to whether the $5 bill should be incorporated into the running totals. If the operator responds positively, the $5 bill is incorporated into appropriate running totals, otherwise it is not. Alternatively, when the discriminator stops on a stranger bill, such as a $5, the operator may depress the denomination selection element associated with that denomination to cause the value of the stranger bill to be incorporated into the totals. Likewise for other types of flagged bills such as no calls. Alternatively, a set-up selection may be chosen whereby all stranger bills are automatically incorporated into appropriate running totals.

(C) SORT MODE

According to one embodiment, the sort mode is designed to accommodate a stack of bills wherein the bills are separated by denomination. For example, all the $1 bills may be placed at the beginning of the stack, followed by all the $5 bills, followed by all the $10 bills, etc. Alternatively, the sort mode may be used in conjunction with a stack of bills wherein the bills are mixed by denomination. The operation of the sort mode is similar to that of the stranger mode except that after stopping upon the detection of a different denomination bill, the discriminator is designed to resume operation upon removal of all bills from the output receptacle. Returning to the above example, assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant denomination and assuming the first bill is a $1 bill, then the discriminator processes the bills in the stack until the first non-$1 bill is detected, which in this example is the first $5 bill. At that point, the discriminator will stop operating with the first $5 being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle. The display **63** may be designed to indicate the aggregate value of the preceding $1 bills processed and/or the number of preceding $1 bills. The scanned $1 bills and the first $5 bill are removed from the output receptacle and placed in separate $1 and $5 bill stacks. The discriminator will start again automatically and subsequent bills will be assessed relative to being $5 bills. The discriminator continues processing bills until the first $10 bill is encountered. The above procedure is repeated and the discriminator resumes operation until encountering the first bill which is not a $10 bill, and so on.

Upon the completion of processing the entire stack, the display **63** will indicate the aggregate value of all the bills in

the stack and/or the number of bills of each denomination in the stack. This mode permits the operator to separate a stack of bills having multiple denominations into separate stacks according to denomination.

(D) FACE MODE

Face mode is designed to accommodate a stack of bills all faced in the same direction, e.g., all placed in the input hopper face up (that is the portrait or black side up for U.S. bills) and to detect any bills facing the opposite direction. In such a mode, when a stack of bills is processed by the discriminator, the face orientation of the first bill in the stack is determined and subsequent bills are flagged if they do not have the same face orientation. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to permit designation of the face orientation to which bills will be evaluated with those having a different face orientation being flagged. Assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant face orientation and assuming the first bill is face up, then provided all the bills in the stack are face up, the display **63** will indicate the aggregate value of the bills in the stack and/or the number of bills of each denomination in the stack. However, if a bill faced in the opposite direction (i.e., face down in this example) is included in the stack, the discriminator will stop operating with the reverse-faced bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle. The reverse-faced bill then may be removed from the output receptacle. In automatic re-start embodiments, the removal of the reverse-faced bill causes the discriminator to continue operating. The removed bill may then be placed into the input receptacle with the proper face orientation. Alternatively, in non-automatic re-start embodiments, the reverse-faced bill may be either placed into the input receptacle with the proper face orientation and the continuation key **65** depressed, or placed back into the output receptacle with the proper face orientation. Depending on the set up of the discriminator when a bill is placed back into the output receptacle with the proper face orientation, the denomination selection key associated with the reverse-faced bill may be selected, whereby the associated denomination counter and/or aggregate value counter are appropriately incremented and the discriminator resumes operation. Alternatively, in embodiments wherein the discriminator is capable of determining denomination regardless of face orientation, the continuation key **65** or a third key may be depressed whereby the discriminator resumes operation and the appropriate denomination counter and/or total value counter is incremented in accordance with the denomination identified by the discriminating unit. In discriminators that require a specific face orientation, any reverse-faced bills will be unidentified bills. In discriminators that can accept a bill regardless of face orientation, reverse-faced bills may be properly identified. The later type of discriminator may have a discriminating unit with a scanhead on each side of the transport path. Examples of such dual-sided discriminators are disclosed above (see e.g., FIGS. **2***a*, **6***c*, **20***a*, **26**, and **42**. The ability to detect and correct for reverse-faced bills is important as the Federal Reserve requires currency it receives to be faced in the same direction.

In a multi-output receptacle discriminator, the face mode may be used to route all bills facing upward to one output receptacle and all bills facing downward to another output receptacle. In single-sided discriminators, reverse-faced bills may be routed to an inspection station such as **1690** of FIG. **57** for manual turnover by the operator and the unidentified reverse-faced bills may then be passed by the discriminator again. In dual-sided discriminators, identified reverse-faced bills may be routed directly to an appropriate output receptacle. For example, in dual-sided discriminators bills may be sorted both by face orientation and by denomination, e.g., face up $1 bills into pocket #1, face down $1 bills into pocket #2, face up $5 bills into pocket #3, and so on or simply by denomination, regardless of face orientation, e.g., all $1 bills into pocket #1 regardless of face orientation, all $2 bills into pocket #2, etc.

(E) FORWARD/REVERSE ORIENTATION MODE

Forward/Reverse Orientation mode ("Orientation" mode) is designed to accommodate a stack of bills all oriented in a predetermined forward or reverse orientation direction. For example in a discriminator that feeds bills along their narrow dimension, the forward direction may be defined as the fed direction whereby the top edge of a bill is fed first and conversely for the reverse direction. In a discriminator that feeds bills along their long dimension, the forward direction may be defined as the fed direction whereby the left edge of a bill is fed first and conversely for the reverse direction. In such a mode, when a stack of bills is processed by the discriminator, the forward/reverse orientation of the first bill in the stack is determined and subsequent bills are flagged if they do not have the same forward/reverse orientation. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to permit the operator to designate the forward/reverse orientation against which bills will be evaluated with those having a different forward/reverse orientation being flagged. Assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant forward/reverse orientation and assuming the first bill is fed in the forward direction, then provided all the bills in the stack are also fed in the forward direction, the display **63** will indicate the aggregate value of the bills in the stack and/or the number of bills of each denomination in the stack. However, if a bill having the opposite forward/reverse orientation is included in the stack, the discriminator will stop operating with the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle. The opposite forward/reverse oriented bill then may be removed from the output receptacle. In automatic re-start embodiments, the removal of the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill causes the discriminator to continue operating. The removed bill may then be placed into the input receptacle with the proper face orientation. Alternatively, in non-automatic re-start embodiments, the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill may be either placed into the input receptacle with the proper forward/reverse orientation and the continuation key **65** depressed, or placed back into the output receptacle with the proper forward/reverse orientation. Depending on the set up of the discriminator when a bill is placed back into the output receptacle with the proper forward/reverse orientation, the denomination selection key associated with the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill may be selected, whereby the associated denomination counter and/or aggregate value counter are appropriately incremented and the discriminator resumes operation. Alternatively, in embodiments wherein the discriminator is capable of determining denomination regardless of forward/reverse orientation, the continuation key **65** or a the third key may be depressed whereby the discriminator resumes operation and the appropriate denomination counter and/or total value counter is incremented in accordance with the denomination identified by the discriminating unit. In single-direction discriminators, any reverse-oriented bills will be unidentified bills. In dual-direction discriminators, reverse-oriented bills may be properly identified by the discriminating unit.

An example of a dual-direction discriminating system is described above connection with FIGS. **1–7***b* and in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196. The ability to detect and correct for reverse-oriented bills is important as the Federal Reserve may soon require currency it receives to be oriented in the same forward/reverse direction.

In a multi-output receptacle discriminator, the orientation mode may be used to route all bills oriented in the forward direction to one output receptacle and all bills oriented in the reverse direction to another output receptacle. In single-direction discriminators, reverse-oriented bills may be routed to an inspection station such as **1690** of FIG. **57** for manual turnover by the operator and the unidentified reverse-oriented bills may then be passed by the discriminator again. In discriminators capable of identifying bills fed in both forward and reverse directions ("dual-direction discriminators"), identified reverse-oriented bills may be routed directly to an appropriate output receptacle. For example, in dual-direction discriminators bills may be sorted both by forward/reverse orientation and by denomination, e.g., forward $1 bills into pocket #1, reverse $1 bills into pocket #2, forward $5 bills into pocket #3, and so on or simply by denomination, regardless of forward/reverse orientation, e.g., all $1 bills into pocket #1 regardless of forward/reverse orientation, all $2 bills into pocket #2, etc.

SUSPECT MODE

In addition to the above modes, a suspect mode may be activated in connection with these modes whereby one or more authentication tests may be performed on the bills in a stack. When a bill fails an authentication test, the discriminator will stop with the failing or suspect bill being the last bill transported to the output receptacle. The suspect bill then may be removed from the output receptacle and set aside.

Likewise, one or more of the above described modes may be activated at the same time. For example, the face mode and the forward/reverse orientation mode may be activated at the same time. In such a case, bills that are either reverse-faced or opposite forward/reverse oriented will be flagged.

According to one embodiment, when a bill is flagged, for example, by stopping the transport motor with the flagged bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle, the discriminating device indicates to the operator why the bill was flagged. This indication may be accomplished by, for example, lighting an appropriate light, generating an appropriate sound, and/or displaying an appropriate message in the display section **63** (FIG. **59**). Such indication might include, for example, "no call", "stranger", "failed magnetic test", "failed UV test", "no security thread", etc.

Referring now to FIGS. **60***a*–**60***c*, there is shown a side view of one embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention, a top view of the embodiment of FIG. **60***a* along the direction **60***b*, and a top view of the embodiment of FIG. **60***a* along the direction **60***c*, respectively. An ultraviolet ("UV") light source **2102** illuminates a document **2104**. Depending upon the characteristics of the document, ultraviolet light may be reflected off the document and/or fluorescent light may be emitted from the document. A detection system **2106** is positioned so as to receive any light reflected or emitted toward it but not to receive any UV light directly from the light source **2102**. The detection system **2106** comprises a UV sensor **2108**, a fluorescence sensor **2110**, filters, and a plastic housing. The light source **2102** and the detection system **2106** are both mounted to a printed circuit board **2112**. The document **2104** is transported in the direction indicated by arrow A by a transport system (not shown). The document is transported over a transport plate **2114** which has a rectangular opening **2116** in it to permit passage of light to and from the document. In one embodiment of the present invention, the rectangular opening **2116** is 1.375 inches (3.493 cm) by 0.375 inches (0.953 cm). To minimize dust accumulation onto the light source **2102** and the detection system **2106** and to prevent document jams, the opening **2116** is covered with a transparent UV transmitting acrylic window **2118**. To further reduce dust accumulation, the UV light source **2102** and the detection system **2106** are completely enclosed within a housing (not shown) comprising the transport plate **2114**.

Referring now to FIG. **61**, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating one embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention. FIG. **61** shows an UV sensor **2202**, a fluorescence sensor **2204**, and filters **2206**, **2208** of a detection system such as the detection system **2106** of FIG. **60**. Light from the document passes through the filters **2206**, **2208** before striking the sensors **2202**, **2204**, respectively. An ultraviolet filter **2206** filters out visible light and permits UV light to be transmitted and hence to strike UV sensor **2202**. Similarly, a visible light filter **2208** filters out UV light and permits visible light to be transmitted and hence to strike fluorescence sensor **2204**. Accordingly, UV light, which has a wavelength below 400 nm, is prevented from striking the fluorescence sensor **2204** and visible light, which has a wavelength greater than 400 nm, is prevented from striking the UV sensor **2202**. In one embodiment the UV filter **2206** transmits light having a wavelength between about 260 nm and about 380 nm and has a peak transmittance at 360 nm. In one embodiment, the visible light filter **2208** is a blue filter and preferably transmits light having a wavelength between about 415 nm and about 620 nm and has a peak transmittance at 450 nm. The above preferred blue filter comprises a combination of a blue component filter and a yellow component filter. The blue component filter transmits light having a wavelength between about 320 nm and about 620 nm and has a peak transmittance at 450 nm. The yellow component filter transmits light having a wavelength between about 415 nm and about 2800 nm. Examples of suitable filters are UG1 (UV filter), BG23 (blue bandpass filter), and GG420 (yellow longpass filter), all manufactured by Schott. In one embodiment the filters are about 8 mm in diameter and about 1.5 mm thick.

The UV sensor **2202** outputs an analog signal proportional to the amount of light incident thereon and this signal is amplified by amplifier **2210** and fed to a microcontroller **2212**. Similarly, the fluorescence sensor **2204** outputs an analog signal proportional to the amount of light incident thereon and this signal is amplified by amplifier **2214** and fed to a microcontroller **2212**. Analog-to-digital converters **2216** within the microcontroller **2212** convert the signals from the amplifiers **2210**, **2214** to digital and these digital signals are processed by the software of the microcontroller **2212**. The UV sensor **2202** may be, for example, an ultraviolet enhanced photodiode sensitive to light having a wavelength of about 360 nm and the fluorescence sensor **2204** may be a blue enhanced photodiode sensitive to light having a wavelength of about 450 nm. Such photodiodes are available from, for example, Advanced Photonix, Inc., Mass. The microcontroller **2212** may be, for example, a Motorola 68HC16.

The exact characteristics of the sensors **2202**, **2204** and the filters **2206**, **2208** including the wavelength transmit-

tance ranges of the above filters are not as critical to the present invention as the prevention of the fluorescence sensor from generating an output signal in response to ultraviolet light and the ultraviolet sensor from generating an output signal in response to visible light. For example, instead of, or in addition to, filters, a authentication system according to the present invention may employ an ultraviolet sensor which is not responsive to light having a wavelength longer than 400 nm and/or a fluorescence sensor which is not responsive to light having a wavelength shorter than 400 nm.

Calibration potentiometers **2218, 2220** permit the gains of amplifiers **2210, 2214** to be adjusted to appropriate levels. Calibration may be performed by positioning a piece of white fluorescent paper on the transport plate **2114** so that it completely covers the rectangular opening **2116** of FIG. **60**. The potentiometers **2218, 2220** may then be adjusted so that the output of the amplifiers **2210, 2214** is 5 volts.

The implementation of one embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention as illustrated in FIG. **61** with respect to the authentication of U.S. currency will now be described. As discussed above, it has been determined that genuine United States currency reflects a high level of ultraviolet light and does not fluoresce under ultraviolet illumination. It has also been determined that under ultraviolet illumination counterfeit United States currency exhibits one of the four sets of characteristics listed below:

1) Reflects a low level of ultraviolet light and fluoresces;
2) Reflects a low level of ultraviolet light and does not fluoresce;
3) Reflects a high level of ultraviolet light and fluoresces;
4) Reflects a high level of ultraviolet light and does not fluoresce.

Counterfeit bills in categories (1) and (2) may be detected by a currency authenticator employing an ultraviolet light reflection test according to one embodiment of the present invention. Counterfeit bills in category (3) may be detected by a currency authenticator employing both an ultraviolet reflection test and a fluorescence test according to another embodiment of the present invention. Only counterfeits in category (4) are not detected by the authenticating methods of the present invention.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, fluorescence is determined by any signal that is above the noise floor. Thus, the amplified fluorescent sensor signal **2222** will be approximately 0 volts for genuine U.S. currency and will vary between approximately 0 and 5 volts for counterfeit bills depending upon their fluorescent characteristics. Accordingly, an authenticating system according to one embodiment of the present invention will reject bills when signal **2222** exceeds approximately 0 volts.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a high level of reflected UV light ("high UV") is indicated when the amplified UV sensor signal **2224** is above a predetermined threshold. The high/low UV threshold is a function of lamp intensity and reflectance. Lamp intensity can degrade by as much as 50% over the life of the lamp and can be further attenuated by dust accumulation on the lamp and the sensors. The problem of dust accumulation is mitigated by enclosing the lamp and sensors in a housing as discussed above. An authenticating system according to one embodiment of the present invention tracks the intensity of the UV light source and readjusts the high/low threshold accordingly. The degradation of the UV light source may be compensated for by periodically feeding a genuine bill into the system, sampling the output of the UV sensor, and adjusting the threshold accordingly. Alternatively, degradation may be compensated for by periodically sampling the output of the UV sensor when no bill is present in the rectangular opening **2116** of the transport plate **2114**. It is noted that a certain amount of UV light is always reflected off the acrylic window **2118**. By periodically sampling the output of the UV sensor when no bill is present, the system can compensate for light source degradation. Furthermore, such sampling could also be used to indicate to the operator of the system when the ultraviolet light source has burned out or otherwise requires replacement. This may be accomplished, for example, by means of a display reading or an illuminated light emitting diode ("LED"). The amplified ultraviolet sensor signal **2224** will initially vary between 1.0 and 5.0 volts depending upon the UV reflectance characteristics of the document being scanned and will slowly drift downward as the light source degrades. In an alternative embodiment to one embodiment wherein the threshold level is adjusted as the light source degrades, the sampling of the UV sensor output may be used to adjust the gain of the amplifier **2210** thereby maintaining the output of the amplifier **2210** at its initial levels.

It has been found that the voltage ratio between counterfeit and genuine U.S. bills varies from a discernable 2-to-1 ratio to a non-discernable ratio. According to one embodiment of the present invention a 2-to-1 ratio is used to discriminate between genuine and counterfeit bills. For example, if a genuine U.S. bill generates an amplified UV output sensor signal **2224** of 4.0 volts, documents generating an amplified UV output sensor signal **2224** of 2.0 volts or less will be rejected as counterfeit. As described above, this threshold of 2.0 volts may either be lowered as the light source degrades or the gain of the amplifier **2210** may be adjusted so that 2.0 volts remains an appropriate threshold value.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, the determination of whether the level of UV reflected off a document is high or low is made by sampling the output of the UV sensor at a number of intervals, averaging the readings, and comparing the average level with the predetermined high/low threshold. Alternatively, a comparison may be made by measuring the amount of UV light reflected at a number of locations on the bill and comparing these measurements with those obtained from genuine bills. Alternatively, the output of one or more UV sensors may be processed to generate one or more patterns of reflected UV light and these patterns may be compared to the patterns generated by genuine bills. Such a pattern generation and comparison technique may be performed by modifying an optical pattern technique such as that disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety or in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/287,882 filed Aug. 9, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Document Identification," incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

In a similar manner, the presence of fluorescence may be performed by sampling the output of the fluorescence sensor at a number of intervals. However, in one embodiment, a bill is rejected as counterfeit U.S. currency if any of the sampled outputs rise above the noise floor. However, the alternative methods discussed above with respect to processing the signal or signals of a UV sensor or sensors may also be employed, especially with respect to currencies of other countries or other types of documents which may employ as security features certain locations or patterns of fluorescent materials.

A currency authenticating system according to the present invention may be provided with means, such as a display, to

indicate to the operator the reasons why a document has been rejected, e.g., messages such as "UV FAILURE" or "FLUORESCENCE FAILURE." A currency authenticating system according to the present invention may also permit the operator to selectively choose to activate or deactivate either the UV reflection test or the fluorescence test or both. A currency authenticating system according to the present invention may also be provided with means for adjusting the sensitivities of the UV reflection and/or fluorescence test, for example, by adjusting the respective thresholds. For example, in the case of U.S. currency, a system according to the present invention may permit the high/low threshold to be adjusted, for example, either in absolute voltage terms or in genuine/suspect ratio terms.

Means for entering the value of no call bills were discussed above in connection with FIG. **59** and the operating modes discussed above. Now several additional means will be discussed in connection with FIGS. **62–66**. FIG. **62** is a front view of a control panel **2302** similar to that of FIG. **59**. The control panel **2302** comprises a display area **2304**, several denomination selection elements **2306***a–g* in the form of keys, left and right scroll keys **2308***a–b*, an accept selection element **2310**, and a continuation selection element **2312**. Each denomination selection element **2306***a–g* has a prompting means associated therewith. In FIG. **62**, the prompting means are in the form of small lights or lamps **2314***a–g* such as LEDs. In FIG. **62**, the light **2314***d* associated with the $10 denomination key **2306***d* is illuminated so as to prompt the operator that a denomination of $10 is being suggested. Alternatively, instead of the lamps **2314***a–g* being separate from the denomination keys **2306***a–g*, the denomination keys could be in the form of illuminable keys whereby one of the keys **2306***a–g* would light up to suggest its corresponding denomination to the operator. In place of, or in addition to, the illuminable lights **2314***a–g* or keys, the display area **2304** may contain a message to prompt or suggest a denomination to the operator. In FIG. **62**, the display area **2304** contains the message "$10?" to suggest the denomination of $10. In the embodiment of FIG. **59**, the display area **63** may be used to suggest a denomination to the operator without the need of illuminable lights and keys.

The control panel **2402** of FIG. **63** is similar to the control panel **2302** of FIG. **62**; however, the denomination selection elements **2406***a–g*, scroll keys **2408***a–b*, accept key **2410**, and continuation key **2412** are displayed keys in a touch-screen environment. To select any given key, the operator touches the screen in the area of the key to be selected. The operation of a touch screen is described in more detail in connection with FIG. **68**. The discriminator may contain prompting means to suggest a denomination to the operator. For example, an appropriate message may be displayed in a display area **2404**. Alternatively, or additionally, the prompting means may include means for highlighting one of the denomination selection elements **2406***a–g*. For example, the appearance of one of the denomination selection elements may be altered such as by making it lighter or darker than the remaining denomination selection elements or reversing the video display (e.g., making light portions dark and making the dark portions light or swapping the background and foreground colors). Alternatively, a designated denomination selection element may be highlighted by surrounding it with a box, such as box **2414** surrounding the $10 key **2406***d*.

Another embodiment of a control panel **2502** is depicted in FIG. **64**. The control panel **2502** has several denomination indicating elements **2506***a–g* in the form of menu list **2505**, scroll keys **2508***a–b*, an accept selection element **2510**, and a continuation selection element **2512**. The various selection elements may be, for example, physical keys or displayed keys in a touch screen environment. For example, the menu list **2505** may be displayed in a non-touch screen activated display area while the scroll keys **2508***a–b*, accept key **2510**, and continuation key **2512** may be physical keys or displayed touch screen keys. In such an environment a user may accept a denominational selection by pressing the accept key **2510** when the desired denomination indicating element is highlighted and may use the scroll keys **2508***a–b* to vary the denomination indicating element that is highlighted. Alternatively, the denomination indicating elements **2506***a–g* may themselves be selection elements such as by being displayed touch screen active keys. In such an embodiment a given denomination element may be made to be highlighted and/or selected by touching the screen in the area of one of the denomination selection elements **2506***a–g*. The touching of the screen in the area of one of the denomination selection elements may simply cause the associated denomination selection element to become highlighted requiring the touching and/or pressing of the accept key **2510** or alternatively may constitute acceptance of the associated denomination selection element without requiring the separate selection of the accept key **2510**. The discriminator may contain prompting means to suggest a denomination to the operator. For example, an appropriate message may be displayed in a display area **2504**. Alternatively, or additionally, the prompting means may include means for highlighting one of the denomination indicating elements **2506***a–g*. For example, the appearance of one of the denomination indicating elements may be altered such as by making it lighter or darker than the remaining denomination indicating elements or by reversing the video display (e.g., making light portions dark and making the dark portions light or swapping the background and foreground colors). In FIG. **64**, the hash marks are used to symbolize the alternating of the display of the $10 denomination indicating element **2506***d* relative to the other denomination indicating elements such as by using a reverse video display.

Control panel **2602** of FIG. **65** is similar to control panel **2502** of FIG. **64**; however, the control panel **2602** does not have a separate display area. Additionally, the order of the denomination indicating elements **2606***a–g* of menu list **2605** is varied relative to those of menu list **2505**. The order of the denomination selection element may be user-defined (i.e., the operator may preset the order in which the denominations should be listed) or may be determined by the discriminator and be, for example, based on the historical occurrence of no calls of each denomination, based on the denomination of the most recently detected no call, based on calculated correlation values for a given no call bill, or perhaps based on random selection. Such criteria will be described in more detail below.

The control panel **2702** of FIGS. **66***a* and **66***b* comprises a display area **2704**, an accept key **2710**, a next or other denomination key **2711**, and a continuation key **2712**. Alternatively, the accept key may be designated a "YES" key while the other denomination key may be designated a "NO" key. These keys may be physical keys or displayed keys. The discriminator prompts or suggest a denomination by displaying an appropriate message in the display area **2704**. If the operator wishes to accept this denomination suggestion, the accept key **2710** may be selected. If other the operator wishes to select a different denomination, the other denomination key **2711** may be selected. If in the example given in FIG. **66***a* the operator wishes to select a denomi-

nation other than the $5 prompted in the display area **2704**, the other denomination key **2711** may be selected which results in prompting of a different denomination, e.g., $2 as shown in FIG. **66***b*. The "OTHER DENOM" key **2711** may be repeatedly selected to scroll through the different denominations.

The control panel **2802** of FIG. **67** is similar to that of FIGS. **66***a–b* and additionally comprises scroll keys **2808***a–b*. These scroll keys **2808***a–b* may be provided in addition to or in place of the other denomination key **2811**. The order in which denominations are suggested to an operator, for example, in FIGS. **66** and **67**, may be based on a variety of criteria as will be discussed below such as user-defined criteria or order, historical information, previous bill denomination, correlation values, or previous no call information.

Now several embodiments of the operation of discriminators embodying control panels such as those of FIGS. **59** and **62–67** will be discussed. These can be employed in conjunction with a variety of discriminators and scanners such as those illustrated in FIGS. **1** and **56–58**. In particular, several methods for reconciling the value of no call bills will be discussed in connection with these control panels. As discussed above, for example, in connection with the several previously described operating modes, when a discriminator encounters a no call bill, that is, when a discriminator is unable to determine or call the denomination of a bill, any counters keeping track of the number or value of each denomination of bills or of the total value of the bills processed will not include the no call bill. Traditionally, any no calls bills had to be set aside and manually counted by hand with the operator being required to add their values to the totals provided by the discriminator. As discussed above, this can lead to errors and reduced efficiency. To counter this problem, according to an embodiment of the present invention, means are provided for incorporating the value of no call bills. In single pocket discriminators, reconciliation may be accomplished on-the-fly with the discriminator suspending operation when each no call is encountered, prompting the operator to enter the value of the no call, and then resuming operation. In multi-output pocket discriminators, no call bills may be reconciled either on-the-fly or after the completion of processing all the bills placed in the input hopper or after completion of processing some other designated batch of bills. Under the first approach, the operation of the discriminator is suspended when each no call bill is detected with or without the no call bill being routed to a special location. The operator is then prompted to enter the value of the no call where upon the discriminator resumes operation. Based on the value indicated by the operator, appropriate counters are augmented. Under the second approach, any no call bills are routed to a special location while the discriminator continues processing subsequent bills. When all the bills have been processed, the operator is prompted to reconcile the values of any intervening no call bills. For example, assume a stack of fifty bills is placed in the input hopper and processed with four no calls being routed to a separate output receptacle from the receptacle or receptacles into which the bills whose denominations have been determined. After all fifty bills have been processed, the operation of the transport mechanism is halted and the operator is prompted to reconcile the value of the four no call bills. The methods for reconciling these four no calls will be discussed below after describing several denomination indicating and/or prompting means and methods. Alternatively, instead of waiting until all the bills in the stack have been processed, the discriminator may prompt the operator to reconcile the value of any no call bills while the remaining bills are still being processed. When the operator indicates the denominations of the no call bills, appropriate counters are augmented to reflect the value of the no call bills.

Several embodiments of means for permitting the operator to indicate the value of a flagged bill such as a no call and/or for prompting the operator as to the value of a flagged bill such as a no call will now be discussed. A first method was discussed above in connection with several operating modes and in connection with FIG. **59**. According to one embodiment, the control panel of FIG. **59** comprises denomination indicating means in the form of the denomination selection elements **64***a–g* for permitting the operator to indicate the denomination of a bill but does not additionally comprise means for prompting the operator as to the denomination of a particular bill. Under this method, the operator examines a no call bill. If the bill is acceptable, the operator selects the denomination selection element associated with the denomination of the no call bill and the appropriate counters are augmented to reflect the value of the no call bill. For example, if the operator determines a no call bill is an acceptable $10 bill, the operator may press the $10 selection element **64***c* of FIG. **59**. If the operation of the discriminator had been suspended, the selection of a denomination selection causes the operation of the discriminator to resume. In a on-the-fly reconciliating machine (i.e., one that suspends operation upon detection of each no call bill), if the operator determines that a particular no call bill is unacceptable, a continuation selection element may be selected to cause the discriminator to resume operation without negatively affecting the status of any counters. Under this approach, the denomination selection elements provide the operator with means for indicating the value of a no call bill. In FIGS. **62–67**, additional examples of means for indicating the value of no call bills are provided. For example, in FIGS. **62–65**, according to one embodiment, a denomination may be indicated in a similar manner by pressing one of the denomination selection elements. Alternatively, or additionally, a denomination may be indicated by selecting one of the denomination selection elements and selecting an accept key. Another example of a method of indicating a particular denomination selection element would be by utilizing one or more scroll keys. The selection of a denomination selection element may be indicated by, for example, the lights **2314** of FIG. **62**, or by highlighting a particular selection element as in FIGS. **63–65**.. Alternatively a displayed message, as in FIGS. **62–64**, **66**, and **67**, may be used to indicate which denomination is currently selected. The scroll keys could be used to alter which denomination is presently selected, for example, by altering which light **2314** is illuminated, which selection element is highlighted, or which denomination appears in the displayed message. Selection of an accept key while a particular denomination is selected may be used to indicate the selected denomination to the discriminator.

In addition to means for permitting the operator to indicate the denomination of one or more no calls, a discriminator may be provided with one or more means of prompting the operator as to the denomination of a no call bill. These means can be the means used to indicate which denomination is currently selected, e.g., the lights **2314** of FIG. **62**, the highlighting of FIGS. **63–65**, and/or the displayed message of FIGS. **62–64**, **66**, and **67**. Several methods that may be employed in prompting the operator to enter the value of one or more no call bills will now be discussed.

A discriminator containing means for prompting an operator as to the value of a no call bill may base its selection of

the denomination to be prompted to the operator on a variety of criteria. According to one embodiment, default denomination or sequence of denominations may be employed to prompt a denomination to an operator. For example, the discriminator may begin by prompting the lowest denomination, e.g., $1. Alternatively, the operator may begin by prompting the operator with the first denomination in a predefined sequence or on a menu list. The order of the denominations in the sequence or on the menu list may be a default order, e.g., increasing or decreasing denominational order, user-defined order, manufacturer-defined order.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on a random basis. The discriminator simply randomly or pseudo-randomly chooses one of a plurality of denominations and suggests this denomination to the operator. The denomination prompted to an operator may remain the same for all no call bills or alternatively, a new randomly selected denomination may be chosen for each no call encountered. If the operator agrees that a given no call bill is of the denomination suggested by the prompting means and finds the particular no call bill to be acceptable, the operator may simply choose the accept element or the corresponding denomination selection element depending on the embodiment of the control panel employed. If the operator finds a particular bill to be acceptable but does not have the suggested denomination, the operator may alter the denomination that is selected by, for example, altering the displayed suggested denomination by using the scroll keys, scrolling among the plurality of denomination selection and/or indicating elements, or directly selecting the appropriate denomination by pressing or touching the appropriate denomination selection element. If the operator finds that a no call bill is not acceptable, the operator may simply select a continuation key.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of the denomination of the last bill that was identified by the discriminator. For example, suppose the tenth bill in a stack was determined by the discriminator to be a $10, the eleventh bill was a no call and indicated by the operator to be a $5 bill, and the twelfth was a no call bill. According to this embodiment, the discriminator would suggest to the operator that the twelfth bill is a $10 bill. The operator may accept this suggestion or alter the suggested denomination as described above.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of the denomination of the last no call bill as indicated by the operator. For example, suppose the tenth bill was a no call and indicated by the operator to be a $5 bill, the eleventh bill in a stack was determined by the discriminator to be a $10, and the twelfth was a no call bill. According to this embodiment, the discriminator would suggest to the operator that the twelfth bill is a $5 bill. The operator may accept this suggestion or alter the suggested denomination as described above.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of the denomination of the immediately preceding bill, regardless of whether the denomination of that bill was determined by the discriminator or was indicated by the operator. For example, suppose the tenth bill in a stack was determined by the discriminator to be a $10, the eleventh bill was a no call and indicated by the operator to be a $5 bill, and the twelfth was also a no call bill. According to this embodiment, the discriminator would suggest to the operator that the twelfth bill is a $5 bill. The operator may accept this suggestion or alter the suggested denomination as described above.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of historical information concerning no call bills such as statistical information regarding previous no call bills. For example, suppose that for a given discriminator 180 no calls had been encountered since the discriminator was placed in service. According to this embodiment, information regarding these no calls is stored in memory. Assume that of these 180 no call bills, 100 were indicated by the operator to be $5s, 50 were $10s, and the remaining 30 were $20s. According to this embodiment, the discriminator would suggest to the operator that a no call bill was a $5. The operator may accept this suggestion or alter the suggested denomination as described above. Variations on the data which constitute the historical basis may be made. For example, the historical basis according to this embodiment may be all no calls encountered since a given machine was place in service as in the above example, the last predetermined number of no calls detected, e.g., the last 100 no calls detected, or the last predetermined number of bills processed, e.g., the no calls encountered in the last 1000 bills processed. Alternatively, the historical basis may be set by the manufacturer based on historical data retrieved from a number of discriminators.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of a comparison of information retrieved from a given no call bill and master information associated with genuine bills. For example, in some discriminators, the denomination of a bill is determined by scanning the bill, generating a scanned pattern from information retrieved via the scanning step, and comparing the scanned pattern with one or more master patterns associated with one or more genuine bills associated with one or more denominations. If the scanned pattern sufficiently matches one of the master patterns, the denomination of the bill is called or determined to be the denomination associated with the best matching master pattern. However, in some discriminators, a scanned pattern must meet some threshold degree of matching or correlation before the denomination of a bill will be called. In such discriminators, bills whose scanned pattern does not sufficiently match one of the master patterns are not called, i.e., they are no calls. According to the present embodiment, the discriminator would suggest to the operator that a no call had the denomination associated with the master pattern that most closely matched its scanned pattern even though that match was insufficient to call the denomination of the bill without the concurrence of the operator. The operator may accept this suggestion or alter the suggested denomination as described above. For example, in a discriminator similar to that described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196, the discriminator may prompt the operator with the denomination associated with the master pattern that has the highest correlation with the scanned pattern associated with the given no call bill. Additional examples may be made with reference to FIGS. **13** and **19*a–c***. For example, with respect to FIG. **13**, if the highest correlation for a bill is below 800, the bill is a no call bill. In such a case, assume the highest correlation is 790 and this correlation is associated with a $1 bill. When this no call bill is to be reconciled, the discriminator would suggest to the operator that the no call was a $1 bill.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of preset criteria established by the manufacturer. For example, in FIG. **64**, the denomination indicating elements are arranged in increasing denominational order. The discriminator may be designed to default so that a given one of these denomination selection elements is initially highlighted when no

call bills are to be reconciled. For example, for each no call the $10 element **2506***d* may initially be selected. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to default to the first denomination selection element listed, e.g., the $1 denomination element **2506***a*.

According to another embodiment, a denomination to be prompted to the operator is determined on the basis of user-defined criteria set by the operator of a discriminator. For example, in FIG. **64**, the operator may designate the discriminator to default so that a given one of the denomination indicating elements is initially highlighted when no call bills are to be reconciled. For example, for each no call the operator may designate that the $10 element **2506***d* is to be initially selected. The operator may be permitted to set the default no call denomination, for example, in a set up mode entered into before bills in a stack are processed.

In addition to the ways discussed above whereby an initial denomination is prompted to the operator in connection with the reconciling a no call bill, according to other embodiments one or more alternate denominations are may also be suggested. For example, according to the method whereby the initial bill is suggested to the operator based on the denomination associated with a master pattern having the highest correlation relative to a scanned pattern, if the operator rejects the initial suggestion, the discriminator may be designed to then suggest an alternate denomination based on the master pattern associated with a genuine bill of a different denomination having the next highest correlation value. If the operator rejects the second suggestion, the discriminator may be designed to then suggest a second alternate denomination based on the master pattern associated with a genuine bill of a different denomination having the next highest correlation value, and so on.

For example, suppose the highest correlation was associated with a $1, the second highest correlation was associated with $10, and the third highest correlation was associated with $50. According to this embodiment, the discriminator would initially suggest that the no call was a $1. If the operator determined the no call was not a $1, the discriminator would then suggest that the no call was a $10. If the operator determined the no call was not a $10, the discriminator would then suggest that the no call was a $50. For example, according to the embodiment of FIGS. **66***a–b*, the discriminator would first ask whether the no call was a $1 by displaying the message "$1?" in the display area **2704**. If the no call was a $1, the operator would depress the accept or yes key **2710**. If the no call was not a $1 bill, the operator would depress the other denomination or no key **2711**, in which case, the display area would display the message "$10?" and so on. Alternatively, the denomination selection elements may be arranged so that their relative order is based on the correlation results. For example, taking the menu list **2605** of FIG. **65**, the denomination elements may be ordered in the order of decreasing correlation values, e.g., according to the previous example with the $1 denomination element being listed first, the $10 denomination element being listed second, the $50 denomination element being listed third and so on. Alternatively, the denomination elements may be listed in the reverse order. According to another embodiment, the denomination element associated with the highest correlation may be listed in the middle of the list surrounded by the denomination elements associated with the second and third highest correlations, and so on. For the above example, the $1 element **2606***a* would be listed in the middle of the menu list **2605** surrounded by the $10 element **2606***d* on one side and the $50 element **2606***f* on the other side.

Likewise the order in which denominations are suggested to the operator and/or arranged on the control panel may be based on other criteria such as those described above, such as the prior bill information (e.g., last bill, last no call, last call denomination), historical information, user-defined order, manufacturer-defined order, and random order. For example, using the historical data example given above based on 180 no calls (100 $5 no calls, 50 $10 no calls, and 30 $20 no calls), the order that denominations are suggested to the operator may be first $5, then $10, and then $20. Alternatively, using the last bill information and assuming the following sequence of bills ($2, $5, $5, $5, $20, $10, no call indicated to be a $50, no call); the discriminator would suggest denominations for the last no call in the following order: $50, $10, $20, $5, $2. Likewise the order in which the denominations are arranged on a control panel such as in FIGS. **65** and **63** may be determined based on such information, for example, according to the orders described above in connection with using correlation values. For example, the denominations may be listed in the prompting order suggested above (e.g., $5, $10, $20 in the historical information example and $50, $10, $20, $5, $2 in the last bill example). Alternatively they may be listed in the reverse order. Alternatively, they may be arranged with the first suggested denomination being in the center of the list and being initially highlighted or selected. This first suggested denomination may be surrounded by the second and third suggested denominations which are in turn surrounded by the fourth and fifth suggested denomination, and so on. A default sequence may be used to provide the order for any remaining denominations which are not dictated by a particular prompting criteria in a given situation. In the above examples, the denominations might be arranged on a menu list in the following orders: $2, $1, $10, $5, $20, $50, $100 for the historical information example and $1, $5, $10, $50, $20, $2, $100. In general, an example of a listing order according to this approach could be from top to bottom: 6th priority or suggested denomination, 4th, 2nd, 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th.

Embodiments arranging the respective order in which denominations are suggested to the operator and/or displayed on the control panel will likely aid the operator by reducing the projected number of times the operator will need to hit one of the scroll keys and/or "OTHER DENOM" or "NO" key.

Now several methods will be described in connection reconciliation of no calls in multi-output pocket machines after all bills in a stack have been processed. Recalling a previous example in which four no call bills were separated out from a stack of fifty bills and the machine halted after processing all fifty bills, the discriminator then prompts the operator to reconcile the value of the four no call bills. For example, assume the no call bills corresponded to the 5th, 20th, 30th, and 31st bills in the stack and were $2, $50, $10, and $2 bills respectively. The degree of intelligence employed by the discriminator in prompting the operator to reconcile the value of the no call bills may vary depending on the particular embodiment employed. According to one embodiment the operator may depress or select the denomination selection elements corresponding the denominations of the no call bills without any prompting from the discriminator as to their respective denominations. For example, using the control panel of FIG. **59**, the operator would depress the $2 selection element **64***g* twice, the $10 selection element **64***c* once, and the $50 selection element **64***e* once. The discriminator may or may not inform the operator that four no call bills must be reconciled and may or may not

limit the operator to entering four denominations. Likewise, in other embodiments, the operator may use the scroll keys to cause the desired denomination to become selected and then depress the accept key. Alternatively, a numerical keypad may be provided for permitting the operator to indicate the number of bills of each denomination that have not been called. For example, the above example, the operator could use the scroll keys so that the $2 denomination was selected, then press "2" on the keypad for the number of $2 no calls in the batch, and then press an enter or accept key. Then the operator could use the scroll keys so that the $10 denomination was selected, then press "1" on the keypad for the number of $10 no calls in the batch, and then press an enter or accept key and so on. The keypad may comprise, for example, keys or selection elements associated with the digits 0–9.

Alternatively, the discriminator may prompt the operator as to the denomination of each no call bill, for example, by employing one of the prompting methods discussed above, e.g., default, random, user-defined criteria, manufacturer defined criteria, prior bill information (last bill, last no call, last called denomination), historical information, scanned and master comparison information (e.g., highest correlation). For example, the discriminator may serially interrogate the examiner as to the denomination of each no call, for example, the display may initially query "Is 1st no call a $2?". Depending on the embodiment of the control panel being used, the operator could then select "ACCEPT" or "YES" or select the $2 denomination selection element, select "OTHER DENOM" or "NO" or use the scroll keys or select the appropriate denomination selection element, or if the operator finds the first bill unacceptable, the operator may put the first no call bill aside and select "CONT". The discriminator may then query the operator as to the denomination of the second no call bill, and so on. The denomination prompted to the operator would depend on the prompting criteria employed. For example, suppose the prompting criteria was the denomination of the preceding bill and further suppose that in the four no call example given above that the first bill was a $2, the 2nd bill was a $10, the 3rd bill was a $1, the 4th bill was a $1, the 19th bill was a $50, the 29th bill was a $10, and as stated above, the 30th bill was a $10. The discriminator would then prompt the operator as to whether the first no call was a $1. Since the first no call is a $2, the operator would choose "NO", "OTHER DENOM", scroll, or hit the $2 selection element depending on the embodiment be used. If the "NO" or "OTHER DENOM" key were pressed, the discriminator would review the preceding bills in reverse order and suggest the first denomination encountered that had not already been suggested, in this case a $10. If the "NO" or "OTHER DENOM" key were pressed again, the discriminator would then suggest a $2. A predetermined default sequence may be utilized when prior bill information does not contain the desired denomination. Once the operator indicates that the first no call is a $2, the discriminator would then prompt the operator as to whether the second no call was a $50. Since the second no call was indeed a $50 the operator would choose "ACCEPT", "YES", or select the $50 denomination selection element depending on the embodiment chosen. The discriminator would then suggest that the third no call was a $10 and the operator would similarly indicate acceptance of the $10 suggested denomination. Finally, the discriminator would suggest that the fourth no call was a $10. Since the last no call was a $2, the operator would reject the $10 suggestion and indicate that the fourth no call bill was a $2 as described above. The operation of the discriminator using a different prompting criteria would proceed in a similar manner and as described above with respect to each of the described prompting methods.

While discussed above with respect to no calls, the above embodiments could also be employed in connection with other types of flagged bills such as reverse-faced bills, reverse forward/reverse oriented bills, unfit bills, suspect bills, etc.

Referring now to FIG. **68**, the touch screen I/O device **2956** includes a touch screen **2960** mounted over a graphics display **2961**. In one embodiment, the display **2961** is a liquid crystal display (LCD) with backlighting. The display may have, for example, 128 vertical pixels and 256 horizontal pixels. The display **2961** contains a built-in character generator which permits the display **2961** to display text and numbers having font and size pre-defined by the manufacturer of the display. Moreover, a controller such as a CPU is programmed to permit the loading and display of custom fonts and shapes (e.g., key outlines) on the display **2961**. The display **2961** is commercially available as Part No. GMF24012EBTW from Stanley Electric Company, Ltd., Equipment Export Section, of Tokyo, Japan.

The touch screen **2960** may be an X–Y matrix touch screen forming a matrix of touch responsive points. The touch screen **2960** includes two closely spaced but normally separated layers of optical grade polyester film each having a set of parallel transparent conductors. The sets of conductors in the two spaced polyester sheets are oriented at right angles to each other so when superimposed they form a grid. Along the outside edge of each polyester layer is a bus which interconnects the conductors supported on that layer. In this manner, electrical signals from the conductors are transmitted to the controller. When pressure from a finger or stylus is applied to the upper polyester layer, the set of conductors mounted to the upper layer is deflected downward into contact with the set of conductors mounted to the lower polyester layer. The contact between these sets of conductors acts as a mechanical closure of a switch element to complete an electrical circuit which is detected by the controller through the respective buses at the edges of the two polyester layers, thereby providing a means for detecting the X and Y coordinates of the switch closure. A matrix touch screen **2960** of the above type is commercially available from Dynapro Thin Film Products, Inc. of Milwaukee, Wis.

As illustrated in FIG. **68**, the touch screen **2960** forms a matrix of ninety-six optically transparent switch elements having six columns and sixteen rows. The controller is programmed to divide the switch elements in each column into groups of three to form five switches in each column. Actuation of any one of the three switch elements forming a switch actuates the switch. The uppermost switch element in each column remains on its own and is unused.

Although the touch screen **2960** uses an X–Y matrix of optically transparent switches to detect the location of a touch, alternative types of touch screens may be substituted for the touch screen **2960**. These alternative touch screens use such well-known techniques as crossed beams of infrared light, acoustic surface waves, capacitance sensing, and resistive membranes to detect the location of a touch. The structure and operation of the alternative touch screens are described and illustrated, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,317,140, 5,297,030, 5,231,381, 5,198,976, 5,184,115, 5,105,186, 4,931,782, 4,928,094, 4,851,616, 4,811,004, 4,806,709, and 4,782,328, which are incorporated herein by reference.

We claim:

1. A document evaluation device for receiving a stack of documents and rapidly evaluating all the documents in the stack, said device comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of documents to be evaluated;

an output receptacle for receiving said documents after said documents have been evaluated;

a transport mechanism for transporting said documents, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output receptacle along a transport path;

a discriminating unit for evaluating said documents, said discriminating unit comprising a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said output receptacle, said discriminating unit determining information concerning said documents and processing in excess of about 350 documents per minute;

a control panel including a touch screen for displaying said information concerning said documents and for providing input signals in response to manual actuation of said touch screen, said input signals including a plurality of mode-entry signals each of said plurality of mode-entry signals corresponding to a respective one of said plurality of operational modes; and

a controller for coupling said touch screen to said discriminating unit, said controller causing said discriminating unit to operate in said plurality of modes in response to said input signals.

2. The device of claim **1** wherein said touch screen includes a display and a screen above said display, said controller causing the display to display keys thereon, said controller operably coupling the screen to the displayed keys.

3. The currency evaluation device of claim **2** wherein said keys include a continuation key, the actuation of said key causing said discriminating unit to resume operation after stopping upon the detection of an unidentified document.

4. The currency evaluation device of claim **2** wherein said discriminating unit comprises an aggregate counter for counting the aggregate value of said documents, means for determining the denomination of a document, means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a document, and means for determining the authenticity of said documents and wherein said control means causes said display to selectively display said aggregate value, denomination, and authenticity.

5. The currency evaluation device of claim **4** wherein said means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a document comprises a plurality of denomination counters, each of said counters having an associated document denomination, means for incrementing a selected one of said counters upon the detection of a document having the associated denomination of said selected one of said counters.

6. The currency evaluation device of claim **5** wherein said aggregate counter has an aggregate value, and means for incrementing the aggregate value of said documents.

7. The currency evaluation device of claim **5** wherein said keys include a plurality of currency denomination keys, said currency denomination keys having an associated denomination, the actuation of said currency denomination keys causing the incrementing of a selected one of said denomination counters.

8. The currency evaluation device of claim **7** wherein said discriminating units stops after being unable to identify a document.

9. The device of claim **1** wherein said controller is a central processing unit.

10. The currency evaluation device of claim **1** wherein said output receptacle comprises a single output bin.

11. The currency evaluation device of claim **1** wherein said output receptacle comprises a plurality of output bins.

12. The currency evaluation device of claim **11** having exactly two output receptacles.

13. A currency evaluation device for receiving a stack of currency bills and rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack, said device comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of bills to be evaluated;

an output receptacle for receiving said bills after said bills have been evaluated;

a transport mechanism for transporting said bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output receptacle along a transport path;

a discriminating unit for evaluating said bills, said discriminating unit comprising a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said output receptacle, said discriminating unit determining information concerning said bills said discriminating unit processing in excess of about 350 bills per minute;

a control panel including a touch screen for displaying said information concerning said bills and for receiving operational instructions from a user; and

a controller for coupling said touch screen to said discriminating unit, said controller causing said discriminating unit to operate in a plurality of modes in response to said operational instructions from said user, said modes including a mixed mode for accepting stacks of bills having a mixed denomination, a stranger mode for accepting bills of the same denomination, and a sort mode for accommodating bills sorted by denomination.

14. The device of claim **13** wherein said touch screen includes a display and a screen above said display, said controller causing the display to display keys thereon, said controller operably coupling the screen to the displayed keys.

15. The currency evaluation device of claim **14** wherein said keys include a continuation key, the actuation of said key causing said discriminating unit to resume operation after stopping upon the detection of an unidentified bill.

16. The currency evaluation device of claim **14** wherein said discriminating unit comprises an aggregate counter for counting the aggregate value of said bills, means for determining the denomination of a bill, means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a bill, and means for determining the authenticity of said bills and wherein said control means causes said display to selectively display said aggregate value, denomination, and authenticity.

17. The currency evaluation device of claim **16** wherein said means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a bill comprises a plurality of denomination counters, each of said counters having an associated bill denomination, means for incrementing a selected one of said counters upon the detection of a bill having the associated denomination of said selected one of said counters.

18. The currency evaluation device of claim **17** wherein said aggregate counter has an aggregate value, and means for incrementing the aggregate value of said bills.

19. The currency evaluation device of claim **17** wherein said keys include a plurality of currency denomination keys, said currency denomination keys having an associated denomination, the actuation of said currency denomination keys causing the incrementing of a selected one of said denomination counters.

20. The currency evaluation device of claim 19 wherein said discriminating units stops after being unable to identify a bill.

21. The device of claim 13 wherein said controller is a central processing unit.

22. The currency evaluation device of claim 13 wherein said output receptacle comprises a single output bin.

23. The currency evaluation device of claim 13 wherein said output receptacle comprises two output bins.

24. A currency evaluation device for receiving a stack of currency bills and rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack, said device comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of bills to be evaluated;

an output receptacle for receiving said bills after said bills have been evaluated;

a transport mechanism for transporting said bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output receptacle means along a transport path;

discriminating means for evaluating said bills, said discriminating means comprising a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said output receptacle, said discriminating means determining information concerning said bills, said discriminating means processing in excess of about 350 bills per minute;

a control panel including touch screen means for displaying said information concerning said bills and for receiving operational instructions from a user; and

control means for coupling said touch screen means to said discriminating means, said control means causing said discriminating means to operate in a plurality of modes in response to said operational instructions from said user, said modes including a mixed mode for accepting stacks of bills having a mixed denomination, a stranger mode for accepting bills of the same denomination, and a sort mode for accommodating bills sorted by denomination.

25. The device of claim 24 wherein said touch screen means includes a display and a touch screen above said display, said control means causing the display to display keys thereon, said control means operably coupling the touch screen to the displayed keys.

26. The currency evaluation device of claim 25 wherein said keys include a continuation key, the actuation of said key causing said discriminating means to resume operation after stopping upon the detection of an unidentified bill.

27. The currency evaluation device of claim 25 wherein said discriminating means comprises means for counting the aggregate value of said bills, means for determining the denomination of a bill, means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a bill, and means for determining the authenticity of said bills and wherein said control means causes said display to selectively display said aggregate value, denomination, and authenticity.

28. The currency evaluation device of claim 27 wherein said means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a bill comprises a plurality of denomination counters, each of said counters having an associated bill denomination, means for incrementing a selected one of said counters upon the detection of a bill having the associated denomination of said selected one of said counters.

29. The currency evaluation device of claim 28 wherein said aggregate counter has an aggregate value, and means for incrementing the aggregate value of said bills.

30. The currency evaluation device of claim 28 wherein said keys include a plurality of currency denomination keys, said currency denomination keys having an associated denomination, the actuation of said currency denomination keys causing the incrementing of a selected one of said denomination counters.

31. The currency evaluation device of claim 30 wherein said discriminating means stops after being unable to identify a bill.

32. The device of claim 24 wherein said control means is a central processing unit.

33. The currency evaluation device of claim 24 wherein said output receptacle comprises a single output bin.

34. The currency evaluation device of claim 24 wherein said output receptacle comprises two output bins.

35. A method for rapidly receiving and rapidly evaluating all the bills in a stack, and displaying and receiving information concerning the bills via a touch screen, comprising the steps of:

receiving bills to be evaluated in an input receptacle;

placing evaluated bills in an output receptacle;

transporting said bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output receptacle means along a transport path;

evaluating said bills in a discriminating unit, the discriminating unit having a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said output receptacle and determining information concerning said bills, said discriminating unit processing in excess of about 350 bills per minute;

displaying said information concerning said bills and receiving operational instructions from a user via a touch screen; and

coupling said touch screen to said discriminating unit and causing said discriminating unit to operate in a plurality of modes in response to said operational instructions from said user.

36. A method for rapidly receiving and rapidly evaluating all the bills in a stack, and displaying and receiving information concerning the bills via a touch screen, comprising the steps of:

receiving bills to be evaluated in an input receptacle;

placing evaluated bills in an output receptacle;

transporting said bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output receptacle means along a transport path;

evaluating said bills in a discriminating unit, the discriminating unit having a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said output receptacle and determining the aggregate value of bills, the denomination of bills, and the authenticity of bills, said discriminating unit processing in excess of about 350 bills per minute;

stopping the operation of the discriminating unit upon detection of an unidentified bill and resuming operation of the discriminating unit upon the pressing of a continuation key;

displaying said aggregate value of bills, denomination of bills, and authenticity of bills and receiving operational instructions from a user via the touch screen; and

coupling said touch screen to said discriminating unit and causing said discriminating unit to operate in a plurality of modes in response to said operational instructions from said user.

37. A currency evaluation device for receiving a stack of currency bills and rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack, said device comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of bills to be evaluated;

a single output bin for receiving said bills after said bills have been evaluated;

a transport mechanism for transporting said bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output bin along a transport path;

a discriminating unit for evaluating said bills, said discriminating unit comprising a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said output bin, said discriminating unit determining information concerning said bills, said discriminating unit further comprising an aggregate counter for counting the aggregate value of said bills, means for determining the denomination of said bill, means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a bill, and means for determining the authenticity of said bills, said discriminating unit processing in excess of about 350 bills per minute;

a control panel including a touch screen for displaying said information concerning said bills and for receiving operational instructions from a user, said touch screen including a display and a screen above said display; and

a central processing unit for coupling said touch screen to said discriminating unit, said controller causing said discriminating unit to operate in a plurality of modes in response to said operational instructions from said user, said modes including a mixed mode for accepting stacks of bills having a mixed denomination, a stranger mode for accepting bills of the same denomination, and a sort mode for accommodating bills sorted by denomination, said central processing unit causing said display to display keys thereon, said central processing unit operably coupling said screen to said displayed keys, and wherein said central processing unit causes said display to selectively display the aggregate value, denomination, and authenticity.

38. A currency evaluation device for receiving a stack of currency bills and rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack, said device comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of bills to be evaluated;

first and second output bins for receiving said bills after said bills have been evaluated;

a transport mechanism for transporting said bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle to said output bins along a transport path;

a discriminating unit for evaluating said bills, said discriminating unit comprising a detector positioned along said transport path between said input receptacle and said first and second output bins, said discriminating unit determining information concerning said bills, said discriminating unit further comprising an aggregate counter for counting the aggregate value of said bills, means for determining the denomination of said bill, means for counting the occurrence of a denomination of a bill, and means for determining the authenticity of said bills, said discriminating unit processing in excess of about 350 documents per minute;

a control panel including a touch screen for displaying said information concerning said bills and for receiving operational instructions from a user, said touch screen including a display and a screen above said display; and

a central processing unit for coupling said touch screen to said discriminating unit, said controller causing said discriminating unit to operate in a plurality of modes in response to said operational instructions from said user, said central processing unit causing said display to display keys thereon, said central processing unit operably coupling said screen to said displayed keys, and wherein said central processing unit causes said display to selectively display the aggregate value, denomination, and authenticity.

* * * * *